PROPERTY OF THE

Shelf No.

DA755.B27
v.2

Public Library of the City of Boston

BOSTONIA
CONDITA A.D.
1630.

From the Bates Fund.

Added

DT155 .B37 1804
v.2

39999059003119

L.Black sculp.

VIEW of the ENTRANCE into CAPE TOWN from GREEN POINT.

Published Feb.ry 1.st 1806 by Cadell & Davies, Strand.

AN

ACCOUNT

OF

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA.

IN WHICH IS CONSIDERED,

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE TO THE DIFFERENT EUROPEAN POWERS, AS A NAVAL AND MILITARY STATION; AS A POINT OF SECURITY TO OUR INDIAN TRADE AND SETTLEMENTS DURING A WAR, AND AS A TERRITORIAL ACQUISITION AND COMMERCIAL EMPORIUM IN TIME OF PEACE:

WITH

A STATISTICAL SKETCH OF THE WHOLE COLONY;
COMPILED FROM AUTHENTIC DOCUMENTS.

By JOHN BARROW, Esq.

LATE SECRETARY TO THE EARL OF MACARTNEY, AUDITOR-GENERAL OF PUBLIC ACCOUNTS AT THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE, AND SECRETARY TO LIEUTENANT-GENERAL FRANCIS DUNDAS DURING HIS GOVERNMENT THERE.

VOLUME THE SECOND,

ILLUSTRATED WITH SEVERAL ENGRAVINGS.

LONDON:
Printed by A. Strahan, Printers-Street,
FOR T. CADELL AND W. DAVIES, IN THE STRAND.
1804.

885
2

**DT755
B27
v.2
Cop. 2

Dupl copy

Bks.
(31,648)
Dpt 24.1892
2v

NO LONGER THE PROPERTY
OF BOSTON PUBLIC LIBRARY

TO

THE LORD VISCOUNT MELVILLE,

ONE OF HIS MAJESTY's MOST HONOURABLE PRIVY COUNCIL,
&c. &c. &c.

UNDER WHOSE AUSPICES, THE EXTENSIVE AND IMPORTANT COLONY

OF THE CAPE OF GOOD HOPE

WAS ACQUIRED AND ANNEXED TO THE BRITISH EMPIRE,

BY WHICH OUR POLITICAL AND COMMERCIAL INTERESTS IN THE EAST-INDIES
WERE EFFECTUALLY SECURED AND PROMOTED;

THIS SECOND VOLUME OF

TRAVELS IN SOUTHERN AFRICA, *&c.*

IS RESPECTFULLY INSCRIBED,

BY

HIS MOST FAITHFUL

AND OBLIGED HUMBLE SERVANT,

JOHN BARROW.

Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2015

https://archive.org/details/accountoftravels02barr

CONTENTS.

CHAP. I.

PRELIMINARY SUBJECT.

Motives that gave Rise to the present Volume.—Importance of studying the Disposition of Inhabitants—of gaining local Information.—Assiduity of the French in these Respects—instanced in a Variety of Cases—combine national with individual Views—their Dispersion by the late Revolution—endeavour to attract the Notice of their Country.—Extract from the Travels of the Duke of Rochefaucault Liancourt—*his Sentiments those of the Emigrants.—French indefatigable in their Pursuits abroad—Progress made in India—in the Birman Empire—in Cochin-China—the Danger, or Advantage, that England may derive from the last Connection.—Considerations respecting Macao.—French communicate Knowledge—Dutch and Portuguese impede it with regard to their Colonies—Cape of Good Hope an Exception to this Remark—Knowledge of it imperfect—and Accounts contradictory.—Various Authors who have written on the Subject—*Tachard—Merklin—Valentyn—Kolbe—Abbé de la Caille—Sparrmann—Thunberg—Patterson—Hoppe—Van Reenen.—*Maps of* Captain Riou *and* De la Rochette.—*Important Observations on the South Coast of Africa—Errors of different Charts—Observations on* Monsieur Le Vaillant's *Work—Manner in which the Chart prefixed to the present Work was constructed.—Disagreement between the Chart and the Text explained.—Testimony of General Vandeleur.—Misrepresentations of the Cape accounted for.—General Nature and Appearance of the Country—Improvements suggested.—Change in the national Character of the Dutch in their Colonies—their helpless Condition in Batavia.—Industry and Activity of the Chinese there—their Numbers—would prove a valuable Acquisition to the Cape—real Importance of this Colony to England.—Conclusion.* - - - - Page 1

CHAP.

CHAP. II.

Military Expedition to the Kaffer Frontier.

Occaſion of this Expedition.—Affairs of Graaf Reynet.—Gordon's Bay.—Hottentot Holland's Kloof—Obſtinacy of the Coloniſts.—Cruelty to Animals, bad Effects of.—Palmiet and Bott Rivers.—Temperature of the Air.—The Shoemaker's Hovel.—Rapid Vegetation after Rain—Plants firſt appearing.—Sweet Milk's Valley—wild Animals there.—Eſtabliſhment of Hernhuters or Moravians—good Effects of.—Hottentots diſcouraged by the Coloniſts—Sir James Craig's Teſtimony of—other Miſſionaries.—Inſtance of Zeal in Mr. Kicherer—Reflection thereupon.—Inſtance of ſavage Cruelty in the Boors—a Boor taken into Cuſtody.—Two of our Dragoons loſt in a River.—Scarcity of Water attempted to be explained from the Nature and Antiquity of the Mountains—Facts adduced in Proof of the Theory—Cape Iſthmus never covered with the Sea—Reaſons for ſuch Conjecture.—L'Aguillas Bank once Part of the Continent.—Antiquity of Africa.—Muſcle Bay—Chart and Deſcription of.—Croſs Attaquas Kloof *into* Lange Kloof.—*Wine—Raiſins—Brandy—all of bad Quality.—Experiment for making good Wine.—Appearance of Lange Kloof—croſs the Mountains to Plettenberg's Bay—Reaſon why Foreſt Trees are more abundant there than elſewhere.—Mr. Calander's Account of the* Knyſna *—and ſurrounding Country.—Condition of a Cape Boor.—Anchor found on Table Mountain.—Plants near Plettenberg's Bay—and Animals.—Inſtance of Ingenuity in a deaf and dumb Man.—Appearance of the Country between Camtoos River and Algoa Bay.—Engagement between* La Preneuſe *and the* Rattleſnake.—*Change of Circumſtances favourable to the Boors—Rebellious Boors ſent to the Cape—tried by the Court of Juſtice there—Conſtitution of this Court—bad Character of, undeſerved. Boors plundered by the Hottentots—Juſtification of theſe People—their cruel Treatment by the Boors—Examples of in a Hottentot Woman and Child cut with Shambocs—in a Boy with Iron Rings clenched on his Legs—Puniſhment of the Boor—Another Inſtance of the ſanguinary Character of the Boors—its Cauſe explained.—People of Cape Town.—The Burgher and the Whale.—Character and Mode of Life—tenacious of Rank.—Hottentot Corps—Character of.—Condition of the Slaves.—Imprudence of the Whites.—Adminiſtration of Juſtice between the Whites and*

Blacks.—Rencontre with the Kaffer Chief Cango.—Compariſon between the Perſons of Boors and Kaffers.—Reflection.—Food of the Kaffers.—Booſhuanas.—City of Leetakoo.—Conjecture of the Kaffer Origin—Extent of their Country—their Dogs not ſubject to Canine Madneſs.—Small Pox not endemic in South Africa—Origin of.—High Situations favourable to the Growth of Animals.—Uncommon Inſtance of Bulk in a Woman—Fate of this hapleſs Creature.—Attack of the Kaffers upon the Britiſh Troops—a wounded Kaffer taken.—Rencontre of Boors and Hottentots at Algoa Bay.—Kaffers ſtorm the Britiſh Camp.—Melancholy Fate of Lieutenant Chumney and ſixteen Men.—Ill-judged Conduct of the Boors—Conſequences.—Hatred of Kaffers and Hottentots againſt the Boors—Conduct of the latter at Plettenberg's Bay.—Horrid Murder committed in Lange Kloof.—Curious Articles of Inſtructions propoſed for the Boors in their Wars with the Kaffers.—Return to the Cape.—Change of Conduct in the Coloniſts—reconciled to the Britiſh Government—indifferent as to the Return of their own—little Rejoicing ſhewn at this Event—Reaſons of it—final Evacuation. - - Page 32

CHAP. III.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, conſidered as a Military Station.

Views of the Britiſh Government in taking Poſſeſſion of the Cape—State of that Colony—Arrival of the Britiſh Forces—Behaviour of the Inhabitants—Capture of the Settlement—general Opinion of its Importance—Plans for its Government.—Lord Macartney appointed Governor.—Reſolution of the Miniſter.—Conduct of the preſent Directors of the Eaſt India Company—compared with that of thoſe in the American War.—Conſequences of our Failure in the Expedition againſt the Cape at that Time.—Conſiderations propoſed in a Treaty with Holland in 1787—Opinion of Lord Macartney.—Holland not deſirous to have the Cape.—Order of the Eaſt India Company prohibiting their Ships to touch at the Cape—countermanded with regard to Ships navigated by Laſcars.—Condition of two Regiments brought to the Cape in ſuch Ships.—Deſign of the following Part of this Work.—Meaning of the Term Military Station.—*Soldiers, what.—Importance of forming Men previous to Embarkation.—Inconveniences attending a Sea Voyage.—India not favourable for forming Recruits into Soldiers.—A middle Station deſirable.—Cape of Good Hope, great Advantages of*

of in this Reſpect—poſſeſſes all the Requiſites deſired by the Eaſt India Company as a Depôt.—Healthineſs of Climate, various Proofs of—ſeaſons the Conſtitution for India—remarkable Inſtance of in upwards of two thouſand Men ſent to India—another in twelve hundred to the Red Sea.—Difficulties ſtarted againſt this Expedition.—Importance of the Cape on account of the ſmall Expence of ſubſiſting Troops there.—Value of the Ration here and elſewhere.—Price of Proviſions—of Wine.—Profits derived by the Government at the Cape from Bills on his Majeſty's Paymaſters—from Specie imported—from Copper Money—from iſſuing new Paper Money.—Expenditure in the military Department—a mere Trifle compared with the Importance of the Station—capable of being borne in Peace out of the colonial Revenues.—Importance of the Cape on account of its local Poſition—inſtanced in detecting the Views of Tippoo at the Iſle of France—in ſending Troops expeditiouſly to India.—Opportunities of doing this in Engliſh or neutral Ships.—General Advantages.—Importance of the Cape ſtated in compariſon with that of Malta.—Views of the French on India—ſeen in the Publication of Anquetil Duperron.*—Diſadvantages of Malta being in the Hands of the French.—Difficulties that would attend an Expedition by Sea from Suez.—Iſland of Perim.—Difficulties that would occur by Land—not inſurmountable.—De la Croix's Opinion of the Cape.—Defences of the Cape.—Table Bay and Site of the Town—Works—Citadel—Lines—Craig's Battery and Tower—Fort Knocke—Rogge Bay, Amſterdam, and Chavonne Batteries—the Mouillé—Camp's Bay and Batteries—Importance of the Lion's Rump—Objections againſt it.—Chapman and Hout Bays.—Simon's Bay.—Garriſon of the Cape, Strength of.—Unprotected Coaſt and Bays.—Algoa Bay.—Means to be employed by an Enemy for diſtreſſing the Garriſon—taken by a* Coup de Main.*—Garriſon of the Dutch.—Diſpoſition of the Hottentot Corps.—State of the Batavian Ships of War in the Eaſtern Seas.—Ammunition and Stores at the Cape.* - Page 143

CHAP. IV.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, conſidered as a Naval Station.

Comparative ſmall Space occupied by the Britiſh Iſlands—their Weight among Nations accounted for.—Commerce the Source of Britiſh Wealth.—Precariouſneſs of the mere Carrying-

Carrying-trade.—Colonies improve Navigation.—Character of French Seamen—of Dutch Seamen.—Treatment on board their own Ships.—Mortality.—The Cape neceſſary to the Dutch Trade to India—an intermediate Port deſirable to other Nations—leaſt ſo to England—Reaſons of it.—Incidents to which maritime Tranſactions are liable make friendly Ports always deſirable.—Convenience of the Cape.—Portugueze the firſt Viſitors—then the Engliſh and Dutch—taken Poſſeſſion of by the latter—extend their Territory beyond the original Intention—Impediments thrown by the Company—Willingneſs to part with it.—Advantages as a Naval Station, not confined to the Supply of Refreſhments—Reſort for Ships in Diſtreſs—the Counteſs of Sutherland Indiaman.—Cape proper for aſſembling Convoys—Proviſions to be procured.—Importance as commanding the Entrance of the Indian Seas.—Iſles of France and Bourbon dependent on the Cape.—France unable to diſturb India without a Fleet.—Trade of India ſubject to the Maſters of the Cape—Healthineſs of the Climate for Seamen.—Moderate Expence of ſubſiſting a Fleet—Sailors' Ration of freſh Proviſions—Brandy cheaper than Weſt India Rum—Conſumption of colonial Produce by the Fleet—about one-fourth of the uſual Expence—Wear and Tear of the Ships conſiderable.—Importance of the geographical Poſition of the Cape—commanding a ſpeedy Intercourſe with moſt Parts of the World.—Diſadvantages to Britain in the Hands of an Enemy.—Three Points of Annoyance to our Trade—comparative Danger of the outward and homeward bound Paſſages—that of paſſing the Straits of Sunda—of Manilla—of L'Aguillas Bank—of Saint Helena.—Inefficacy of Convoys.—Difference of Circumſtances between this and the American War.—Preſent Aim of France.—The comparative Eſtimate of the Cape and Ceylon.—French jealous of our Commerce.—Neceſſity of re-poſſeſſing the Cape or deſtroying the Enemy's Shipping there.—Bays of the Cape—Table Bay—Robben Iſland—Loſs of the Sceptre—Simon's Bay—Saldanha Bay—Objections to it—obviated.—Saint Helena Bay.—Concluſion. Page 221

CHAP. V.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, conſidered in a commercial Point of View, and as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery.

Intention of the United States in forming the Settlement.—Commerce diſcouraged.—Riſing Proſperity of the Colony checked.—Conſequences of its becoming a Free Port.

—American Trade.—Ships under neutral Flags and Britiſh Capitals.—Situation of Batavian Republic reſpecting the Cape.—Intereſts of the Eaſt India Company.—Cape conſidered as an Emporium of Eaſtern Produce—Objections to it—attended with Loſs to the Crown—and Injury to the London Market.—Remedy.—Trade from the Cape—to the Weſt Indies—to the Brazils—at the Diſcretion of the Company.—America—Holland—France—Advantages of the Cape as furniſhing Exports—Grain and Pulſe—Wine and Brandy—Wool—Hides and Skins—Whale Oil and Bone—dried Fruits—ſalt Proviſions—Soap and Candles—Aloes—Ivory—Tobacco.—Total Value of Exports in four Years.—Imports from England what—from India and China—by foreign Nations.—Table of Imports.—Balance of Imports over Exports.—State of the Colony.—Relapſe into Poverty.—Commercial Advantages not Important to Great Britain—conſidered as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery.—Eſtabliſhment of this Fiſhery—might be excluſively in our Hands through the Cape—Black Whale—Spermaceti.—Bounties.—Seal Fiſhery in the Hands of Americans—Inducement for them to diſpoſe of their Skins.—Concluſion. - Page 265

CHAP. VI.

Topographical Deſcription and Statiſtical Sketch of the Cape Settlement.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.—*Dimenſions.—Extent.—Soil.—Climate.—Winds.—Scarcity of Water.—Permanent Rivers enumerated and deſcribed.—Mountains.—Diviſions, Population, and Produce.—Provincial Judicature.* DISTRICT OF THE CAPE—*Extent of and Quantity of Land under Cultivation.—Cape Town.—Stock, Produce, and Population aſcertained by the* Opgaaff.—*Births and Mortality.—Criminals.—Natural Products of the Cape Diſtrict.*—DISTRICT OF STELLENBOSCH AND DRAKENSTEIN—*Extent and Diviſions of.—The Droſdy or Village—Situation and Produce of the other Diviſions of this Diſtrict—Stock and Population of, according to the* Opgaaff.—DISTRICT OF ZWELLENDAM—*Dimenſions, Extent, and Diviſions of—the Droſdy or Village of—Situation and Produce of the other Diviſions—Stock and Population according to the* Opgaaff.—DISTRICT OF GRAAF REYNET—*Dimenſions, Extent, and Diviſions of—Droſdy or Village of—Situation and Produce of the other Diviſions of this Diſtrict—Stock and Population according to*

to the Opgaaff.—TENURES OF LANDS.—*Loan Farms, Nature and Number of.—Gratuity Lands.—Quit Rents.—Freeholds.—Reaſons againſt Improvement of Eſtates in the Cape.—Property frequently changes Hands.*—CONDITION OF THE INHABITANTS.—*Neceſſaries of Life obtained without Exertion.—Four Claſſes of Coloniſts*—Thoſe of the Town, *Condition of.—Taxes and Aſſeſſments moderate.—Tythes or Church Rates none—no Poor Rates.—Police conducted by a College of Burghers—their Functions Neglect and Abuſes of.—Improvement ſuggeſted.—Indifference of the Coloniſts for rational Amuſements.*—The Wine Growers, *Condition and Reſources of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.—Eaſy Terms of purchaſing Eſtates.*—Corn Boors, *Condition of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.*—Graziers, *indolent and helpleſs Condition of—their bad Character—ſubject to no Taxes—State of Outgoings and Returns.*—REVENUES OF GOVERNMENT *Nature of the thirteen Heads of, and Table of their Amount for four ſucceſſive Years.*—JURISPRUDENCE.—*Nature and Conſtitution of the Court its Members.—Civil Cauſes.—Attornies.—Office of Fiſcal.—Court of Commiſſaries for petty Suits, and matrimonial Affairs.—The Weeſkammer, or Chamber for managing the Effects of Minors and Orphans—its Functions.*—RELIGION, *that of the Reformed Church.—Lutherans and others barely tolerated.—Condition of the Clergy—Duties of—direct the Funds raiſed for the Relief of the Poor—are* Curators *of the public School.—Amount of Church Funds.*—IMPROVEMENTS SUGGESTED, *by the Introduction of Chineſe—eaſily effected by the Britiſh Government—by Moravian Eſtabliſhments of Hottentots in the diſtant Parts—by encloſing the Farms—leading their Vines up Props or Eſpaliers.—New Syſtem in the Tillage of Corn Lands.—Eſtabliſhment of Fairs or Markets, and erecting of Villages—Conſequences of theſe.*—Concluſion. - Page 324

ERRATA.

VOL. I.

Page	line		
9.	21.	*for* Tuſh	*read* Fiſh
10.	27.	*for* Zewarte	*r.* Zwarte
16.	27.	*for* incluſive	*r.* excluſive
31.	12.	*for* Bray	*r.* Cray
38.	17.	*for* Cenæa	*r.* Penæa
64.	20.	*for* into	*r.* on
88	11.	*for* Zoaarteberg	*r.* Zwarteberg
89	18.	*for* red	*r.* reed
93.	8.	*for* four	*r.* fore
131.	24.	*for* pending	*r.* trending
137.	9.	*for* heſts	*r.* tuſts
202.	15.	*for* tradeſman	*r.* herdſman
232.	3.	*for* pectorius	*r.* putorius
314.	21.	*for* illy	*r.* ill
321.	7.	*for* Tuſh	*r.* Fiſh
330.	3.	fifth column, *for* Milaropoleos	*r.* Melanophleos
346.	& ſeq	*for* Muſcle Bay	*r* Moſſel
360.	27.	*for* Philippo	*r.* Philippeaux

VOL. II.

Page	line		
11.	3.	*for* aſſaſſinatio	*read* aſſaſſination
40.	4.	*for* Rhode	*r.* Roode
41.	20.	*for* it	*r.* in
165.	12.	*for* on	*r.* in
207.	11.	*for* 1500	*r.* 3000
211.	7.	*for* 2700	*r.* 5400
362.	6.	*for* white	*r.* whole
368.	3.	*for* Kange	*r.* Lange
370.	3.	*for* them	*r.* it

In the Preſs,

TRAVELS IN CHINA,

CONTAINING

DESCRIPTIONS, OBSERVATIONS, and COMPARISONS, made and collected in the Courſe of a ſhort Reſidence at the *Imperial Palace* of *Yuen-min-yuen*, and on a ſubſequent Journey through the Country from

PEKIN TO CANTON.

In which it is attempted to appreciate the Rank that this extraordinary Empire may be conſidered to hold in the Scale of civilized Nations.

"*Non cuivis homini contingit adire* Corinthum."
It is the lot of few to go to *Pekin*.

By JOHN BARROW, Eſq.

Late Private Secretary to the Earl of Macartney, and one of his Suite as Ambaſſador from the King of Great Britain to the Emperor of China.

TRA-

TRAVELS

INTO THE

INTERIOR OF SOUTHERN AFRICA.

PRELIMINARY SUBJECT.

Motives that gave Rise to the present Volume.—Importance of studying the Disposition of Inhabitants—of gaining local Information.—Assiduity of the French in these Respects—instanced in a Variety of Cases—combine national with individual Views—their Dispersion by the late Revolution—endeavour to attract the Notice of their Country.—Extract from the Travels of the Duke of Rochefaucault Liancourt—*his Sentiments those of the Emigrants.—French indefatigable in their Pursuits abroad—Progress made in India—in the Birman Empire—in Cochin-China—the Danger, or Advantage, that England may derive from the last Connection.—Considerations respecting Macao.—French communicate Knowledge—Dutch and Portuguese impede it with regard to their Colonies—Cape of Good Hope an Exception to this Remark—Knowledge of it imperfect—and Accounts contradictory.—Various Authors who have written on the Subject*—Tachard—Merklin—Valentyn—Kolbe—Abbé de la Caille—Sparrmann—Thunberg—Patterson—Hoppe—Van Reenen.—*Maps of* Captain Riou *and* De la Rochette.—*Important Observations on the South Coast of Africa—Errors of different Charts—Observations on* Monsieur Le

Vaillant's Work—Manner in which the Chart prefixed to the preſent Work was conſtructed.—Diſagreement between the Chart and the Text explained.—Teſtimony of General Vandeleur.—Miſrepreſentations of the Cape accounted for.—General Nature and Appearance of the Country—Improvements ſuggeſted.—Change in the national Character of the Dutch in their Colonies—their helpleſs Condition in Batavia.—Induſtry and Activity of the Chineſe there—their Numbers—would prove a valuable Acquiſition to the Cape—real Importance of this Colony to England.—Concluſion.

THE very flattering reception which a former volume of ſketches experienced from an indulgent public, was ſufficient encouragement for the Author to reſume his pen, though it might not be conſidered as an adequate motive, without new pretenſions, to obtrude himſelf a ſecond time on public notice. The pretenſions then, which I now claim, conſiſt chiefly in being allowed to finiſh an incomplete work: to add a volume, in continuation of the former, which I am encouraged to hope will be conſidered no leſs intereſting, from the importance of the matter, than the other was from its novelty. The natural hiſtory of a country little known; the general deſcription of its ſurface and appearance; the manners, cuſtoms, and ſtate of ſociety, of the ſeveral claſſes of inhabitants, furniſh a vaſt fund of uſeful and agreeable information; but they do not conſtitute a whole.—A number of other ſubjects muſt be diſcuſſed and deſcribed before our knowledge of that country can be ſaid to be complete. Among theſe are not the leaſt important the local advantages it may command in a political, military, and commercial point of view, either with reſpect to itſelf, or in its relations with other countries; its reſources, and their application; its revenues, juriſprudence, population, and a variety of other points which, when attentively taken, form a topographical

phical and ſtatiſtical account, from whence both the ſtateſman and the philoſopher may be inſtructed and amuſed.

This latter part is a taſk which, in all human probability, I ſhould never have undertaken, had I not found, on my return to England, that a great variety of opinions were fluctuating with regard to the importance of the Cape of Good Hope to the intereſts of the Britiſh Empire, but more immediately ſo to thoſe of the Eaſt-India Company, which compoſes ſo very diſtinguiſhed a part of it. Moſt of theſe opinions were, obviouſly, grounded on a very limited view of the ſubject; or on an imperfect knowledge of the country. For, without arrogating to myſelf any ſuperior information beyond what local knowledge, acquired by frequent travel, and my public ſituation, enabled me to collect, I may be allowed to obſerve, that few ſeem to underſtand in what reſpects the Cape is, or is not, an important object to the different powers of Europe. In the former volume all political diſcuſſions were ſtudiouſly avoided, not only becauſe they might at that time, for many reaſons, have been thought unſeaſonable or indiſcreet, but becauſe I then conceived there was but one opinion with regard to the real value of the Cape of Good Hope, if conſidered only in the ſingle view of its being a barrier and a point of ſecurity to our Indian ſettlements.

Since, however, it has unfortunately been found expedient to relinquiſh the poſſeſſion of it, in conſideration of ſomething that, no doubt, appeared to be of equal moment, ſuch caution will now be no longer neceſſary; and I ſhall therefore, in the

preſent volume, enter very fully into the queſtion of the political, military, and commercial advantages, which this grand outwork of all the European poſſeſſions in India commands, and of the dangers to which thoſe of the Britiſh empire in that quarter of the world, as well as the trade of the Eaſt-India Company, are now expoſed, by having reſigned this point of ſecurity into the hands of an enemy. I feel it, indeed, incumbent on me to prove a poſition I then took for granted, *that the Cape of Good Hope was an acquiſition by which our political and commercial intereſts in the Eaſt Indies had been ſecured and promoted.*

Having hitherto dwelt more fully on the character and diſpoſition of the ſeveral tribes of aboriginal inhabitants, bordering upon the colony, than of the Dutch and German ſettlers, I thought it expedient to commence the preſent volume with a military expedition to the Kaffer frontier, in order to afford myſelf an opportunity of making ſuch remarks and obſervations, as had either eſcaped me in compoſing the firſt, or had purpoſely been omitted. The character and diſpoſition of the inhabitants of a country, likely to become the ſeat of war, are points of no ſmall importance to be known previous to its conqueſt. The late King of Pruſſia, that wiſe and vigorous monarch who, if now living, would not have been tardy in aſſiſting to repel republican tyranny or conſular deſpotiſm, recommends, in his celebrated inſtructions to his general officers, a particular attention to the ſtudy of the diſpoſition, the temper, and the turn of mind, of the people inhabiting thoſe countries which were deſtined to be the object of a military expedition.

In

In this chapter I have alſo blended ſome remarks on particular points and paſſes, with plans and deſcriptions of the three principal bays on the ſouth-eaſt coaſt of the colony, from actual ſurveys ordered to be made by Rear-Admiral Pringle, at the requeſt of Lord Macartney. The regularity of a journal I have not thought it neceſſary to obſerve; nor to conſider the inſertion of dates important, the chief uſe of which is, to mark the diſtances travelled over in a given time, the ſtate of the weather, or temperature of the air, at given ſeaſons, and the growth and maturity of the vegetable productions of the earth, as they appear in ſucceſſion. To theſe points I have already attended in my former publication, as well as to the general geography of the country. Of the preſent work, particular topography will form a material part; the knowledge of the one being no leſs uſeful than that of the other.

It might appear invidious to point out particular inſtances of fatal miſtakes which have happened from want of local information; but they are numerous in the records of our hiſtory. It may not, however, be unimportant to obſerve, that, in acquiring this kind of knowledge, and in making connections with foreign nations, our moſt inveterate and rancorous enemy has always been more ſucceſsful, becauſe more aſſiduous, than ourſelves. I might inſtance this obſervation in the labours of *D'Anquetil du Perron*, whoſe book was withheld from publication for ſeveral years, on account of the important information it was ſuppoſed to contain reſpecting the politics of India:—in the Travels of *Meſſrs. Olivier and Bruguière* into the Turkiſh and Perſian empires, who were ſent by the Executive Council in

1792, with particular inſtructions to inquire into the political ſyſtem, the opinions, topography, commerce, and productions of theſe countries;—in *Volney*'s Travels into Egypt;—in *Sonnini*'s Inveſtigations in the ſame country;—in *Sebaſtiani*'s Miſſion and Report, the objects of which are too glaring to be miſtaken;—and in thoſe perſons who, under the name of *Commercial Agents*, had accepted the odious employment of ſpies.

Few Engliſhmen, indeed, it is to be hoped, would undertake a commiſſion, which might be conſidered as degrading to execute, but for which a Frenchman holds his government alone reſponſible, and its ſanction a ſufficient excuſe. If, by any act in a foreign country, he can gain the favour and countenance of his government at home, he will ſeldom ſtick at the means. Hence we find, in every part of the world, Frenchmen labouring for the intereſts of their nation, in the various characters of ambaſſadors to the court, miſſionaries for propagating the Chriſtian religion, commiſſaries of commerce, emiſſaries of a ſubordinate rank, and voluntary adventurers. A Frenchman, travelling in foreign countries, generally combines national with individual views. Since the late revolution they have been diſperſed, like the Jews, over the whole world; but their diſperſion is yet too recent to have obliterated the *amor patriæ* which, next to that of the ties of blood, clings, perhaps, cloſeſt to the heart. To their uſual propenſity for intrigue at foreign courts, and their national enmity againſt England, the emigrants have now the additional ſpur of doing ſomething that may recommend them to the notice of their country. The Travels of *Le Duc de Rochefaucault Liancourt* through the American ſtates, furniſh

furniſh a ſtriking inſtance of this obſervation. The ſentiments of this nobleman, openly avowed when it no longer ſerved his purpoſe to conceal them, may be conſidered as thoſe of a very great number of the French emigrants; and it is leſs a ſubject of wonder that ſuch ſhould be their ſentiments, than that men ſhould be credulous enough to think them otherwiſe. In the publication of Liancourt, we perceive the national antipathy burſt forth in almoſt every page, amidſt an apparent inclination, on the part of the individual, to be grateful for acknowledged benefits and multiplied civilities. But it is evident that his feelings of abhorrence for the crimes of the French revolution are not more ſtrong than thoſe of envy and hatred at the ſucceſſes and proſperity of the Britiſh nation. One paſſage, in the noble author, is ſo remarkable, that I am tempted to extract it.

" Je ſuis embarraſſé de me rendre compte à moi-même des " differens ſentiments qui m'opprimaient et m'empêchaient de " me livrer entièrement à la reconnaiſſance et à la douceur qui " en reſulte. J'aime les Anglais plus peut-être qu'aucun Fran- " çais ne les aime; j'en ai toujours été très-bien traité; j'ai " des amis parmi eux; je reconnais à ce peuple beaucoup de " grandes qualités et de talens. Je hais les crimes infâmes " dont la revolution Françaiſe a été ſouillé, que m'ont d'ailleurs " enlevé des objets cheris à mon affection et à mon eſtime; " je ſuis banni de France, mes biens ſont confiſqués; je ſuis " traité par le gouvernement de mon pays comme ſi j'etais un " criminel ou un mauvais citoyen; ſéparé de tout ce qui " m'eſt cher, Roberſpierre et les autres brigands par qui ma " nation

" nation s'eſt laiſſée tyranniſer, m'ont rendu exceſſivement
" malheureux, et mes malheurs ſont loin de finir: hé bien!
" ce ſentiment de la patrie, ce ſentiment adjourd'hui ſi pénible,
" ſi contradictoire avec ma poſition, domine tous les autres et
" vient me pourſuivre ici plus que jamais. Le Pavillon Anglais
" ſous lequel je navigue, ſur des lacs où a ſi long-tems flotté
" le Pavillon Français; ces forts, ces canons enlevés à notre
" puiſſance, ce temoignage perpetuellement ſous mes yeux de
" notre ancienne faibleſſe, et de nos adverſités, me gênent,
" m'accablent, et me donnent un excès d'embarras, de honte, que
" je ne puis trop bien démeler, et moins encore definir.—Les
" ſuccés que le Lord Howe a eus l'année dernière, dont les
" Anglais parlent d'autant plus librement devant nous, qu'ils
" croient notre cauſe attachée à la leur; cette avidité d'annoncer
" de nouvelles defaites des Français, d'y croire, et d'oſer nous
" en complimenter, en nous aſſurant que nous rentrerons dans
" nos propriétés par les efforts Britanniques; tous ces ſujets
" habituels d'une converſation dans laquelle l'intention de mes
" hôtes ſemble toujours bonne, ont quelque choſe d'autant plus
" pénible, qu'il faut cacher ſa penſée dans le ſilence; qu'en la
" diſant, on paſſerait pour un ſot aux yeux du très-petit nom-
" bre par qui on ne ſerait pas jugé un Jacobin, un Roberſpierre,
" et qu'on en eſt pour ainſi dire embarraſſé avec ſoi-même. Et
" cependant, il eſt en moi, il eſt profondément en moi de
" préférer de garder toute ma vie mon état de banni, de pauvre
" diable, a me voir rappeler dans mon pays et dans mes biens
" par l'influence des puiſſances étrangères et par l'orgueil
" Anglais. Je n'entends pas parler d'une defaite des troupes
" Françaiſes ſans une grand peine, de leur ſuccés ſans un ſenti-
" ment

" ment d'amour-propre ſatisfait que je ne cherche pas toujours
" aſſez a cacher."—" I am at a loſs to account for the contend-
" ing ſentiments which have grievouſly oppreſſed me, and pre-
" vented me from yielding myſelf entirely to the feelings of
" gratitude, and to that pleaſing ſtate of mind which ever at-
" tends them. I love the Engliſh more, perhaps, than any
" Frenchman does; I have always been extremely well treated
" by them; I have friends among them; I acknowledge they
" poſſeſs many great qualities as well as talents. I abhor the
" infamous crimes which have ſtained the French revolution,
" which have torn from me the deareſt objects of my affections
" and eſteem; I am baniſhed from France; my property is
" confiſcated; I am treated by my own government as if I
" were a criminal or a bad citizen; ſeparated from every thing
" I hold dear, Roberſpierre and the other brigands, to whoſe
" tyranny my country has ſubmitted, have rendered me ex-
" tremely miſerable, and my miſery is far from being at an
" end: but yet, this feeling for one's country, a feeling at
" preſent ſo painful, ſo much at variance with my condition,
" ſtill triumphs over all others, and purſues me here more
" powerfully than ever. This Engliſh flag under which I ſail,
" upon lakes where the French flag has ſo long been flying;
" theſe forts, theſe cannon taken from us, this proof, perpe-
" tually under my eyes, of our former weakneſs and ill ſucceſs,
" diſturb, overwhelm, and fill me with a confuſion and ſhame,
" which I can neither well diſtinguiſh nor define. The ſucceſſes
" of Lord Howe laſt year, of which the Engliſh talk with
" the greater freedom before us, as they conſider our cauſe at-
" tached to theirs; that avidity to announce freſh defeats of

" the French, to give credit to them, and to dare to congratu-
" late us on ſuch occaſions, by aſſuring us that we ſhall be
" reſtored to our poſſeſſions through Britiſh exertions—all
" theſe ſubjects, the conſtant theme of converſation, in which
" the intention of my hoſts always appear to be good, are ſtill
" more painful to me, as prudence requires me to conceal my
" thoughts, for, in avowing them, one would certainly be
" conſidered as a fool in the eyes of the very few who might
" not think one a Jacobin, a Roberſpierre; and thus is a man
" perplexed with himſelf. And yet, it is within me, moſt
" deeply rooted within me, to prefer, through my whole life,
" this ſtate of baniſhment, of a forlorn outcaſt, rather than owe
" my reſtoration to my country and my property to the in-
" fluence of foreign powers, and to Engliſh pride. I never
" hear of a defeat of the French without great diſtreſs, nor of
" their ſucceſs without an emotion of ſelf-love, which I am
" not always ſufficiently careful to conceal."

The ſentiments contained in this paſſage are ſuch as numbers of the emigrants, by their conduct, have ſhewn to be congenial with their own; and ſuch as ought to convince us how little gratitude they really feel for the protection and ſupport they have received from Engliſh generoſity; and that neither the miſeries nor the injuſtice they have ſuffered from their own country can ever make them forget for a moment their national enmity. To expect that they ſhould for ever abandon their country would be a ſentiment equally illiberal on the other ſide. It would have been well, indeed, for themſelves, and better for England, that the whole body of the emigrants had returned to France. As to

thoſe

thoſe few malignant and unchriſtian prieſts who have dared, in their prayers, to invoke the vengeance of Heaven on the hand that ſaved them from aſſaſſinatio, and lifted bread to their mouths when, otherwiſe, they muſt have been famiſhed, theſe miſcreants have ſo far degraded themſelves below the common level of humanity, that it is not eaſy to determine whether they are more deſerving of pity or contempt.

In all their purſuits abroad the French are indefatigable. In India they have tranſlated the enlightened doctrines of the Rights of Man into the language of ſome of the country powers; they converted the late Tippoo Sultaun into a citizen of the world; and eſtabliſhed a Jacobin club in the very centre of Seringapatam. In Hydrabad they had proceeded to greater lengths. We find them in the Birman Empire, labouring to undermine the Britiſh character, and to inſinuate themſelves into the favour of the court by their ſervices. In Cochin-China they have been ſtill more induſtrious. They have tranſlated the *Encyclopedie des connaiſſances humaines* into the language of the country; they have inſtructed the people to build ſhips of war, and they have trained their ſoldiers to the uſe of artillery. So great a favourite was the late titular biſhop of Adran with the king of Cochin-China that, on his death, after his brother miſſionaries had interred his remains according to the rites of the Romiſh church, he ordered the body to be taken up and again buried with all the ceremonies and funeral pomp of the Cochin-Chineſe religion, as the greateſt honour he could beſtow on his memory: nor could all the expoſtulations, or the entreaties, of the miſſionaries, who were ſcandalized at

ſuch unhallowed proceedings, prevail upon the king to forego this teſtimony of his great veneration. It is even ſaid, and believed, that they have urged the monarch of this country to throw off his vaſſalage to the emperor of China, which, if it be true, cannot fail of producing a war that may either prove fatal to our trade at Canton, or be turned greatly to our advantage; for, if the Chineſe ſhould diſcover Europeans acting againſt them, little ſolicitous as they really are with regard to foreign trade, they might be induced to ſhut their ports againſt us; or, abhorring, as they do, French principles, and afraid leſt they ſhould get poſſeſſion of ſome country, at no great diſtance from their empire, they might, perhaps, by proper management, be inclined to court the alliance and protection of England.

It has been mentioned, indeed, but with what degree of truth I do not pretend to ſay, that the Viceroy of Canton has lately hinted it would by no means be diſagreeable to the Chineſe government to ſee the Engliſh in poſſeſſion of Macao, inſtead of the Portugueſe, whom they do not conſider as able to defend this ſmall neck of a large iſland againſt any attack the French might be diſpoſed to make upon it. If the fact be ſo, and the Court of Directors cannot but have long known it, it is preſumed that they have loſt not a moment in negotiating with Portugal for this poſſeſſion, which is only a ſmall peninſular promontory of no uſe nor benefit whatever to that kingdom, but of infinite importance to ours. The French know the value of our trade to China as well as we do, and will let ſlip no opportunity of embroiling us with the Chineſe, either by direct or indirect means. A Monſieur Perron, more

than twelve months ago, in the capacity of commiſſary of commerce, has hoiſted the French flag at Canton. Even here, before the revolution, the French had greatly the advantage over us by retaining in their employ an agent, a ſon of the learned Monſieur de Guignes, who underſtood the Chineſe language, whilſt, on every occaſion, the Engliſh were obliged to have recourſe to the Hong merchants to act as interpreters, the very men who were moſt intereſted in counteracting their views. Happily, however, at this critical moment, the Engliſh Eaſt India Company poſſeſs the means of communicating directly, and in the language of the country, with the Chineſe government, through a gentleman in their employ, whoſe extraordinary talents and engaging manners, added to his ſtation in ſociety, cannot fail to be productive of incalculable ſervice to their important concerns with this nation. In a word, there is ſcarcely a part of the globe where Frenchmen may not be found, employing their talents, and their time, in gaining ſuch information, or making ſuch connections, as may be uſeful or agreeable to their government at home.

It cannot be denied that, from the labours of ſuch perſons, much information of foreign countries has been communicated to the world. In this reſpect, the French have contributed as much as, and perhaps more than, any other nation. But the Dutch and Portugueſe, partly from the effect of a narrow policy, and partly, perhaps, from the weakneſs of intellectual powers, owing to a defective education, have rather impeded, than promoted, any information relative to their colonies. The Cape of Good Hope, however, forms an exception from this

this remark; for although the Dutch themſelves have not furniſhed much intelligence reſpecting the ſouthern promontory of Africa, foreigners were ſeldom refuſed permiſſion to viſit the interior parts of the ſettlement. French, Swedes, and Engliſh have publiſhed accounts, and ſome of them voluminous, of this colony; yet, at the capture, ſingular as it may appear, we were entirely ignorant of all the points that were moſt material to be known. There was not a ſurvey of one of the bays that could be depended on, except one of Table Bay, made by order of governor Van de Graaf; not a ſingle map that took in one tenth part of the colony. Neither the direction nor the diſtance of Graaf Reynet were known to any of the inhabitants. It was called a month's journey, or ſo many hundred hours, with an ox waggon; but whether it was five hundred or a thouſand miles was uncertain. That enlightened officer Sir James Craig roughly calculated it at eight hundred miles; which is three hundred miles more than it actually is. He obſerved that he once had received a diſpatch from thence in ſixteen days, but that the journey had been done in thirteen. Before we left the Cape, the Engliſh officers and Engliſh dragoons, performed the journey in ſeven days, and ſometimes in ſix; ſeldom uſing more than two horſes upon the road. It was pretended that the three country diſtricts could raiſe a militia of cavalry to the amount of from fifteen to twenty thouſand men; whereas the fact is, there are little more than twenty thouſand white inhabitants, men, women, and children, in the whole ſettlement. The country was ſuppoſed to be ſo productive of grain, that a Cargo of wheat was ſent to England out of the quantity found in ſtore at the capture; the following year there

was

was a famine; and a very ſerious ſcarcity has twice happened during the ſhort period of our poſſeſſion.

The earlieſt authors, who have written on the ſubject of the Cape, are *Tachard*, *Merklin*, and *Valentyn*, none of whom were a day's journey from the town, and, conſequently, muſt have drawn up their relations from what they could collect from the inhabitants; which experience has found to be neither important nor correct. The ſame remark will nearly apply to the work of *Kolbe*, who, although profeſſedly ſent out in the character of a naturaliſt, has deſcribed ſubjects that he never ſaw; retailed idle ſtories of the peaſantry that betray his great credulity and imbecility of mind; and filled his book with relations that are calculated to miſlead rather than inform. The *Abbé de la Caille* had no opportunity of collecting general information, being principally employed in the arduous undertaking of meaſuring a baſe line, of thirty-eight thouſand eight hundred and two feet, in order to determine the length of a degree on the meridian; and in aſcertaining the ſituations of the principal fixed ſtars in the ſouthern hemiſphere. His account of the Cape is, therefore, very imperfect. *Sparrmann*, the Swede, followed next, and, by his indefatigable labours, ſupplied a very extenſive and ſatisfactory account of the natural productions, eſpecially in the animal kingdom, of thoſe parts of the ſettlement over which he travelled; but he was credulous enough to repeat many of the abſurd ſtories told of the Hottentots by his predeceſſor *Kolbe*, with the addition of others collected from the ignorant boors. His map is alſo ſo miſerably defective, and ſo incorrect in every part, that he muſt certainly have

have conſtructed it in his cloſet from recollection, otherwiſe errors of two and even three hundred miles in latitude, as we ſhall preſently ſee, could not have happened. *Thunberg*, another Swede, travelled a great deal within the limits of the colony, and made many valuable additions to the diſcoveries of *Sparrmann* in the natural hiſtory of the country; yet, although he deſcribes objects as they preſented themſelves before him, and touches on a variety of ſubjects, his book, being made up of a collection of incomplete and unconnected paragraphs, whoſe juxta-poſition are ſometimes whimſical enough, conveys neither accurate topography nor even a general idea of the colony.

The work of our countryman *Mr.* (now lieutenant-colonel) *Patterſon*, is a mere journal of occurrences, with deſcriptions of a few ſubjects in natural hiſtory, ſome of which, at that time, were new; but the information it contains, with regard to the extent and population of the colony, the character of the ſettlers and of the natives, is very ſlight; and he has republiſhed the very defective map of *Sparrmann*.

There are, alſo, two modern publications of travels made by Dutchmen. The one is by *Hoppe*, who attended an expedition that was ſent from the Cape to the northward, in ſearch of a nation that were reported to wear linen cloathing. This expedition made very little progreſs on account of the want of water, and the failure of their cattle. The nation, in all probability, was the Portugueze colony on the ſouthern part of Angola; or, perhaps, ſome ſeamen belonging to a whaler that had

had touched at *Angra Pequena*, a ſmall bay in latitude 26° 36′ ſouth, might have been ſeen by the Damaras, or the Great Namaquas. The other publication is a Journal of *Van Reenen*, who, with ſome of the Dutch peaſantry, proceeded through the Kaffer country, in ſearch of the paſſengers and crew of the Groſvenor that was wrecked on the coaſt a little to the ſouthward of De la Goa Bay. This journal was publiſhed by *Captain Riou* in England, with the addition of a map, conſtructed from the materials contained in the journal, and the information of a Dutch navigator. It is therefore hardly neceſſary to obſerve that, from ſuch *data*, it could not be otherwiſe than defective in moſt of the eſſential points that conſtitute the value of a ſea-chart. It is incorrect in the latitudes and longitudes, in the indentations of the coaſt, and in the ſize and ſhape of the bays. A partial map of the colony by *De la Rochette* has alſo been lately publiſhed, which is ſo far incorrect, even in the vicinity of the Cape, that the *four-and-twenty rivers* are made to flow in an oppoſite direction to that which is actually the caſe.

In ſpeaking of charts, it may not, perhaps, be conſidered unimportant to obſerve in this place, that the whole of the coaſt of South Africa, between Algoa or Zwartkop's Bay, and that of *De la Goa*, ſtretches, in reality, much farther to the eaſtward, (making the continent in this part much wider,) than it is laid down in any of the ſea-charts that have hitherto been publiſhed; by ſeveral degrees more eaſterly than ſome of them make it. To this circumſtance may, probably, have been owing the loſs of the Groſvenor Indiaman, and many other ſhips that have

been wrecked on the Kaffer coaſt; and by it may be explained the reaſon why ſhips, coming from the north-eaſtward, almoſt invariably fall in with the land, to the northward of Algoa Bay, a full degree or more before they make it by their obſervations or reckoning. Immediately beyond Algoa Bay the coaſt, in the charts, is uſually made to trend to the north-eaſt, and even to the northward of this point, whereas, in reality, it runs only eaſt-north-eaſt to the mouth of the Great Fiſh River, or Rio d'Infanté, whoſe latitude at this place, by repeated obſervations, I found to be 33° 25′ ſouth; and from hence to the mouth of the Keiſkamma in the Kaffer country, the direction continues pretty nearly the ſame; after which, and not before, the coaſt begins to trend more to the northward. At the mouth of this river I had alſo an obſervation for the latitude, which I found to be 33° 12′ ſouth. The latitude of the true Cape point is 34° 22′ ſouth; ſo that, in the diſtance of about ſix hundred and fifty miles, the coaſt inclines to the northward no more than ſeventy miles from the parallel of the true Cape of Good Hope, which is very far from being the caſe in any of the ſea or land-charts I have ever ſeen. It may not be amiſs to ſubjoin the errors in latitude of theſe eaſtern points, as they appear in ſome of the charts.

Neptune

	Keiſkamma.	Rio d'Infante, or Great Fiſh River	Zwartkop's Bay.
Neptune Oriental	32° 0′	32° 50′	33° 37′
Actual Obſervations	33 12	33 25	33 56
Errors - -	1 12	35	19
Captain Riou - -	32 30	33 25	33 46
Actual Obſervations	33 12	33 25	33 56
Errors - -	42′ *miles*		10
Sparrmann - -	28 12	30 0	30 57
Actual Obſervations	33 12	33 25	33 56
Errors - -	5 0	3 25	2 59
Mr. Le Vaillant -	29 42	30 44	31 54
Actual Obſervations	33 12	33 25	33 56
Errors - -	3 30	2 41	2 2

With regard to the laſt-mentioned gentleman, I ſhould not have noticed his map had he not endeavoured to impreſs the world with an idea of the great pains that were taken in collecting the materials, and of the aſſiſtance he afterwards received, and the attention that was beſtowed, in putting them together. And in order to add force, as he ſuppoſes, to the value of his obſervations, with a pretended zeal for the cauſe of humanity (pretended becauſe he knew that every line in his chart was falſe), he breaks out into the following apoſtrophe:—"Had "my voyage been productive of no other good than that of

" *preventing a ſingle ſhipwreck*, I ſhould have applauded myſelf " during my whole life for undertaking it!" The fact is, he has done little more, in the eaſtern part of his map, than copy from Sparrmann; and the whole to the northward of Saint Helena Bay is a work of fancy. Two inſtances will be ſufficient to ſhew how very little he is to be truſted. He places Camdeboo, and the beginning of the Snowy Mountains, in the latitude of about 28° ſouth, inſtead of 32° 15′ ſouth, an error of more than 290 Engliſh miles! And he makes the Orange River *deſcend* from the northward, nearly parallel to the coaſt, which, in fact, takes its riſe near the eaſtern coaſt, and *aſcends* towards the north-weſt. Meſſrs. Truter and Somerville, who, two years ago, penetrated farther into the interior of Southern Africa than any Europeans had ever done before, calculated that they croſſed this river in about 29° 0′ ſouth, and between 23° and 24° eaſt of Greenwich. I ſkirted its banks from 29° 40′ to 30° 15′ ſouth, and between the longitudes of 25° 45′ and 26° 30′ eaſt, which ſhews, as I ſaid before, that its courſe is north-weſterly. *Monſieur Le Vaillant* cannot be offended at my pointing out his miſtakes, as he himſelf has obſerved, that " a traveller ought to conceal nothing that may lead to " error in the ſciences." Beſides, I feel myſelf called upon to anſwer a charge, preferred againſt me by *Monſieur Grandpré*, the tranſlator of my former volume, that I have attempted to invalidate the truth of *Monſieur Le Vaillant*'s work, *becauſe it was from the pen of a Frenchman.* I can very ſeriouſly aſſure *Monſieur Grandpré*, that he is miſtaken; that I conſider the work of *Monſieur Le Vaillant* as replete with valuable matter, and ingenious obſervations; but they are ſo

jumbled together with fiction and romance, that none but thoſe who have followed his ſteps can pretend to ſeparate the one from the other. It is of little importance to mankind to know what exquiſite amuſement *Monſieur Le Vaillant* could derive from careſſing his favourite ape, or to tell the world that "*Kees* was ſtill a virgin!" It is ſometimes allowable for a traveller to be "himſelf the hero of each little tale:" but Monſieur Le Vaillant is an hero on every occaſion. To magnify his courage and his perſeverance, to detail the prudence of his meaſures, and to deſcribe in glowing language his ſufferings, were ſoothing to his vanity; and, as moſt readers know how to appreciate them, the florid deſcriptions of his compiler can do little harm; but when he endeavours to miſlead the world on ſubjects that are important, and to impreſs falſe notions of the people and the country he pretends to delineate, he lays himſelf open to cenſure, and ought, in juſtice to the public, to be expoſed.

With regard to his not having croſſed the Orange River, I conſider the information of his beſt friends, the *Slabert* family, to be deciſive; "he left Zwartland in July, travelled to "the Orange River, and returned in the beginning of the "following December." I may ſurely then be allowed to pronounce this part of his chart as a work of fancy, and his *Koraquas*, *Kabobiquas*, and *Hooſuanas*, as "creatures of the brain." By the firſt he probably meant the *Koras*, a tribe of Hottentots dwelling on the banks of the ſaid river, conſiderably higher than the place where he viſited it; and of whom he might have obtained ſome account from the Namaaquas; and his *Hooſuanas* might,

might, perhaps, be intended for the *Booſhuanas*, whom the two above-mentioned gentlemen viſited two years ago; inſtead, however, of the Pigmy Hottentots, which the firſt are repreſented to be, the latter were found to be a tall athletic race of Kaffers. Theſe gentlemen, on comparing *Monſieur Le Vaillant*'s book with the country, and the natives beyond the Orange River, were decidedly of opinion that, ſo far from advancing to the Tropic, he had never croſſed the ſaid river. But enough of *Monſieur Le Vaillant*. As to a work lately publiſhed under the name of Dambergher, it would be an inſult to the underſtanding of the public, to ſuppoſe that ſo groſs and clumſy an impoſition could for a moment paſs detection.

Having thus noticed ſome of the defects and omiſſions in the works of the moſt eſteemed authors who have written on the Cape, I ſhall beg leave to ſay a word with reſpect to the manner in which the chart, prefixed to the former volume of this work, was conſtructed.

The geographical knowledge of the colony being ſo very imperfect, and only two partial maps in exiſtence that could at all be depended on; one, that of *De la Rochette* already noticed; the other, a ſurvey on a very large ſcale, having all the farms marked down from Zwellendam to Algoa Bay, and from the firſt chain of mountains to the ſea-coaſt, comprehending, however, only a ſmall portion of Zwellendam, Lord Macartney, in the inſtructions I had the honour to receive from him, enjoined me to pay a particular attention to this important ſubject. I furniſhed myſelf, accordingly, with a ſextant of ſix inches

ches radius, by Ramſden; an artificial horizon; a good pocket chronometer; a pocket compaſs; and a meaſuring chain. Having been able, in the courſe of a few days, to aſcertain pretty nearly the uſual rate of travelling with waggons drawn by oxen, I carefully noted down the time employed from one halting place to another, with the direction of the road, as pointed out by the compaſs.

The uniform pace of the oxen, the level ſurface of the great Karroo or deſert, and the ſtraightneſs of the road, were *data* that might alone have ſupplied a ſketch of tolerable exactneſs; but, in order to aſcertain any little deviation that might have been made, either to the northward or the ſouthward, a meridional altitude of the Sun was regularly taken every day, the conſtant clearneſs of the weather being favourable for ſuch obſervations. A ſeries of latitudes thus obtained, at intervals of about twenty miles of diſtance, ſupplied a correction by which the route might be reduced to a great degree of certainty.

The ſtations or reſting-places of each day being verified by theſe means, I then took the bearings, and made interſections, of any remarkable point in the diſtant mountains, as long as it could be ſeen, for the purpoſe of determining its poſition upon the chart. The uninterrupted lines, in which the chains of mountains generally run on the ſouth part of the continent of Africa, are particularly favourable for laying down a ſketch of the country, without going through the detail of a regular ſurvey.

Having

Having proceeded, in this manner, to mark down the route and the chains of mountains on each ſide of it, as far as the droſdy of Graaf Reynet, and from thence to the ſea-coaſt at Algoa Bay, I here joined Lieutenant Rice of the navy, an able and intelligent navigator, who had been ſent in his Majeſty's brig the Hope, under the inſtructions of Rear-Admiral Pringle, to make a ſurvey of this bay, and of the coaſt and bays from hence to the Cape. Here we made repeated obſervations for the latitude, but had no opportunity, during our ſtay, of taking the angular diſtance of the Sun and Moon, in order to determine the longitude. I therefore retained the longitude ariſing from the *data* I procured in the manner already mentioned, although it differed a little from Mr. Rice's, being about a degree more eaſterly. His longitude was the reſult of the log-reckoning; but as the currents that, at all ſeaſons of the year, are found to ſet in one direction or another upon the Bank of L'Aguillas, render the log-reckoning very uncertain; and, as the reſult of obſervations, afterwards made, gave about the mean longitude between ours, it did not appear important to make any change in the chart. I was moreover induced to retain the longitude, brought out by computation of the diſtance and direction travelled, on perceiving that it differed not half a degree with that of Algoa Bay, as laid down in the excellent chart of the Bank L'Aguillas, publiſhed by Major Rennell.

A diſagreement, however, will be found in ſome of the longitudes, as given in the text, and thoſe marked in the chart, for the knowledge of which I am indebted to the writers of the Critical Review. This difference, which is not material, muſt

muſt have ariſen, I ſuppoſe, from adopting, in the manuſcript, the longitudes of Mr. Rice after the chart had been finiſhed and ſent to England, on the return of the Earl of Macartney; whereas, the manuſcript was not tranſmitted for publication till twelve months afterwards. For I obſerve that the bays, on the ſouth coaſt of the chart, are a little more eaſterly than they are ſaid to be in the text; but in all the other parts, except the bays, the one exactly correſponds with the other.

That the relative ſituations of the ſeveral parts of the chart are correct, or pretty nearly ſo, I can venture to pronounce, as no pains were ſpared, nor precautions neglected, to make it as complete as the means I employed would admit; I have, indeed, received the flattering teſtimony of Brigadier (now Major-General) Vandeleur who, after travelling from the Cape of Good Hope to the Great Fiſh River, and from thence to Graaf Reynet, with a copy of the chart in his hand, and a good perambulator, obſerves, that he had not been able to diſcover an error amounting to ten miles in any part of the country over which he had paſſed. It may be right to mention, however, that I cannot be very certain as to the ſea-coaſt between Saint Helena Bay and the Khamieſberg, as I could only obtain a ſight of that coaſt from theſe two points; but the error cannot be conſiderable, nor of much importance, as charts of this deſcription are not uſed for nautical purpoſes. The great object was to aſcertain the extent of the ſettlement; the natural productions it afforded; and the relative poſition of its boundaries to the neighbouring tribes of natives; points, important as they were, that had hitherto not been determined.

The imperfect and partial accounts that have been given of the Cape may, in ſome meaſure, explain the jarring and contradictory opinions that have been held with regard to its importance, as connected with our Indian trade and ſettlements, and as a territorial acquiſition. This remarkable promontory, the doubling of which formed a new æra in the annals of navigation, and on that account alone ought to be well known, has been variouſly repreſented. Whilſt ſome have held it out as a terreſtrial paradiſe, where nature ſpontaneouſly yielded all that was neceſſary, not only for the ſupply of the ordinary wants and conveniences, but alſo of the luxuries and ſuperfluities of life; others have deſcribed it as a barren peninſular promontory, connected by a ſandy iſthmus to a ſtill more barren continent.

In this inſtance, as in moſt caſes, we may, perhaps, diſcover the truth to lie in the middle. It offers nothing very peculiar, either in the productive quality of the ſoil, or in its ſterility. Where there is moiſture the warmth of the climate promotes vegetation, without the preparation of an artificial ſoil by the aid of compoſts or manures; hence, one crop of grain in the year may be procured from the ſhalloweſt ſoil and even in ſheer ſand. But, unfortunately for the country, in the hotteſt months of the year, from the beginning of December to the end of March, and ſometimes to the middle of April, there ſcarcely falls a ſingle ſhower of rain. In theſe months, the verdure totally diſappears; and the whole ſurface of the country preſents to the eye either large tracts of white ſand dotted with ſhrivelled heaths and other ſhrubs, ſtruggling as it were to maintain

maintain the living principle, or regions covered with that brown ſickly hue in which an angry poet, with more wit than juſtice, has dreſſed the ſurface of that part of our iſland to the northward of the Tweed:

> " Far as the eye could reach no tree was ſeen,
> " Earth clad in ruſſet, ſcorn'd the lively green."

To perſons arriving from a long ſea voyage, and immediately meeting with moſt of the European, and ſome of the tropical, fruits, the Cape muſt, no doubt, appear a moſt delightful ſpot; and ſuch perſons, making a ſhort ſtay, and loaded with refreſhments for the ſucceeding part of their voyage, are apt to extol and to exaggerate the pleaſantneſs and the value of the country. Botaniſts, alſo, and floriſts, are ſo taken up with the beauty, and vaſt variety, of flowering ſhrubs and bulbous rooted plants, that they are apt to overlook the ſandy ſurface out of which they grow, entirely bare of any kind of graſs, and deſtitute of that verdant turf which is ſo diſtinguiſhing a feature of our happy iſland. Beautiful as the heaths of the Cape moſt unqueſtionably are, yet thoſe who have been accuſtomed to look at them nurtured in the green-houſes of England, where all or moſt of the numerous ſpecies, and variety of the ſpecies, are collected into one groupe, and arranged ſo as to convey the moſt ſtriking effect, would be greatly diſappointed if they expected to meet with them, in the ſame ſtate of perfection, in their native ſoil. They would here behold whole tracts of country covered, in the ſame manner as our heath lands, with one or two ſpecies, ſhattered and jagged by the force of the

winds, ſhrivelled by the drought, or ſtubbed by the cattle. Even in the boggy grounds, where they grow to a ſize of which no idea can be formed from ſeeing the ſame ſpecies in England, they are neither ſo elegant in their habit, nor flower ſo freely, as in their cultivated ſtate.

Thoſe tracts, however, on which the ſhrubby plants are found, barren as they are, may be conſidered among the beſt that the ſettlement affords; the mountains generally exhibit maſſes of naked rock; and the Karroo deſerts are wide expanded beds of compact clay tinged with iron, and mixed with pebbles of quartz and comminuted ſand-ſtone. A piece of Karroo earth is not unlike, in appearance, to that of puzzoli, but entirely different in its nature, water which renders the latter hard, converting the former into a greaſy marl. If theſe elevated plains were bleſſed with ſhowers, which never happen in the winter ſeaſon, nor indeed in ſummer, unleſs by occaſional thunder ſtorms, they would become the moſt fertile tracts of land in the whole ſettlement. If, by any accident, a ſtream of water has paſſed over Karroo ground, the productive quality of the ſoil, and the luxuriancy of vegetation, are almoſt incredible. Experience, in ſuch ſituations, has ſhewn, that, without the aſſiſtance of manure, or the labour of fallowing, returns of corn have been produced from ſixty to eighty fold.

The ſcarcity of water, the reaſon of which I ſhall endeavour to explain in the following chapter, is, in fact, the grand obſtacle to an extended cultivation at the Cape of Good Hope. Wherever a ſtreamlet occurs, a houſe is ſure to be erected, and,

were it not for ſuch rills, ſcarcely an eſculent vegetable would be produced in the ſummer ſeaſon. The country, however, is capable of much improvement. Inſtead of the grounds being entirely open, and equally expoſed to the winds and the Sun, trees and hedge-rows might be planted; tanks or reſervoirs of water formed; wells dug; and the running ſtreams encreaſed by opening their ſources, and clearing out their channels.

It is very remarkable that the ſame people, who are celebrated in Europe for their induſtry and frugality, ſhould become, in all their colonies, the moſt indolent and prodigal of all other nations. In the fine climate of the Cape they engage in little or no manual labour. If a common ſoldier, having ſerved out his time, ſhould obtain his diſcharge, and, having been brought up to ſome trade or profeſſion, ſhould commence buſineſs, the moment he is enabled to purchaſe a ſlave, he ceaſes to work. In Batavia, the Dutch are ſtill more indolent; even their ſlaves are there ſo helpleſs, that were it not for the Chineſe the Europeans muſt literally ſtarve. Theſe induſtrious people exerciſe all manner of trades and handicraft work, cultivate the ground, ſupply the market with vegetables, with butcher's meat, and with poultry; raiſe rice, pepper, coffee, and ſugar, for conſumption and exportation; carry on the whole commerce of the iſland both internal and coaſtways; act as brokers, factors, and interpreters between the Dutch government and the natives; farm, and collect, the taxes and revenues, both for the former and the latter; in a word, they poſſeſs among themſelves the monopoly of the whole iſland. Yet, uſeful as theſe people are, and indiſpenſably neceſſary to the Dutch in this ſettlement, their numbers

bers are regarded with an eye of jealouſy, and their growing wealth with that of avarice. It is calculated that not fewer than one hundred thouſand Chineſe reſide within the territories of the Dutch Eaſt India Company in this iſland, on each of whom it was propoſed to lay a capitation tax of five rix-dollars; which, impolitic as it may appear, is ſtill better than to put them to death in cold blood as they did, on the moſt frivolous pretext, about the middle of the laſt century, to the amount of many thouſand ſouls. Ten thouſand Chineſe, tranſported to the Cape of Good Hope, would prove a more valuable gold mine to the colony, than thoſe which are ſuppoſed to exiſt; but which moſt probably exiſt only in the imaginations of the ſettlers.

It is not, however, in the light of a ſettlement, capable of producing articles of valuable export to the mother country, on which the real importance of the Cape of Good Hope depends. Whatever its claims may be as a territorial poſſeſſion, or a commercial emporium, in the hands of other powers, England ought to conſider it in no other view than as a point of *ſecurity* or of *annoyance* to her poſſeſſions in the Eaſt Indies, and to her commerce with China. On this ground I ſhall endeavour to ſtate the ſolid advantages to be derived from the Cape, as dependent on the crown of England; and the very ſerious conſequences that may reſult from its remaining in the hands of an enemy.

The firſt, as being the moſt important conſideration, will be the advantages it poſſeſſes as a military ſtation; after which, I

ſhall

ſhall attempt to point out its value as a port and naval ſtation; and, in the laſt place, as a commercial emporium and territorial acquiſition. Theſe conſiderations will lead me to enquire into its real intrinſic value as a colony, in its preſent ſtate, and to what extent it ſeems capable of further improvement. And, as the information on this head is moſt deficient, and opinions various and contradictory, it may not be unacceptable, and it certainly is not unimportant, to draw up, from authentic documents, a ſtatiſtical ſketch of the ſettlement, which will enable the reader to form a competent judgment of its value, as a country capable of ſupplying proviſions, at a cheap rate, for the army and navy; of producing articles of export for Europe and America, in exchange for Britiſh produce and manufactures; and as a general depôt or central point for the ſouthern whale fiſhery, which has now become ſo great an object of Britiſh trade and navigation.

If any of the hints thrown out in this volume ſhould prove beneficial to my country, by ſuggeſting ſuch meaſures as may avert the evils which now threaten our trade and ſettlements in the Eaſt, I ſhall conſider the labour and application of three months not to have been beſtowed in vain.

CHAP. II.

Military Expedition to the Kaffer Frontier.

Occaſion of this Expedition.—Affairs of Graaf Reynet.—Gordon's Bay.—Hottentot Holland's Kloof—Obſtinacy of the Coloniſts.—Cruelty to Animals, bad Effects of.—Palmiet and Bott Rivers.—Temperature of the Air.—The Shoemaker's Hovel.—Rapid Vegetation after Rain—Plants firſt appearing.—Sweet Milk's Valley—wild Animals there.—Eſtabliſhment of Hernhuters or Moravians—good Effects of.—Hottentots diſcouraged by the Coloniſts—Sir James Craig's Teſtimony of—other Miſſionaries.—Inſtance of Zeal in Mr. Kicherer—Reflection thereupon.—Inſtance of ſavage Cruelty in the Boors—a Boor taken into Cuſtody.—Two of our Dragoons loſt in a River.—Scarcity of Water attempted to be explained from the Nature and Antiquity of the Mountains—Facts adduced in Proof of the Theory.—Cape Iſthmus never covered with the Sea—Reaſons for ſuch Conjecture.—L'Aguillas Bank once Part of the Continent.—Antiquity of Africa.—Muſcle Bay—Chart and Deſcription of.—Croſs Attaquas Kloof *into* Lange Kloof.—*Wine—Raiſins—Brandy—all of bad Quality.—Experiment for making good Wine.—Appearance of Lange Kloof—croſs the Mountains to Plettenberg's Bay—Reaſon why Foreſt Trees are more abundant there than elſewhere.—Mr. Calander's Account of the* Knyſna—*and ſurrounding Country.—Condition of a Cape Boor.—Anchor found on Table Mountain.—Plants near Plettenberg's Bay—and Animals.—Inſtance of Ingenuity in a deaf and dumb Man.—Appearance of the Country between Camtoos River and Algoa Bay.—Engagement between* La Preneuſe *and the* Rattleſnake.—*Change of Circumſtances favourable to the Boors—rebellious Boors ſent to the Cape—tried by the Court of Juſtice there—Conſtitution of this Court—bad Character of undeſerved. Boors plundered by the Hottentots—Juſtification of theſe People—their cruel Treatment by the Boors—Examples of in a Hottentot Woman and Child cut with Shambocs—in a Boy with Iron Rings clenched on his Legs—Puniſhment of the Boor.—Another Inſtance of the ſanguinary Character of the Boors—its Cauſe explained.—People*

of

of Cape Town.—The Burgher and the Whale.—Character and Mode of Life —tenacious of Rank.—Hottentot Corps—Character of.—Condition of the Slaves.—Imprudence of the Whites.—Adminiſtration of Juſtice between the Whites and Blacks.—Rencontre with the Kaffer Chief Cango.—Compariſon between the Perſons of Boors and Kaffers —Reflection.—Food of the Kaffers.—Booſhuanas.—City of Leetakoo.—Conjecture of the Kaffer Origin—Extent of their Country—their Dogs not ſubject to Canine Madneſs.—Small Pox not endemic in South Africa—Origin of.—High Situations favourable to the Growth of Animals.—Uncommon Inſtance of Bulk in a Woman—Fate of this hapleſs Creature.—Attack of the Kaffers upon the Britiſh Troops—a wounded Kaffer taken.—Rencontre of Boors and Hottentots at Algoa Bay.—Kaffers ſtorm the Britiſh Camp.—Melancholy Fate of Lieutenant Chumney and ſixteen Men.—Ill-judged Conduct of the Boors—Conſequences.—Hatred of Kaffers and Hottentots againſt the Boors—Conduct of the latter at Plettenberg's Bay.—Horrid Murder committed in Lange Klooff.—Curious Articles of Inſtructions propoſed for the Boors in their Wars with the Kaffers.—Return to the Cape.—Change of Conduct in the Coloniſts—reconciled to the Britiſh Government—indifferent as to the Return of their own—little Rejoicing ſhewn at this Event—Reaſons of it—final Evacuation.

FROM the moment that the departure of the Earl of Macartney for England was made known in the diſtant parts of the colony, the ignorant and miſguided boors, excited by that party of miſchievous, and not leſs ignorant, perſons in Cape Town, who had long ſhewn themſelves averſe to all government, ſeemed to think that with his Lordſhip had departed all authority and the means of bringing them to legal puniſhment. Their reſtleſs and turbulent minds, and, above all, their avaricious and iniquitous views upon the harmleſs Kaffers, could no longer brook reſtraint; and they determined, at a ſelect meeting, as one of them obſerved in a letter to his friend at the Cape, "Now that the old Lord was gone away, to prove "themſelves true patriots."

The firſt act of their patriotic ſpirit was an attempt to take by violence, out of the hands of juſtice, a criminal whom the Landroſt, or chief magiſtrate of the diſtrict, had forwarded, under the eſcort of a dragoon, towards the Cape. His crime, which was an act of forgery on orphan property, committed to the care of a conſtituted board in the Cape called the *Weeſkammer*, or chamber for managing the effects of minors and orphans, had been fully proved againſt him before the provincial court of judicature; but being one of the patriotic party, and a very diſtinguiſhed character in all the diſturbances that had taken place in this diſtrict, he was conſidered as too valuable a ſubject to be taken off by a regular courſe of juſtice. Accordingly, about fourteen boors, each armed with an enormous muſquet uſed for killing elephants and other wild beaſts, were diſpatched upon the Karroo, or great deſert, on the meritorious enterprize of reſtoring the culprit to the ſociety of which he was a member. The dragoon, however, into whoſe cuſtody he had been committed, thought proper to demur, and at length told them, in a very reſolute and ſpirited manner, that ſooner than ſurrender him into their hands, or ſuffer him to be taken out of his, he ſhould certainly blow out his brains. But the Landroſt's ſecretary, who had alſo been ſent in joint charge of the priſoner, no leſs frightened than the boors were at the determined manner of the dragoon, prevailed upon the latter, if not to relinquiſh the criminal, at leaſt to convey him back to the droſdy, and deliver him up to the Landroſt; to this he reluctantly aſſented; the courageous boors keeping at a proper diſtance from the waggon.

Having,

Having, however, proceeded thus far, without diſplaying any extraordinary exploits of patriotiſm, the ſhame of their failure ſeemed to require that they ſhould go a ſtep farther. With the aſſiſtance of a ſchoolmaſter, whom they found no difficulty in perſuading to be of their party, they iſſued circular letters to their brother boors, entreating ſuch as they knew to be well diſpoſed to act with them, and commanding, in a menacing tone, others whoſe co-operation was doubtful, to aſſemble in arms without delay. Their firſt movement was to ſtation themſelves near the ford of the Sunday River, juſt at the entrance of the village; and to ſend from thence to the Landroſt a threatening meſſage, that, unleſs he would comply with all the demands they were about to make, they ſhould, in the firſt place, ſeize upon his perſon, and either hang him before his own door, or deliver him over to ſome of the boors againſt whom he had, on a former occaſion, been the inſtrument of obtaining a decree of outlawry, and who were now living with the Kaffers. The Landroſt, by means of a few dragoons who luckily happened at this time to be ſtationed at the droſdy, for the purpoſe of forwarding diſpatches through the country, was not only enabled to hold this undiſciplined rabble, though ten times the number of his forces, at defiance, but alſo ſecretly to convey to the government at the Cape ſpeedy intelligence of the rebellious conduct of the farmers of his diſtrict.

I have already obſerved, in the former volume of this work, that the diſorderly and riotous behaviour of the boors of Graaf Reynet, in inſulting and driving away the firſt magiſtrate, and the miniſter of the goſpel, had determined General Sir

James Craig to ſend a military force into the diſtrict, to compel them, by martial law if neceſſary, to a ſenſe of their duty; which a juſt and indulgent adminiſtration of the colonial laws had failed to do:—that this force had actually marched to the feet of the firſt range of mountains, where a moſt humble and ſubmiſſive addreſs from the rebels, promiſing, in future, obſervance of good order and obedience to the laws, ſtopped its progreſs:—that Lord Macartney, thinking to conciliate by laying them under obligations, ſuch as their former government never could have done, but which his Majeſty's inſtructions enabled him to put in practice, not only granted a full pardon for all their manifold offences and miſdemeanors, but alſo remitted them arrears of ground-rent, due to the treaſury, to the amount of two hundred thouſand rix dollars; not doubting that he ſhould, at leaſt, obtain from their gratitude, what their reſtleſs temper, joined to their extreme ignorance, had hitherto ſeemed to have rendered almoſt a moral impoſſibility—reſpect for his Majeſty's government, and obedience to their own laws.

Theſe gracious indulgencies, that appeared to make ſome impreſſion for the moment, were however ſoon forgotten, and it now became obvious that nothing ſhort of a military force could keep them in any ſort of order. And as, at this time, the Cape was perfectly ſecure from any attack of a foreign enemy, General Dundas thought it expedient to direct that a detachment, compoſed of a ſquadron of dragoons, a few companies of infantry, and the greater part of the Hottentot corps, ſhould march into the diſtrict under the command of brigadier General

General Vandeleur. The rebellious boors, now collected in very conſiderable numbers, had ſtationed themſelves between the droſdy and Algoa Bay, where they had formed a kind of camp, and, to a certain degree, according to the new term which their Cape friends had taught them to adopt, had *organized* their forces.

But as the courage of theſe people diſplays itſelf only on particular occaſions, ſuch as in acting againſt defenceleſs Hottentots, the moment they heard that troops were advancing, they thought proper to diſperſe, leaving, in the hands of a neutral perſon, a moſt humble petition, in which they acknowledged their error, and ſupplicated forgiveneſs. To this addreſs the general very properly returned a verbal anſwer, ſtating, that he could hold no communication with rebels, until they had voluntarily ſurrendered themſelves to his diſcretion, and laid their arms at his feet; that, for this purpoſe, he ſhould name a certain place and day; and that all ſuch as ſhould not appear at the time and place appointed, would be conſidered in the light of rebels and traitors to his Majeſty's government, and would be purſued accordingly.

On the day fixed, the majority of the rebels obeyed the ſummons; and never ſurely was exhibited ſuch a motley group of armed cavalry ſo whimſically equipped. The greater part were ſuch uncouth beings, ſo very

" ——Huge of bulk,
" Wallowing unwieldy, enormous in their gait,"

that

that it was morally impoſſible for the by-ſtanders to obſerve the gravity of countenance which the occaſion required; and the awkward manner in which they diſmounted, with the difficulty that ſome of them experienced on account of the protuberance of their bellies, in grounding their arms, were ſufficient to throw the moſt ſerious off their guard. The General ſelected nine of the ringleaders, and ſent them under an eſcort on board his Majeſty's ſhip the Rattleſnake, then at anchor in Algoa Bay; on the reſt he levied a certain fine towards defraying the expences of the expedition, which their abſurd and rebellious conduct had occaſioned.

Before this termination of diſturbances, which, if ſuffered to extend to the other diſtricts of the colony, might have been attended with more ſerious conſequences, General Dundas accepted my offer to proceed through the diſtrict of Zwellendam, for the purpoſe of cutting off any communication with Graaf Reynet, and particularly with a view of preventing any ſupplies of gunpowder from reaching the rebels; at the ſame time to ſend up to the Cape certain perſons, who had ſhewn themſelves active in promoting diſcontent in Zwellendam, and who were known to be diſaffected, not only to the Britiſh government, but to every other that laid them under the reſtraint of laws. This journey, the extent of which was intended to be confined to the borders of the Camtoos river, dividing the two diſtricts of Graaf Reynet and Zwellendam, was prolonged, by unforeſeen circumſtances, into the country inhabited by the Kaffers: and it thus afforded the principal part of the remarks and obſervations which are contained in the preſent chapter.

On

On the 8th of March 1799 I joined Lieutenant (now Captain) Smyth, of the corps of engineers and Aid-du-Camp of General Dundas, with a ſerjeant's party of dragoons at the foot of Hottentot Holland's Kloof, which is the only paſs leading to the eaſtern parts of the colony, over the high chain of mountains that terminates the Cape iſthmus; which chain, at a few miles to the ſouthward of the Kloof, forms the eaſtern boundary of the extenſive bay *Falſe*. In the north-eaſt corner of this arm of the ſea is a cove called Gordon's Bay, a place that has not hitherto obtained that attention, which the importance of its ſituation would ſeem to point out. The anchorage is ſaid to be ſafe, the landing eaſy on a ſmooth ſandy beach; and its proximity to the above mentioned paſs over the mountains would inſure an enemy the poſſeſſion of it, in its preſent defenceleſs ſtate, long before means could be taken for preventing it from the Cape, or even from Simon's Town on the oppoſite ſide of the bay. A few men with a couple of light guns, long field-pieces or howitzers, ſtationed in this Kloof, would require a whole regiment to drive them out; and, ſo long as they could hold this important paſs, all ſupplies coming through it from the nearer parts of the diſtrict of Zwellendam would be completely cut off from Cape Town; nor would they find the leaſt difficulty in ſubſiſting themſelves from the country in their rear. To make a diverſion, in meditating an attack upon the Cape, by ſending a frigate to land a company in Gordon's Bay, one at Blauwberg oppoſite Roben iſland, and another with two or three companies into Saldanha Bay, would greatly embarraſs the garriſon, as it would be under the neceſſity of detaching from the works a very ſuperior force in order to make any impreſſion. A poſt

at Blauwberg would command all the great roads leading to Cape Town from the north and north-eaſt; Saldanha Bay is the key to Zwartland, the principal granary of the colony; and the ſecond Kloof, that of Rhode Sand, might ſpeedily be taken poſſeſſion of from thence; nothing would then remain for the garriſon but to diſpute thoſe paſſes, or to ſtarve within their lines.

To underſtand exactly what is meant by a kloof, the reader may imagine a continued chain of mountains to be cleft, or torn aſunder, ſo that the correſponding parts of the ſides of the chaſm, ſome projecting others retiring, if cloſed again, would fit to each other; and the paſſage is more or leſs ſteep inverſely as the magnitude of the rent. In the Dutch government the one in queſtion was ſo neglected as ſcarcely to be paſſable by waggons; but ſince the colony became Engliſh it has undergone a thorough repair. To carry into effect this uſeful work, a ſmall contribution was levied on thoſe who derived the greateſt advantage from the improvement; but ſuch is the uncouth temper of the people, and ſo adverſe to every thing that tends to public benefit, that, rather than pay the trifling ſum of a ſhilling, many of thoſe who came from the diſtant parts preferred to avoid this kloof by making a circuit of two days journey, and paſſing that of *Rhode Sand* which is ſtill worſe.

And although the repair has been the means of ſaving the life of many a poor ox, yet, on our return, we obſerved two carcaſes of theſe animals that had recently been left to expire among the rocks. If, after cutting and flaſhing theſe poor creatures with their enormous whips, the phlegm of a Dutch boor

boor ſo far gets the better of his paſſion, on ſeeing that his beaſt is completely exhauſted, that inſtead of drawing his knife, or kindling a fire under its belly, he unyokes it, the chances are ſtill ten to one the animal never riſes more. The moment it is left alone a flock of the Egyptian vultures, and the ſtill more voracious vulturine crows, are ſure to tear it in pieces, making it undergo a moſt cruel and protracted death. I ſaw an inſtance of this kind that was really ſhocking to the feelings of humanity. On the only great and public road, leading from Cape Town towards Rondeboſch, a road that at leaſt a thouſand people, of one deſcription or another, paſs in the courſe of the day, I obſerved an ox lying, in the midſt of the way and within two miles of the town, with part of the bowels torn out of the belly. The third day after this I paſſed the ſame way, and the ox was ſtill alive with its head erect, and the bowels lying on the ground beſide it; and thus it might have lain to linger away with pain and hunger, perhaps as many days more, had I not requeſted the chief officer of the police to ſend a perſon and diſpatch it. The habitude which the people of this colony neceſſarily acquire it witneſſing inſtances of cruelty on human as well as brute creatures, cannot fail to produce a tendency to hardneſs of heart, and to ſtifle feelings of tenderneſs and benevolence. In fact the rigour of juſtice is rarely ſoftened with the balm of mercy. All criminals, condemned to ſuffer the puniſhment of death, are afterwards hung in chains cloſe to the public road, to be eaten by the crows and vultures. And, under the old government, when a ſlave had been guilty of murdering a coloniſt, implacable rancour, not ſatisfied with putting in practice every ſpecies of torture that malignant and diabolical ingenuity could invent, as

long as any ſigns of life remained in the criminal, ſentenced him to be torn limb from limb, and the ſeveral parts to be hung upon poſts erected for the purpoſe in the moſt public parts of the high road. Many of ſuch poſts ſtill remain, rather as deplorable memorials of what vindictive malice could invent, than as examples for preventing ſimilar crimes.

If in any inſtance they relax from cruelty to the brute creation, it is in the mode of ſlaughtering cattle, which they learned from the Hottentots, and which I underſtand has lately been put in practice in England under the name of *laying*. This is done by thruſting a pointed inſtrument into the commencement of the ſpinal marrow juſt behind the horns. The animal drops without a groan, and dies almoſt without a ſtruggle; after this the throat is cut to let out the blood, and it is pretended that the effect on the fleſh is, like that of crimping fiſh, to make it cloſe and firm.

The firſt river we had occaſion to croſs, beyond the mountains, is called by the Dutch the Palmiet, the name of a ſtrong boggy plant that grows abundantly in this and ſome other rivers of the colony. The name ariſes from its reſemblance to ſome of the palm tribe, but, if I miſtake not, it is a ſpecies of *Acorus*. For eight months in the year it ſcarcely contains a drop of water, but is moſtly impaſſable the other four; which is alſo the caſe with the Bott river about ten miles beyond the Palmiet. Both of theſe periodical ſtreams are unſafe in the winter ſeaſon, and fatal accidents have happened to perſons attempting to croſs them when full. Among theſe may be men-

tioned that of Mr. Patrick, aſſiſtant-ſurgeon to the 8th Light Dragoons, whoſe horſe being unable to ſtem the ſtream, was carried down the river, and the rider periſhed.

The country affords tolerable good paſturage, and will yield one moderate crop of grain in the ſeaſon without manure. It is thinly inhabited, conſiſting principally of grazing farms which belong to perſons who hold eſtates upon the Cape ſide of the mountains. The firſt houſe that occurred in our route was near ten miles beyond the kloof, which, by loſing our way in the dark acroſs the wide heath, we did not reach before midnight.

The 9th of March was the hotteſt and moſt oppreſſive day I ever experienced in Southern Africa. I had no thermometer with me, but I afterwards learnt that, during the whole day nearly, the temperature in Cape Town was 104° of Fahrenheits's Scale. In the whole of this day's march, of about twenty miles, we were not able to procure a drop of water for the horſes, except once juſt after ſtarting, nor even any ſhade from the ſcorching rays of the ſun; for trees of any deſcription in this part of the country are as rare as Doctor Johnſon found them to be, of as great an age as himſelf, in Scotland. The horſe on which I was mounted was ſo much overcome by the heat, that it literally dropped down under me, and was unable to carry me any farther.

Wearied and exhauſted we reached, at length, the hovel of a ſhoemaker, near which we found a few puddles of muddy

water, ſtagnating in the clayey bed of a rivulet, but it was ſo much impregnated with earth and ſalts that the horſes, thirſty as they were, would ſcarcely touch it. At this place we contrived to paſs the night, but we experienced a moſt uncomfortable lodging. Unluckily for us it happened to be Sunday, and, the ſhoemaker being known to all his neighbours, living within the circuit of twenty miles, and particularly to his *neareſt* neighbours of three or four miles, to be a jolly good fellow, who always kept a glaſs of wine, and a ſtrong *ſopie* to regale his friends, the houſe was crowded with people. There were but two apartments, one of which was filled with the company; the other we occupied. This, it ſeemed, was made to anſwer the four-fold purpoſe of bed-chamber, work-ſhop, cellar, and ſtorehouſe. The heat of the weather, the cloſeneſs of the room, which had only one ſmall aperture to admit the light, added to the mingled odours ariſing from ſtinking leather, bunches of onions, butchers' meat ſwarming with flies, fumes of tobacco, dregs of wine and gin and Cape brandy, ſtanding in pools on the clayed floor; in a word, ſuch "a con-" gregation of foul and peſtilential vapours," were ſufficient to nauſeate ſtomachs much leſs ſqueamiſh than ours. Nor was the ſenſe of feeling leſs annoyed by an innumerable quantity of bugs, fleas, and muſquitoes. Perhaps, indeed, it might be conſidered as an advantage in having two or three ſenſes tormented at once; as the pain affecting one might, in a certain degree, be deadened by the acuteneſs of feeling in another. How often, in the courſe of this night, did I bleſs my good fortune, in having uſed my waggon for my lodging houſe in all my former long journies through this miſerable country; inhabited

bited by a ſtill more miſerable race of mortals! How many ſleepleſs nights, and nauſeous ſcenes, have I not avoided by adopting ſuch a plan!

To add to our preſent uncomfortable ſituation, the gueſts were perpetually interrupting us in their application to the wine caſk, or the brandy bottle. Our patience, at length, being quite exhauſted, we reſolved to barricade the door. This, however, failed of ſucceſs. The votaries of Bacchus were not ſo eaſily to be diſappointed of their weekly libations. After ſeveral fruitleſs attempts to force the door, they thought of trying the window; but this ſmall pigeon-hole, being much too narrow in its dimenſions to admit the huge carcaſe of an African boor, obliged them to have recourſe to the expedient of ſending in a thin Hottentot girl; but, on account of the peculiar ſhape of the women of this nation, the lower part of the body refuſed to follow where the head had paſſed, and ſhe ſtuck faſt in the window. This produced a prodigious burſt of boiſterous mirth; the girl, however, after a great deal of ſqueezing and puſhing, effected the purpoſe, and procured for the tumultuous boors a ſupply of their favourite liquors. To prevent a return we barred in the window, and having thus completely made ourſelves maſters of the cellar, the boors, after ſeveral vollies of imprecations, accompanied with thundering aſſaults, ſometimes at the door, and then at the window, thought fit about midnight to leave the houſe, in ſearch of another jovial neighbour at the diſtance, perhaps, of eight or ten miles. This ſcene would have afforded an excellent ſubject for the pencil of

Oſtade,

Oſtade, who, judging from his pictures, muſt have been witneſs to many of the ſame kind.

The noiſe of the Bacchanalians was accompanied by a ſtorm of thunder; and the rain, that fell in the courſe of the night, had rendered the air the next morning cool and refreſhing. It was the firſt ſhower that had fallen in this part of the country for near four months, and the effects of it on the ground were very ſenſibly perceived in the courſe of four days.

At this ſeaſon of the year, when the earth is thoroughly heated, the rapidity with which vegetation burſts forth, after rain, is almoſt incredible. Among the earlieſt of ſuch plants, as by the brilliancy of their flowers captivate the ſight, are the various ſpecies of the *oxalis*, the yellow ſtar-flower, and the three-coloured *Lachenalia*, with two or three other ſpecies of the ſame genus. But one of the moſt ſingular among the ſmall plants, that bloſſom in the beginning of winter, is the *ſeptas*, whoſe name is derived from the regular ſeptenary diviſion of all the different parts of fructification, and is remarkable for being the only plant, yet diſcovered, in the ſeventh claſs and ſeventh order of the Linnæan Syſtem.

The refreſhing coolneſs, occaſioned by the rain, permitted us to extend our march to the river *Zonder End*, or Endleſs River, near the banks of which the Dutch Eaſt India Company had reſerved, for its own uſe, an extenſive tract of land called the *Sweet Milk's Valley*. It is bounded on the north ſide by a range

range of hills that were once well covered with foreſt trees, but theſe have long been cut down, few of any magnitude now remaining, except in the deep chaſms where they are ſcarcely acceſſible. The country, on each ſide of the river, is extremely pleaſant, and tolerably well inhabited, in compariſon at leaſt with other parts; the dwellings being ſeldom removed from one another beyond the regulated diſtance of three miles. A few of the ſmall kind of antelopes ſtill remain, as *reebocks*, *ſpringbocks*, *grieſbocks*, and *duykers*, and plenty of hares and partridges; but the large *bontebocks* are almoſt totally deſtroyed, or driven to ſome other part of the ſettlement. I obſerved, in the former volume, that in the neighbourhood of this river was once to be found the *Leucophæa* or blue antelope, but that, for many years paſt, it had been loſt to the colony. I underſtood, however, that, a few months before we evacuated the Cape, a ſmall herd of this beautiful animal had again made its appearance among the wooded hills behind Sweet Milk Valley, where, inſtead of ſuffering them to remain unmoleſted, at leaſt for ſome time, the farmers were lying in wait for their deſtruction.

Cloſe to this river is the eſtabliſhment of the Hernhüters or Moravian miſſionaries, who, by the protection afforded them under the Britiſh government, and its liberality, through General Dundas, in enabling them to enlarge their territory, had ſucceeded ſo far, in the object of their miſſion, as to bring together into one ſociety, not fewer, at the time of the evacuation of the colony, than ſix hundred poor Hottentots; whom they not only inſtructed in the principles of the Chriſtian religion, but by example, as well as precept, taught to feel, that their

their value in ſociety was in proportion to the benefits they were able to render to that ſociety, by their labour and moral conduct.

Theſe men have clearly ſhewn to the world, by the effects of this inſtitution, that there is not among ſavages, in general, that invincible averſion to labour which ſome have been inclined to ſuppoſe. Thoſe, indeed, whoſe daily ſubſiſtence depends on the chace, may contract a diſpoſition to rambling and to a frequent change of place, but the precarious ſupply of food obtained by hunting is not the reward of ſluggiſh indolence, but of toil, of laſſitude, and anxiety. The fewer the wants that man has to gratify, the leſs inclination will he feel to exert his corporeal powers. In a mere ſavage ſtate, if theſe wants could be ſupplied without any effort, the predominant pleaſures of life would conſiſt in eating and ſleeping. The propenſity to inaction can only be overcome by giving the labourer an intereſt in the product of his labour; by making him feel the weight and value of property, The coloniſts of the Cape purſued no ſuch plan with regard to their conduct towards the Hottentots. Having firſt held out the irreſiſtible charm that ſpirituous liquors and tobacco are found to poſſeſs among all people in a rude ſtate of ſociety, they took the advantage of exchanging thoſe pernicious poiſons for the only means the natives enjoyed of ſubſiſting themſelves and their families; and, however extraordinary it may appear, inſtead of inſtructing and encouraging a race of men, of willing and intelligent minds, to renew the means of ſubſiſtence, of which they had deprived them, they imported, at a vaſt expence, a number of Malay ſlaves, not more

more expert, and much leſs to be depended on, than the Hottentots; to whom, indeed, they even preferred the ſtupid negroes of Moſambique and Madagaſcar.

Whether it happened from real ignorance of the character of theſe natives, or from ſtrong prejudices imbibed againſt them, or from an adherence to a narrow policy, I cannot pretend to determine; but, from the enquiries I have made, it does not appear they have at any period experienced a treatment equally favourable to that of the meaneſt ſlaves. Not many years ago it was thought expedient, for ſome purpoſe or other, to aſſemble a conſiderable number in or near the town, but the buſineſs for which they were collected, dwindling into a job for the emolument of the perſons who had the management of it; and as the Hottentots were neither paid, clothed, nor fed, they exhibited a ſcene of filth, miſery, and wretchedneſs; they became a nuiſance to the town, and were in conſequence diſbanded.

The coloniſts were ready to predict a ſimilar fate to the attempt of Sir James Craig, of forming them into a corps; but their predictions ended in their diſappointment. Never," obſerves Sir James, " were people more contented or more " grateful for the treatment they now receive. We have up- " wards of three hundred who have been with us nine months. " It is, therefore, with the opportunity of knowing them well, " that I venture to pronounce them an intelligent race of men. " All who bear arms exerciſe well, and underſtand immediately, " and perfectly, whatever they are taught to perform. Many

" of them ſpeak Engliſh tolerably well. We were told that " ſo great was their propenſity to drunkenneſs, we ſhould ne- " ver be able to reduce them to order or diſcipline, and that the " habit of roving was ſo rooted in their diſpoſition, we muſt " expect the whole corps would deſert, the moment they had " received their clothing. With reſpect to the firſt, I do not " find they are more given to the vice of drinking than " our own people; and, as to their pretended propenſity to " roving, that charge is fully confuted by the circumſtance of " only one man having left us ſince I firſt adopted the meaſure " of aſſembling them, and he was urged to this ſtep from hav- " ing accidently loſt his firelock."—" Of all the qualities," he further obſerves, " that can be aſcribed to a Hottentot, it will " little be expected I ſhould expatiate upon their cleanlineſs; and " yet it is certain that, at this moment, our Hottentot parade " would not ſuffer in a compariſon with that of ſome of our re- " gular regiments. Their clothing may, perhaps, have ſuf- " fered more than it ought to have done, in the time ſince it " was iſſued to them, from their ignorance of the means of " preſerving it; but thoſe articles, which are capable of being " kept clean by waſhing, together with their arms and accou- " trements, which they have been taught to keep bright, are " always in good order. They are now, likewiſe, cleanly in " their perſons; the practice of ſmearing themſelves with " greaſe being entirely left off. I have frequently obſerved " them waſhing themſelves in a rivulet, where they could have " in view no other object but cleanlineſs." It will be no leſs ſatisfactory to the reader, than it is gratifying to myſelf, in thus having an opportunity of adding, in ſupport of my former

deſcription of the moral character of this people, the opinion of ſuch high and reſpectable authority.

None felt more ſincere regret and uneaſineſs at that article in the treaty of peace, which ceded the Cape to its former owners, than theſe worthy miſſionaries. From the malignant ſpirit of the boors, they had every thing to apprehend. The friends of humanity, however, will rejoice to learn, that this aſylum for an innocent and oppreſſed race of men continues to receive the countenance and protection of the preſent government; the two leading members of which appear to be actuated by views and ſentiments very different from thoſe of the majority of the people, over which they are appointed to rule. It is obvious, indeed, to every man of common underſtanding, that an inſtitution ſo encouraged cannot fail to prove of infinite advantage to a colony where uſeful labour is ſo much wanted. If any example were capable of rouſing the ſluggiſh ſettlers, that of ſix hundred people being ſubſiſted on the ſame ſpace of ground, which every individual family among them occupies, for they had nothing more till very lately than a common loan farm of three miles in diameter, would be ſufficient to ſtimulate them to habits of induſtry.

Other miſſionaries, but of different ſocieties, have lately proceeded to very diſtant parts of the colony, and ſome even much beyond it, both among the Kaffers to the eaſtward, and the Bosjeſman Hottentots to the northward. The latter they repreſent as a docile and tractable people, of innocent manners, and grateful to their benefactors beyond expreſſion; but the

Kaffers, they ſay, are a volatile race, extremely good-humoured, but turn into ridicule all their attempts to convert them to Chriſtianity. Mr. Kicherer, a regular bred miniſter of the reformed church, and a gentleman of mild and perſuaſive manners, proceeded, alone and totally unprotected, into the midſt of the Bosjeſman hordes on the ſkirts of the Orange River. He conſidered, that a ſolitary being without arms, or any viſible means of doing injury to his fellow mortals, would be received without ſuſpicion, and might enter into the ſociety of the moſt ſavage hordes without danger. The event proved his conjectures to be right. He lived in the midſt of a tribe, the moſt needy and wretched that he could diſcover, for many years; ſhared with them every inconvenience; and ſuffered a total privation of all the comforts, and very frequently even of the neceſſaries, of life; with a weak conſtitution, he braved the viciſſitudes of an unſteady climate in ſcanty clothing, in temporary huts and hovels that were neither proof againſt wind nor water, and oftimes in the open air; on deſerts wild and naked as thoſe of Arabia; he learned their language; inſtructed them in the benevolent doctrines of Chriſtianity; and endeavoured with enthuſiaſtic zeal, to aſſuage their miſerable lot in this life, by aſſuring them that there was "Another and a "better world:" in a word, he became ſo much attached to this moſt indigent and deplorable race of human beings, who poſſeſs nothing they can call their own, but live from day to day on the precarious ſpoils of the chace, and commonly on the ſpontaneous products of a barren ſoil, that it was not without difficulty, and great diſtreſs to his feelings, he muſtered reſolution to tear himſelf from his little flock: lingering under a diſeaſe

diſeaſe that threatened to terminate in a conſumption, he could not be prevailed upon to deſert them, when urged by his friends to accept of a vacant living of one of the colonial churches, which was offered to him by the government.

When one reflects for a moment on the toils and hardſhips, the dangers and the difficulties, that theſe religious enthuſiaſts voluntarily undergo, without any proſpect of reward, or even reputation, in this world, it is impoſſible to withhold admiration at a conduct ſo ſeemingly diſintereſted, and whoſe motives appear to be under an influence ſo different from that by which moſt human actions are governed. Whatever degree of merit may be due to this claſs of miſſionaries, the practical philoſopher will, unqueſtionably, give the preference to the plan of the Moravians, which unites with precepts of religion and morality a ſpirit of uſeful labour; and whoſe grand aim is to make their diſciples comfortable in this world, as a token or earneſt of that which is to come. But after all the toil and anxiety which the worthy character above mentioned cheerfully underwent in the cauſe of ſuffering humanity, what muſt his feelings be, if he ſtill be living, and happens to peruſe the following letter, to find that his only reward is that of being conſidered by the vile people of the Cape as the abettor of murder, and that he has been with others the innocent cauſe of fifteen of his inoffenſive diſciples being inhumanly butchered in cold blood by thoſe remorſeleſs coloniſts who dare to call themſelves by the ſacred name of Chriſtians. This letter, which juſt reached me as the preſent work was going to the preſs, will ſerve to ſhew, among other facts I ſhall have occaſion to ſtate, of what deliberate

liberate and blood-thirſty ruffians the peaſantry of the Cape are compoſed.

Extract of a letter written from the Sneuwberg, the 29th day of January 1803, ſigned O. A. S. Meyer, and addreſſed to Cornelis de Kok, in Cape Town.

" I am going to inform you of ſomething that happened on " the 6th of December 1802. About the evening three Boſ- " jeſmans came to the houſe of the Burger Cornelis Janſen, " having with them three pack-oxen (*draag-oſſen*); the ſaid " Janſen immediately reported it to the commandant (*Veld-* " *Cornet*), who inſtantly ſent an armed party (*commando*) to his " houſe. On the following day, being the 7th, there came " twelve more to them, having three guns and three pack-oxen; " all the reſt were well armed with bows, arrows, and haſſagays. " The commandant Berger went himſelf to Janſen's in the " morning to aſk the reaſon of their coming there, when he " diſcovered that eight of them were *Koranas* and ſeven Boſ- " jeſmans. Being aſked by the party what they came to do, " they ſaid that they were come to beg a little *dacha* (*hemp*) and " tobacco. The commandant had the ſame anſwer, but *he* " *underſtood the way to queſtion them ſo cloſely, that he brought* " *them to open confeſſion* (by horrid tortures no doubt), that they " came to examine how their farms (plaatzen) were to be at- " tacked; and alſo to ſee if there was water enough to come " with a *great troop*. Being aſked who had ſent them, they " anſwered *Teüter* and the Engliſh miſſionary *Kicherer*, in or- " der to ſpy the places, and return to the *kraal* where *Kicherer*

" and

" and *Trüter* would wait their return, to furniſh them with " muſquets, powder, and ball. On being aſked how they were " to execute it? they anſwered, by attacking the farm-houſes " by two and two at the ſame time, ſo that they could not " aſſiſt one another. ALL THE FIFTEEN WE HAVE SHOT " DEAD (*doodgeſchooten*), HAVING FIRST EXTORTED THIS " CONFESSION FROM THEM. The hat which *Trüter* gave to " the captain we have got; it is a black one with a ſilver band, " and a cane with a braſs head, on which is engraved " Captain " Kauwinnoub." Mark now with what murderous intentions " is this *Trüter* inſpired againſt us! To have us all maſſacred " in our houſes!

" You may with great ſafety ſhew this to Andries Muller.

" (Signed) O. A. S. MEYER."

I obſerved in the preliminary chapter of this volume, that Meſſrs. Trüter and Somerville had penetrated farther into the interior of South Africa than any former Europeans. Theſe gentlemen were ſent in an official capacity, with a view of procuring a ſupply of draught oxen, on a ſerious alarm being entertained, and repreſentations made to government, that the operations of agriculture muſt be ſuſpended, on account of the numbers of cattle that had periſhed through the drought of the year 1800, unleſs a freſh ſupply could be obtained from ſome of the bordering tribes of the original inhabitants. Though theſe repreſentations were meant, in all probability, to be the foundation of a ſcheme ſimilar to many of the ſame kind which were practiſed under the Dutch government, with no other view than

than that of enriching the individuals concerned, by the plunder of cattle belonging to the harmleſs natives, the Britiſh government thought it expedient, in order to demonſtrate its readineſs to attend to the intereſts of the coloniſts, to take into conſideration the ſtate of the caſe, being aware at the ſame time of the danger of entruſting any commiſſion of ſuch a nature to the Dutch peaſantry. The diſturbances raiſed by the boors on the borders of the Kaffer country diſcouraged any attempt to open a traffic with this nation, but accounts of an imperfect nature were entertained, that a nation called the *Briequas*, or more properly, as it ſeems, the *Boſhuanas*, about ſixteen days' journey to the northward of the Orange River, were likely to furniſh the neceſſary ſupply; and as this journey, over an unbeaten tract, could not fail to be productive of novelty, and might furniſh new objects of curioſity, Mr. Trüter, member of the Court of Juſtice, and Mr. Somerville, the garriſon ſurgeon, were immediately pointed out as two gentlemen poſſeſſing in every reſpect the proper qualifications for undertaking ſuch an expedition. Mr. Trüter had been a ſervant of the Dutch Eaſt India Company for more than thirty years, during which period he bore an irreproachable character; and the Engliſh government is not leſs indebted to the zeal and fidelity with which he continued, more from principle than expectation of emolument which he did not want, to perform the laborious duties of a member of the Court of Juſtice, during the ſeven years it held poſſeſſion of the Cape. To an open and generous diſpoſition he adds the moſt ſcrupulous exactneſs in all tranſactions between man and man. His temper is cheerful, his heart benevolent, and the turn of his mind ſtrongly inclined to acquire knowledge.

ledge. Of Mr. Somerville it is ſufficient to ſay he is a Briton, a character far beyond the reach of any calumny that an African Dutchman can invent; and as the public, it is to be hoped, will be gratified with his account of the expedition, I leave it to him to defend himſelf and companions againſt a charge which nothing but inherent falſehood and diabolical malevolence, and their own inſatiable thirſt after human blood, could have conceived. It was on this expedition theſe two gentlemen met with Mr. Kicherer, a regular bred miniſter of the reformed church of the United Provinces, who, on their return, embarked for Holland; Mr. Somerville ſhortly afterwards for England, and Mr. Trüter remained behind, where he became the object of their brutal malice, in revenge, I ſuppoſe, for having found it expedient on their journey to diſcharge and turn away the eight or ten boors that accompanied them, for their idle, diſorderly, and thieviſh conduct. For the atrocious murder of the poor wretches whom famine, in all probability, had driven to aſk relief of the pitileſs ſpoilers of their native land, it were greatly to be wiſhed that divine wrath would manifeſt itſelf among the brutal perpetrators by ſome ſignal calamity, ſince neither human laws nor human feelings can reſtrain them. If this account ſhould have reached the knowledge of the Commander in Chief of the ſettlement, which no doubt it muſt have done, I have to hope, from his humane and truly benevolent diſpoſition, he will have put in execution the benignant ſentiments I have heard him utter in favour of the unprotected Hottentots. "If the life of a ſingle child be taken away, and "the murderer not brought to legal puniſhment, I ſhall feel

" myſelf unfit for my ſituation and unworthy the character of " a human being."

The firſt day's march beyond the Sweet Milk's Valley was acroſs a tame flat country, the road winding along the right bank of the Endleſs River; a name whoſe fallacy was detected by croſſing it, on the next day's journey, juſt where it forms a confluence with, and of courſe ends in, the Broad River. The latter, in the winter months, is a vaſt volume of water ſufficient to float a ſhip of the line, but, in ſummer, not more than ankle deep. The diſtance from this river to Zwellendam, the ſeat of the Landroſt and capital of the diſtrict ſo called, is only about nine miles, over a country that is capable of an extenſive cultivation, but which is ſuffered to remain almoſt entirely an unproductive deſart.

As we knew this to be the only village that would occur in the courſe of our long journey, we thought it prudent to halt a day, in order to refreſh the horſes, have their ſhoes removed or renewed, and the ſaddles repaired; after which we continued our march, for three eaſy days, to a tolerable good farm-houſe called the *Hagel Kraal*, ſituated at the foot of the *Attaquas Kloof*. The country we had paſſed was little calculated to excite any degree of intereſt; the dwellings, as uſual, were thinly ſcattered; the land under no regular ſyſtem of tillage, exhibiting a barren waſte, without a ſingle tree, or even a ſhrub, that by its ſize or beauty would arreſt the attention of the traveller; yet the ſoil of the greater part of the country appeared to be ſuperior

to

to moſt of the corn-lands in the vicinity of the Cape. Here too a ſcarcity is obſervable of the moſt ordinary game of the country, ſuch as ſmall antelopes, hares, partridges, and the ſeveral ſpecies of buſtards.

From this place it was our intention to croſs the firſt chain of mountains which runs parallel, or nearly ſo, with the ſea-coaſt. Previous, however, to this undertaking, it was found neceſſary, in conformity to the inſtructions I had received, to take into cuſtody, and to ſend up to the Cape, a certain boor who was known to have held communication with the rebels of Graaff Reynet; and ſtrongly ſuſpected of having aſſiſted them with gunpowder. By eſcorting this perſon to the Landroſt of the diſtrict, two fine young men of the 8th Light Dragoons unfortunately loſt their lives. On their return towards the droſdy a violent thunder-ſtorm aroſe, during which the rain deſcended in ſuch torrents as to fill, to the brim, a ſmall rivulet that we had paſſed the day before without obſerving a ſingle drop of water in its channel. The Hottentot, who led the foremoſt pair of oxen in the team, finding himſelf unable to withſtand the rapidity of the current, let go the rope and effected his eſcape as well as he could. The oxen, being thus left without a guide, turned their heads in the direction of the ſtream. The waggon was upſet; two of the young men, who unfortunately could not ſwim, were ſeen no more; and Captain Smyth, with the reſt, had a very narrow eſcape.

Accidents, of a ſimilar kind, are not unfrequent in the colony. The beds of all the rivers are ſunk, in a remarkable manner, to a

very great depth below the general ſurface of the country; ſo that whenever the heavy rains deſcend, the waters ſubſide into theſe deep channels, which, on account of their narrowneſs, almoſt inſtantaneouſly become filled to the very brink. The impetuoſity with which ſuch torrents ruſh towards the ſea is irreſiſtible.

Whether the deep excavations, that form the beds of theſe rivers, may be ſatisfactorily explained by ſuppoſing the texture of the adjacent materials to have been of a looſe and incoherent nature; or, whether a greater antiquity than to many parts of the globe may not be aſſigned to the continent of South Africa, on the whole ſurface of which there appears to be a remarkable ſimilarity, is a queſtion on the merits of which one would heſitate to give a prompt deciſion. But, on comparing the great quantity of rain that annually falls at the Cape, a quantity far exceeding that in moſt parts of Europe, with the general ſcarcity of ſprings, the invention is naturally exerciſed in endeavouring to account for a phenomenon ſo unuſual. The following obſervations may perhaps aſſiſt in explaining it.

All the continued chains of mountains in Southern Africa are compoſed of ſandſtone reſting upon a baſe of granite. This granite baſe is ſometimes elevated conſiderably above the general ſurface of the country, and ſometimes its upper part is ſunk as far beneath it. In ſituations where the former happens to be the caſe, numerous ſprings are ſure to be found, as in the inſtance of Table Mountain, where, on every ſide, copious ſtreams of pure limpid water, filtered through the immenſe maſs

maſs of ſuperincumbent ſandſtone, glide over the impenetrable ſurface of granite, furniſhing an ample ſupply to the whole town, the gardens, and the adjacent farms. But in all thoſe places where the ſandſtone continues to deſcend below the ſurface, and the upper part of the granite baſe is ſunk beneath the general level of the country, the ſprings that make their appearance are few and ſcanty.

The reaſoning that ſuggeſts itſelf on theſe facts will lead to the following concluſion:—that the ciſterns or cavities in the ſandſtone mountains, being corroded and fretted away, in the lapſe of ages, to a greater depth than the openings or conduits which might, perhaps, at one time have given their waters vent, the ſprings can no longer find their way upon the ſurface, but, oozing imperceptibly between the granite and the ſandſtone, below the general level of the country, glide in ſubterraneous ſtreams to the ſea.

I am the more inclined to this opinion from the experience of ſeveral facts. When Admiral Sir Roger Curtis directed a ſpace of ground, between the Admiralty-houſe and the ſhore of Table Bay, to be encloſed as a naval yard, the workmen met with great impediment from the copious ſprings of pure freſh water that ruſhed out of the holes, which they found neceſſary to ſink in the ſand, for receiving the upright poſts. It is a well known fact, that on almoſt every part of the iſthmus that connects the mountainous peninſula of the Cape to the continent, freſh water may be procured at the depth of ten or twelve feet below the ſandy ſurface. Even in the ſide of the Tyger Hills,

Hills, at an elevation of twenty feet, at leaſt, above the general ſurface of the iſthmus, when the workmen were driving a level in ſearch of coal, a copious ſtream of water was collected within it, in the month of February, which is the very dryeſt ſeaſon of the year. And on boring, for the ſame purpoſe, on Wynberg, they came to a rill of water at the depth of twenty feet below the ſurface.

I have already noticed, in my journey to the Namaaqua country, that clear ſubterraneous ſtreams were every where to be found, in that diſtrict, under the ſandy beds of the rivers. Water in abundance has always been found by digging wells in Cape Town. Indeed it would be an abſurdity to ſuppoſe that, in a country where mountains abound, and thoſe mountains for more than two-thirds of the year hid in denſe clouds, there could be any ſcarcity of water. Peculiar circumſtances, relating to ſituation or ſurface, may conceal that water, but it will always be diſcovered at or near the ſea-coaſt.

When the late Admiral Sir Hugh Chriſtian ordered a well to be ſunk at Saldanha Bay, by directing his attention rather to the convenience of conveying the water to the ſhipping, than to the certainty of obtaining it, he was led into an error in fixing upon the ſpot for the experiment, which was ſo high above the level of the bay, and where the ground was one ſolid maſs of compact granite, that, after boring and blowing up with gunpowder, for ſeveral months with little or no proſpect of ſucceſs, the operation was obliged to be abandoned. On the oppoſite ſide of the bay, where the ſhore is little elevated above the

the high water mark, ſeveral ſprings have ſpontaneouſly burſt out of the earth, but for want of being properly opened, ſo that the water may run off freely, they are ſuffered to ſtagnate, and become, as might be expected from the ſoil and climate, a little brackiſh. All circumſtances here are fully as favourable as at Madras, where the pureſt and beſt water is found cloſe to the ſea ſhore.

Theſe conſiderations are ſo obvious, that I ſhould have thought it unneceſſary to have dwelt a moment upon the ſubject, were I not perſuaded that a very general opinion prevailed with regard to the difficulty, if not the impoſſibility, of ſupplying the ſeveral bays of the colony with freſh water. I ſhall only ſuggeſt, as another concluſion that may be drawn from what has been ſaid, that the great depth of the commencement of the granite baſe below the ſurface may, perhaps, better account for the moſt conſiderable rivers of Northern Africa loſing themſelves in the ſand, before they reach the ſea, than by ſuppoſing the interior parts of this continent to be lower than the level of the ocean; a conjecture that has been held, but which ſtrongly militates againſt the general order obſerved throughout the univerſe.

I have already expreſſed my doubts with regard to the Cape peninſula having originally been ſeparated from the continent of Africa, according to the general opinion of writers, who, drawing their concluſions from a ſuppoſed retreat of the ſea to prevail univerſally, have not given themſelves the trouble to examine any further grounds for ſuch a conjecture. The more I have

have attended to the iſthmus that now unites them, the more I am perſuaded that, inſtead of its having, in latter ages, been covered with the ſea, the time is yet to come when that event will take place. I have already obſerved, that the ſurface is from twenty to thirty feet above the level of high water mark; that the ſand upon it, except where it is drifted into ridges, is ſeldom three feet deep, and it reſts upon ſandſtone or hard gravel. I can now add, that ridges of blue ſchiſtus and granite rocks appear on various parts of the ſurface ſo elevated. Admitting that the ſandſtone and the gravel, which is ſcarcely poſſible, were the fragments of the mountains by which this plain is encloſed on two ſides, yet neither the ſchiſtus nor the granite could have been adventitious; theſe two materials muſt have been primeval, and they abound on the moſt elevated as well as on the lower parts of the iſthmus; in ſituations that cannot be leſs than one hundred feet above the level of the ſea. But if the ſea has retreated one hundred feet, in its perpendicular height, the whole continent of Africa muſt have been an iſland at the time that the Cape promontory was an iſland. What changes may have taken place with regard to the canals and the inland parts of the iſthmus of Suez in the courſe of two or three thouſand years it is not neceſſary to inquire, but the iſthmus of Suez, ſo long ago, was a flat ſandy iſthmus, not much higher, nor lower, in all probability, than at the preſent day.

I ſhall now offer my reaſons for ſuppoſing the ſea to be gaining upon the land in Southern Africa. The plain that ſkirts the Lion's Rump, and is waſhed by Table Bay and the ſea, uſually

called the *Green Point*, is lower, much lower, than the iſthmus, and muſt conſequently, at the ſame time, have alſo been covered with the ſea. Now there is not one ſingle appearance to denote that ſuch has ever been the caſe. The Lion's Hill declines in a gentle and uninterrupted line into the plain, an appearance which would not have taken place had it ever been beaten by the billows of the ocean. This is further obvious by attending to the ſide of the plain next to the water, where (the looſe materials being ſwept away by the violence of the ſurge) the rocky ridges of ſchiſtus and, in places, of granite, run like ſo many artificial piers, ſometimes to the diſtance of a mile, into the ſea. The whole ſhore of the peninſula is ſcolloped out in the ſame manner, demonſtrating an encroachment, rather than a retreat, of the ocean. The two ridges alſo of the iſthmus that bound the two bays, one to the northward and the other to the ſouthward, are the higheſt parts of its ſurface, and ſeem to have ſerved the purpoſe of ſtopping the progreſs, rather than marking the retreat, of the ſea.

Indeed, from all the obſervations I have been able to make on the ſouthern coaſt of Africa, I am decidedly of opinion, that the whole of L'Aguillas Bank, ſtretching from Cape Point acroſs the entrance of Falſe Bay to the mouth of Rio Infante or the Great Fiſh River, and to the thirty-ſeventh parallel of ſouthern latitude, has at one time formed a part of the continent. The very manner in which it rounds from this extreme point of South Africa into the main land, the materials that compoſe it, the indentations of the coaſt, all formed in one direction, and the manner in which the fragile rocks break off

perpendicularly from time to time along that coaſt, are indications that ſufficiently warrant this concluſion.

It may alſo be obſerved, with regard to the L'Aguillas Bank, that the ſtream of the current ſtrikes ſtrongeſt juſt along the outer margin, which I ſuppoſe to have formerly been the old coaſt of Africa, not only becauſe the ſoundings along this margin are deeper than on any other part of the bank, but becauſe the bottom is fine white ſand, ſuch as is uſually found on the ſea ſhores; and moſt of the interior parts of the bank, and eſpecially where it approaches the projecting points of the coaſt, are compoſed of rock, and the coarſe fragments of comminuted ſandſtone.

But the ſtrong arguments advanced in favour of the Cape iſthmus having, at no great period of time, been covered with the ſea, reſts on the ſea-ſhells that have been diſcovered in the ſand that is accumulated on its ſurface. Such ſhells may exiſt, though I never ſaw them except on the ſhores of the bays, but, as I have before obſerved, whole ſtrata of theſe may be found buried in the ſides of the Lion's Hill, many hundred feet above the level of the ſea. Theſe ſhells have not been brought into that ſituation by the waves of the ocean but by birds. There is ſcarcely a ſheltered cavern in the ſides of the mountains, that riſe immediately from the ſea, where *living* ſhell fiſh may not be found any day in the year. Crows even, and vultures, as well as aquatic birds, detach the ſhell-fiſh from the rocks, and mount with them in their beaks into the air; ſhells thus carried are ſaid to be frequently found on the very ſummit even of the

the Table Mountain. In one cavern, as I have already obſerved, at the entrace of Moſſel Bay, I diſturbed ſome thouſands of birds, and found as many thouſands of living ſhell-fiſh ſcattered on the ſurface of a heap of ſhells that, for aught I know, would have filled as many thouſand waggons. The preſence of ſhells therefore, in my opinion, is no argument for the preſence of the ſea.

We ſhould not, perhaps, be far amiſs in aſſigning to Africa a prior creation to any of the other continents. Its vaſt antiquity appears in the very extraordinary manner in which the ſuperior parts of the great chain of mountains are corroded and worn away; in the immenſely deep chaſms in which the rills of water trickle down to the ſea; in the diſappearance of the water ſupplied by the heavy rains; and, above all, in the complete decompoſition of the feltſpar into a kind of ſemi-indurated clay or lithomarga; and, as I have ſeen in frequent inſtances, pyramidal cryſtals of quartz ſo looſely fixed by the baſe into maſſes of feltſpar as eaſily to be drawn out with the fingers, and when ſo drawn out, appearing corroded, and waſted in their tranſition to ſome other ſtate.

I would not here be underſtood to ſuppoſe that the ſea does not retreat from the ſhore; on the contrary, it is a well eſtabliſhed fact, that in ſome parts of the world, and particularly in the creeks of the Baltic, the ſea has ſubſided in a very remarkable manner. But this retreat is partial and owing to local circumſtances. Had it been general, and in the ſame degree as has been obſerved on the ſhores of Bothnia, the iſthmus of Suez

muſt have been overflown, and conſequently Africa muſt have been an iſland, later than 2000 years ago, whereas there is every reaſon to ſuppoſe that, many ages before that period, the iſthmus was pretty much in the ſame ſtate in which it now is. The progreſſive retreat of the ocean cannot therefore be general. It is evident, at the ſame time, to uſe the language of the ſacred hiſtorian, "That all the high hills, that were under the whole "heaven, were covered;" mountains that are now ſeveral thouſand feet above its level, and as many thouſand miles removed from its ſhores, bear the moſt unequivocal indications of this truth. But this effect may, perhaps with more plauſibility, be aſcribed to the operation of ſome ſudden cauſe, ſome convulſion in the globe of the earth, or ſome check in its diurnal or annual motion, which produced an univerſal change upon its ſurface; and by which "the waters under the heaven were gathered to-"gether unto one place, and the dry land appeared." Whether this change happened at the firſt creation, or the earth was deluged at ſome ſubſequent period, an idea that the hiſtory of all the civilized nations on earth ſeem to glance at, we muſt be content to remain in ignorance; for man, with all his boaſted philoſophy, will never be able to ſolve the queſtions which the Hebrew poet has put into the mouth of the Almighty. "Who "ſhut up the ſea with doors, when it brake forth, as if it had "iſſued out of the womb? When I made the cloud the gar-"ment thereof and thick darkneſs a ſwaddling band for it, and "*brake up for it my decreed place*, and ſet bars and doors, and "ſaid, Hitherto ſhalt thou come but no further, and here ſhall "thy proud waves be ſtayed?"

Before

Before we croſſed the mountains through the Attaquas kloof, I had occaſion to viſit Moſſel Bay, which lies about 24 miles to the ſouthward of it. The uncertainty of procuring an annual ſupply of grain, ſufficient for the conſumption of the town and the garriſon, on account of the frequent failure in the crops, had determined the government to renew the encouragement which the Dutch Eaſt India Company had found it prudent to hold out for the cultivation of corn in that part of the diſtrict of Zwellendam which was contiguous to Moſſel Bay. The building they cauſed to be erected for depoſiting grain was capable of containing ten thouſand buſhels, and was ſaid to be frequently filled; but the whole quantity I was able to procure in the neighbourhood, at an advanced price, including both wheat and barley, did not exceed fifteen hundred buſhels.

The Dutch were in poſſeſſion of a few charts of the coaſt and bays, within the limits of the ſettlement, but they were conſidered by Admiral Pringle ſo very incorrect, that he diſpatched his Majeſty's brig the Hope, having on board Lieutenant Rice, as I have already obſerved, with inſtructions to ſurvey, and take the ſoundings of, all the bays to the eaſtward, but particularly of Moſſel Bay, Plettenberg's Bay, and Algoa Bay. From this ſurvey the annexed chart of Moſſel Bay was copied, as alſo the following obſervations:

The outermoſt point of the bay, called Cape Saint Blaize, lies in latitude 34° 10′ ſouth; longitude 22° 18′ eaſt (I make it in the general chart which I conſtructed 22° 45′ eaſt). The variation of the compaſs in 1797 was 27° 54′ weſt. The time of

high water at full and change about 3 o'clock, and the riſe and fall of the tides ſix or ſeven feet. During the ſummer months, when the winds blow between eaſt and ſouth, or directly into the bay, a heavy ſwell breaks upon the beach, which makes it dangerous, and frequently impracticable, for boats to land; but theſe winds are never ſo violent, nor ſo laſting, as at the Cape; and ſhips may ride at anchor in perfect ſecurity about three quarters of a mile from the landing place. The ſouth-weſt winds, that frequently blow with great violence from April to September, bring into the bay a moſt tremendous ſea, ſetting round Cape Saint Blaize. At this ſeaſon of the year it would be highly imprudent for ſhips to enter Moſſel Bay.

A rill of water glides over the ſandy beach, where there is the beſt landing, and is eaſily conveyed into caſks in the boats, by means of a hoſe. To the ſouth-eaſt of this landing place is another ſmall cove tolerably ſheltered, and deep enough to admit veſſels of ten or twelve feet draught of water. At either of theſe coves piers for landing and ſhipping goods might conveniently be conſtructed, and at a ſmall expence, as materials may be procured upon the ſpot. Boats, however, may land at every part of the bay; and the adjacent country would eaſily afford ſupplies for about five hundred men.

The mouths of the rivers that fall into the bay are generally blocked up with ſand. They abound with various kinds of fiſh, and on the rocky parts of the coaſt are plenty of muſcles and excellent oyſters.

MOSSEL BAY,

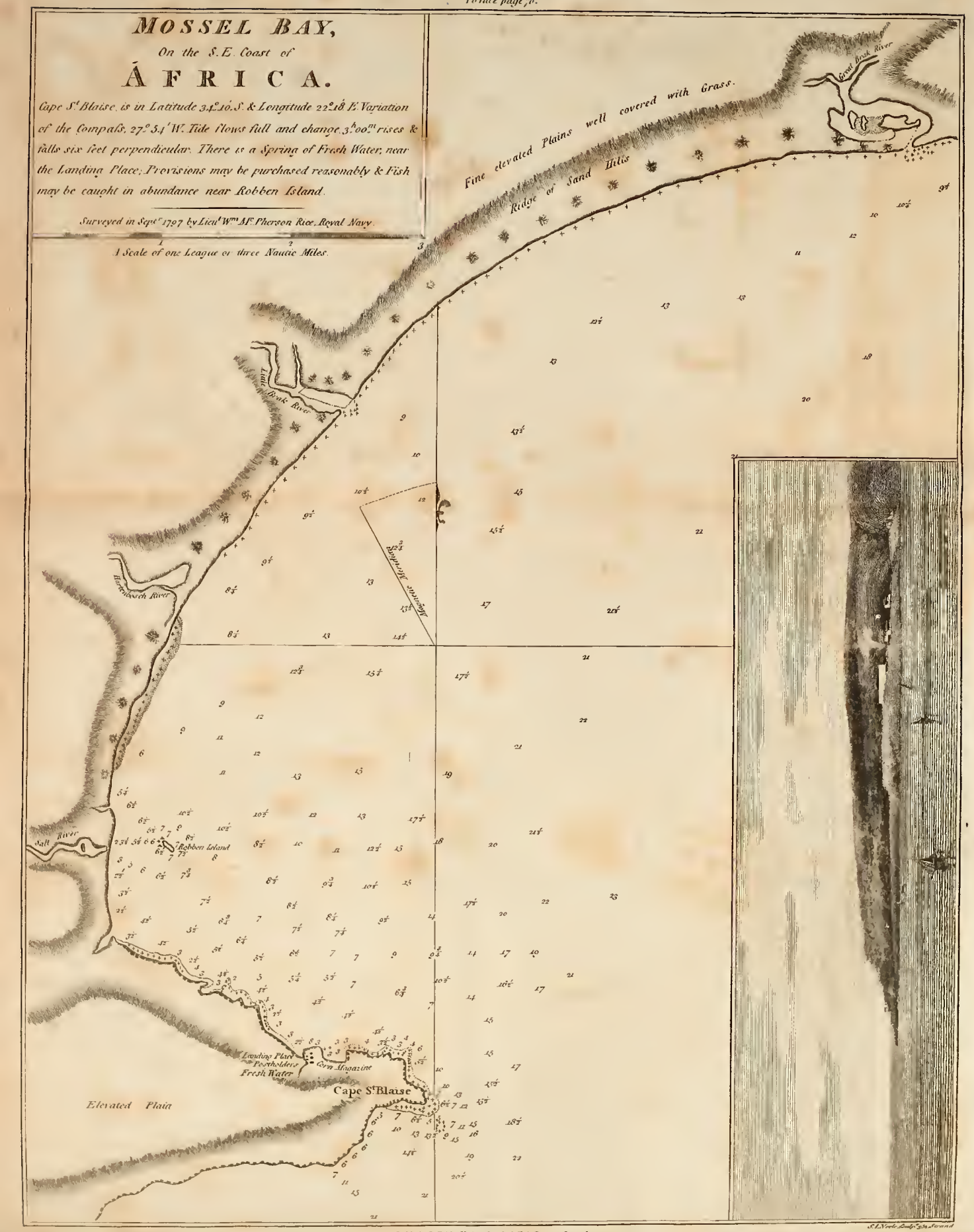
On the S.E. Coast of

AFRICA.

Cape S.t Blaise is in Latitude 34° 10. S. & Longitude 22° 18. E. Variation of the Compass, 27° 54' W. Tide flows full and change, 3h 00m rises & falls six feet perpendicular. There is a Spring of Fresh Water, near the Landing Place; Provisions may be purchased reasonably & Fish may be caught in abundance near Robben Island.

Surveyed in Sept.r 1797 by Lieu.t Wm M.c Pherson Rice, Royal Navy.

1 Scale of one League or three Nautic Miles. 2



Published Feb.y 1.st 1800 by Cadell & Davies Strand

S. J. Neele Sculp.r 352 Strand

We croſſed the mountains, over the Attaquas Paſs, on the 18th of March, and entered the *Lange Kloof* or Long Valley; very properly ſo called, being a ſlip of level ground, from a mile to two miles in width, and about one hundred and fifty miles in length, hemmed in between two high ridges of mountains. Here we met with, at almoſt every farm, an excellent vineyard of the Muſcatel and Perſian grape, both at this time fully ripe; we obſerved alſo extenſive plantations of tobacco, and a variety of fruit trees. The oranges were large and remarkably good. Notwithſtanding the great plenty, and the good quality of the grapes, the inhabitants made little wine, and that little was execrably bad. The diſtance, indeed, from a market, and the badneſs of the roads, hold out little encouragement to the farmer, either for extending the quantity or improving the quality of this article. Raiſins, being a more tranſportable commodity, are more the object of their attention than wine. The making of theſe requires a very ſimple proceſs. The bunch of grapes is firſt immerſed in a ſtrong ſolution of wood aſhes, and afterwards laid upon a ſtage covered with ruſh matting, until it be thoroughly dried. The bruiſed grapes, the undergrowings, the ſtalks and expreſſed huſks, with the lees or dregs of new wine, are thrown together into large veſſels until they ferment, and are then diſtilled into a ſort of brandy. From traſh like this is moſt of the ardent ſpirit manufactured which is ſold in the Cape under the name of *Brandewyn*, and which, from its cheapneſs and bad quality, not only poiſons the bodies, but alſo corrupts the morals of the lower orders of the town, and the country farmers.

I have

I have already had occaſion to notice the injudicious and ſlovenly manner that is generally practiſed at the Cape in the making of wine, and in the management of the vineyard. I can now venture to ſpeak poſitively as to the fact, that wine of a quality equal, if not ſuperior, to the Rheniſh, may be produced in the Cape of Good Hope. Mr. Pringle, his Majeſty's Commiſſary-General, and agent for the Honourable Eaſt India Company, purchaſed a ſmall farm on which was a vineyard that, for many years, had been totally neglected. By way of making the experiment, he cauſed it to be dreſſed and properly pruned, and, depending upon the directions laid down in the *Encyclopedie des Connaiſſances Humaines*, and Valmont de Bomare's Dictionary, rather than upon the knowledge of the Cape boors, he ſucceeded, much beyond his moſt ſanguine expectations, in obtaining a clear pleaſant wine, free from any extraneous taſte, and approaching ſo near to Hock, that very good judges might have miſtaken the one for the other. The chief precautions taken by him were, to ſeparate the ripe from the unripe fruit, the ſound from the decayed, and to remove them from the ſtalk, which none of the wine farmers of the Cape take the pains to do: he kept the muſt in open veſſels, until it had undergone the laſt degree of vinous fermentation, and then drew it off into cloſe veſſels, where it remained without moleſtation for twelve months. In like manner, there can be no doubt, the different wines of Europe might all be made here by proper treatment; for, I again repeat what I have before obſerved, that in no part of the world are better grapes produced than at the Cape. Vines grow here on any ſoil, and require but very little attention. Many thouſand acres of ground,

ground, now totally neglected, might be planted with vineyards within ſight of the Table Mountain.

Our march along the *Lange Kloof* was delightfully pleaſant. The road was extremely good, the country cheerful, being moſtly covered with graſs or ſhrubby plants, exhibiting from a diſtance a continuance of verdant lawns, which are not frequent in this colony, by much the greater portion of the ſurface being either extenſive waſtes of karroo almoſt without a veſtige of vegetation, or naked ranges of mountains. Here too there was a ſufficiency of water to admit of farm-houſes being placed at the regulated diſtance of three miles. The ſloping ſides of the valley were covered with a great variety of ſplendid heaths, in the height of their bloſſom, of the ſhrub called *gnidia*, of the ſhowy and everlaſting *Xeranthemum*, and a profuſion of other plants that the eye of a botaniſt would have feaſted upon with avidity. But the nature of our expedition would only admit of a glance in paſſing.

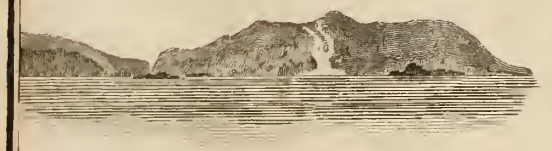
Having proceeded along the Kloof to that part which is nearly oppoſite to Plettenberg's Bay, we found it neceſſary to halt a few days in order to refreſh the horſes. In the mean time I croſſed the mountains, agreeably to my inſtructions, and aſſembled the wood-cutters in the vicinity of the bay, to enter into a contract with them for a ſupply of timber for the public ſervice at the Cape. Independent of the wants of the government, it was conſidered adviſeable, at this juncture, to furniſh theſe people with employment, in order to keep them at home; for ſuch is the nature of an African boor, that, having nothing par-

ticular to engage his attention, he is glad of an excuſe to ride to the diſtance of eight or ten days, whether it be to a church or to a vendue, to hunt elephants or to plunder the Kaffers.

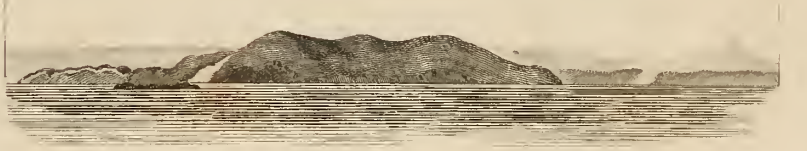
In juſtice, however, to the farmers of the Plettenberg Bay diſtrict, they are the only claſs of people, in the whole colony, that deſerve the name of being induſtrious. To fell the large trees, that are now only to be procured in deep glens, and then to drag them out, is a work of labour and toil; and their profits are ſo trifling, that few of them are enabled to purchaſe ſlaves, and of courſe are reduced to the neceſſity of working themſelves.

The vaſt foreſt, commencing oppoſite Moſſel Bay, and running along the feet of the mountains, on the ſouth ſide, almoſt to Algoa Bay, naturally excites an inquiry into the cauſes that have promoted the growth of trees in this particular ſpot, when all the reſt of the country, in compariſon to this tract of land, may be conſidered as a barren deſert. The ſame cauſe, by which I endeavoured to account for the abundance, and for the ſcarcity of ſprings, namely, the ſituation of the granitic baſe of the mountains, will perhaps explain alſo the growth of theſe foreſts. At the diſtance of every two or three miles, a current of water burſts out of this chain of mountains, whoſe banks are covered with trees, in ſome places down to the ſea-ſhore. In like manner, the foot of the Table Mountain at the Cape was ſkirted with a foreſt, of which, at preſent, not a veſtige remains, on the ſide next the town; but, in the deep glens behind the mountain, and on the ſide next to the iſthmus, there are ſtill extenſive

Appearance of Seal Hill when the Cape bore S.E.b.E. & Gap E. by S. distant 4 or 5 miles.



Appearance of Seal Hill when the Cape bore N.by E.½E. the Gap N.¼W. & Peak within Keurbooms R. N.N.E. distant 5 or 6 miles.



PLETTENBERGS BAY
on the
S.E. COAST of AFRICA.

Seal Cape is in Latitude 34°.6'.S. & Longitude 23°.48'.E. Variation of the Compass 27°.12'.W. Tide flows full & change 3h.30m. rises and falls 5 or 6 feet perpendicular, the Landing place is on the beach near the Government Storehouses, where you may get Fresh Water by rolling the Casks 300 Yards but the high surf that generally breaks, makes it difficult to water.

Surveyed in July & Augt. 1797. by Lieut. Wm. M.Pherson Rice R. Navy.

...lished Feb.y 1st. 1800. by Cadell & Davies Strand.

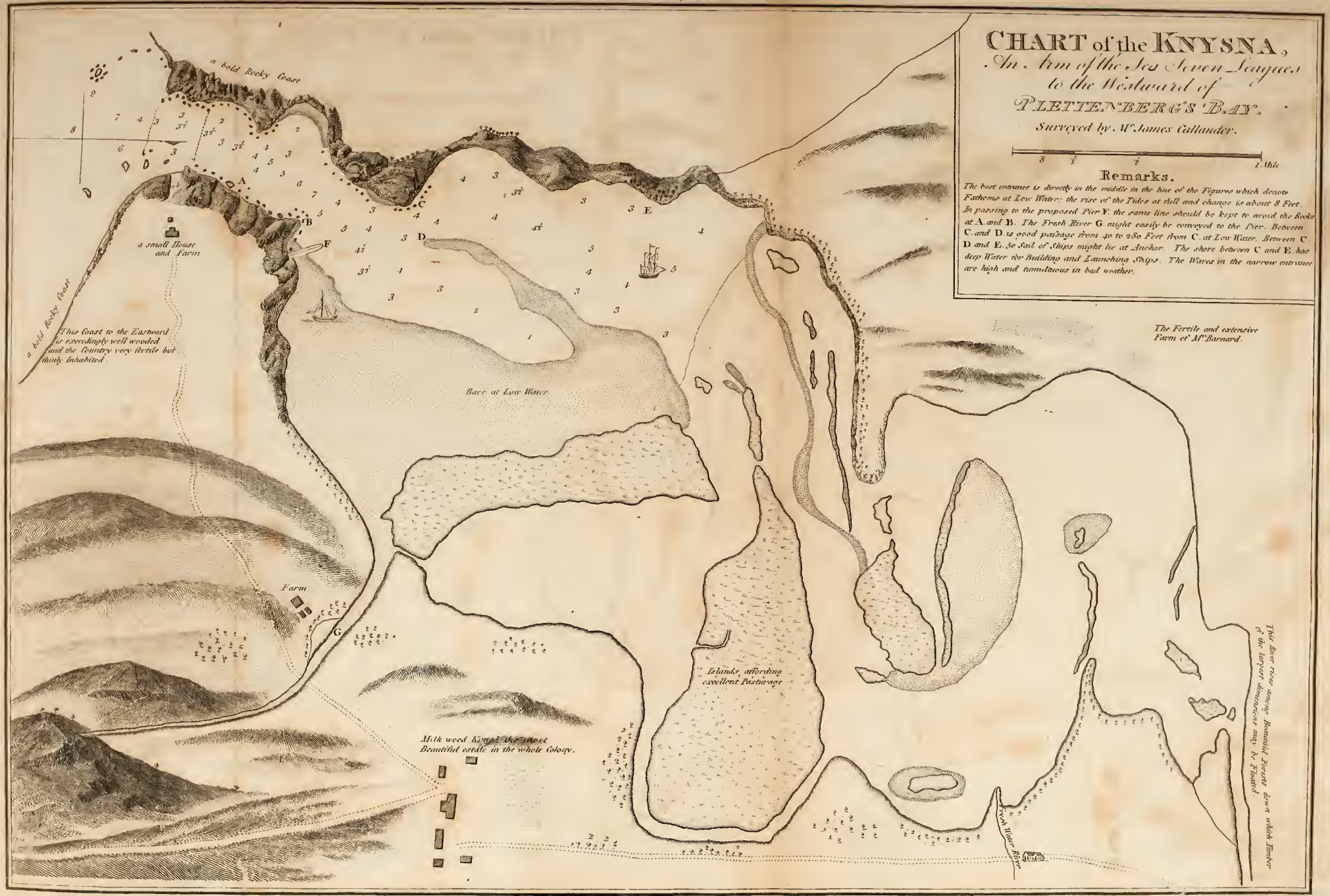
ſive thickets, among which the greateſt number of the trees, peculiar to Southern Africa, are to be found, and ſome of them of a very conſiderable ſize.

The circumſtance of there being plenty of timber at Plettenberg's Bay, and abundance of unoccupied land of a good ſoil, well watered, and fit for any cultivation, had induced a wealthy merchant of Holland, on the reſtoration of the colony to its ancient poſſeſſors, to obtain permiſſion for carrying into effect a plan that would, no doubt, have proved highly beneficial to the ſettlement at large in a variety of ways. He had obtained a grant from the government of the whole diſtrict of Plettenberg's Bay, on condition of paying a certain annual rent. This diſtrict he meant to divide into one hundred parcels, upon which were to be placed one hundred induſtrious families from Europe, Dutch or German, to be ſent over with ſtock, utenſils, implements of huſbandry, and every other article that was requiſite to carry on the uſeful trades, and to till the ground. None of them was to be allowed a ſingle ſlave; but it was recommended to encourage the Hottentots to every kind of uſeful labour. The war, however, I imagine, has, for the preſent, ſuſpended the execution of this laudable plan, which, there is every reaſon to ſuppoſe, would have ſucceeded to the height of the wiſhes of him who projected it.

The obſervations with regard to the winds, and the ſwell of the ſea ſetting into Plettenberg's Bay, will equally apply to this and to Moſſel Bay, the poſition of both being ſimilar. It ſcarcely ſeems capable, by any expence, of being rendered ſecure even for ſmall

craft, in the winter months; but, in the ſummer ſeaſon, ſhips may remain without any danger. There is, however, an arm of the ſea, at the diſtance of about 18 miles to the weſtward of Plettenberg's Bay, which may one day become an important ſtation. It is called the Knyſna. In a former viſit to this country, I obſerved that the tide ſet into it through a narrow paſſage or portal, as into a dock: that this paſſage, though narrow, and not quite clear of rocks, would admit of ſmall veſſels. Since that time, Mr. Calandar, a gentleman formerly belonging to the navy, has made a particular ſurvey of this arm of the ſea, of which the annexed is a plan. He obſerves that the depth of water, and great extent, of the Knyſna, running into the very centre of fine foreſts, render it a moſt eligible place for building and repairing ſhips. That veſſels of five hundred tons and upwards, deeply laden, may paſs the portal; and that much larger might be built therein and ſent out light, to be completed in Plettenberg's Bay. That the foreſts contain ſeveral different kinds of durable and well grown timber, fit for that valuable purpoſe, as well as abundance of maſts and yards. The native fir, called geel hout (Ilex crocea), grows to upwards of ſixty feet in length, and to five, ſix, and even eight feet in diameter; which is alſo the caſe with the native oak, bearing an acorn exactly like that of Europe, but called here, on account of a ſtrong and diſagreeable ſmell which it emits when green, the ſtinkwood tree (Quercus Africana). That the ſmell, however, is attended with the peculiar advantage of preventing the worm from attacking it.

The



Published Febr.y 1st 1804 by Cadell & Davies Strand.

S.J. Neele, Sculp.t 352 Strand.

The extent of the foreſts, beginning at Moſſel Bay, and running eaſtward parallel to the ſea-coaſt, is at leaſt two hundred and fifty Engliſh miles, and the breadth from the feet of the mountains to the ſea is ten, fifteen, and in ſome places twenty, miles. A great part of this tract is compoſed of large and beautiful plains, interſected by numerous rivers, and abounding in lakes full of excellent fiſh. The ground is well calculated either for paſturage or tillage, and capable of complete irrigation; but, adds this gentleman, the farmers here, as well as in all other parts of the colony, are lazy beyond deſcription; the grounds, held by each, being ſufficient for a great number of induſtrious families. He concludes his remarks by an opinion, that the ſlip of land, ſituated between the firſt chain of mountains and the ſea coaſt, and from Zwellendam to Algoa Bay, if well ſtocked with inhabitants, ſo that each would be under the neceſſity of labouring for a ſubſiſtence, would not only be able to furniſh a ſupply of grain for the whole colony, but would afford alſo a ſurplus for exportation.

Although I cannot exactly ſubſcribe to this opinion, yet I am firmly perſuaded that, with the addition of the tract of country between the north range of mountains and the weſt coaſt, and from Saint Helena Bay to the Cape, the whole maſs of people within the preſent limits of the colony might be more comfortably ſubſiſted than they now are, and an abundance of corn and cattle, wine, and other neceſſaries, over and above, for a garriſon of five thouſand men, and for a fleet containing an equal number of ſouls. But in order to make the country produce this

ſupply,

ſupply, it would be neceſſary to procure a new race of inhabitants, or to change the nature of the old ones.

It is no eaſy matter to convey, by any deſcription, an adequate idea of the condition of the peaſantry of the Cape of Good Hope; ſo inconceivably different is it from that of the ſame claſs in Europe, or indeed in any other part of the world. The farmers in the back-ſettlements of North America are enabled, by hard labour, to raiſe a ſuperfluity of proviſions beyond their own conſumption, chiefly, however, in the article of grain; of animal food they have no redundancy. The peaſantry of Europe labour ſix days in the week, the greater part of whom can barely earn a ſcanty ſubſiſtence for themſelves and their families. But a boor of the Cape neither knows the corroding pain of an empty ſtomach, nor hears his children cry for a morſel of bread,—of meat I ought to ſay, for bread they rarely taſte. A traveller, on entering their miſerable hovels, needs never deſpair of finding their tenants unprovided. Salted beef, or fleſh of the larger kinds of game, he will generally find hanging in the chimney, and it is an equal chance that the whole or greater part of a ſlaughtered ſheep ſhould be ſuſpended from the roof. A Cape boor never works. Every day throughout the whole year is to him a holiday. The greateſt exertion he ever makes, and which has pleaſure for its object as well as profit, is the killing of game. Nor is the exerciſe he takes on ſuch occaſions to be meaſured by the activity, energy, or the fatigue that an European ſportſman muſt ſometimes undergo. A Dutch boor, in the firſt inſtance, never traverſes

traverſes the heath on foot, but generally fires from the ſaddle. He conſiders the labour even of carrying his muſquet to be too fatiguing, and, therefore, has a Hottentot boy trained to ride or to run after him as his armour-bearer, an office not likely in this country ever to be productive of rank or emolument.

Such, however, are the miſtaken notions imbibed by liſtening to perſons who are either really ignorant, or intereſted to miſlead, that the peaſantry of the Cape have been repreſented as a poor and diſtreſſed people, overwhelmed with debt, burdened with taxes, and oppreſſed by the government in a variety of ways. How far ſuch ſtatements are founded in truth, will beſt be ſhewn in our ſtatiſtical ſketch of the ſettlement. In the mean time I ſhall juſt obſerve, as a poſition to be proved hereafter, that the peaſantry of the Cape are better fed, more indolent, more ignorant, and more brutal, than any ſet of men, bearing the reputation of being civilized, upon the face of the whole earth.

I have frequently had occaſion to notice the abundance of iron ore in almoſt every part of Southern Africa, ſome of which was ſo rich in metal as to contain from ſeventy to eighty per cent., but that the total want of fuel rendered it uſeleſs. Here, however, in the vicinity of the foreſts, that objection is removed; and the ores might, in all probability, be melted to advantage, as all kinds of iron work are prodigiouſly dear at the Cape. We were told that, in the neighbourhood of the Knyſna, another large maſs of native iron had been diſcovered,

ſimilar

ſimilar to that which I mentioned to have ſeen in the plains of the Zuure Veldt, and which I then ſuppoſed the Kaffers to have carried thither from the ſea ſhore. I paid little attention to the report at that time; but ſince my return to the Cape, the diſcovery of a third maſs, in an extraordinary ſituation, the very ſummit of Table Mountain, excited a ſtronger degree of curioſity. I imagined the firſt to have been the flat part of an anchor, although it was deſtitute of any particular ſhape, but in this of Table Mountain, which may weigh from one hundred and fifty to one hundred and ſixty pounds, there appeared ſome faint traces of the ſhape of the flook, or the broad part of the arm which takes hold of the ground. It was found half buried in ſand and quartz pebbles, every part, as well under as above ground, much corroded, and the cavities filled with pebbles, which, however, did not appear to be component parts of the maſs, not being angular, but evidently rounded by attrition. As, in the firſt inſtance, I ſuppoſe the Kaffers to have carried the maſs into the ſituation where it was diſcovered; ſo alſo, with regard to the latter, I am inclined to think it muſt have been brought upon the ſummit of the mountain by the native Hottentots, as to a place of ſafety, when Bartholomew Diaz, or ſome of the early Portugueſe navigators, landed firſt in this country. Others, however, who have ſeen and examined the maſs are of opinion, that it muſt have been placed in its preſent ſituation at a period long antecedent to the diſcovery of the Cape of Good Hope by Europeans. Be that as it may, the reſemblance it bears to part of an anchor, with the Neptunian appearances of various parts of Southern Africa, which are particularly ſtriking in the formation of the Table Mountain,

preſs ſtrongly on the recollection the beautiful obſervation of the Latin poet.

" Vidi ego, quòd fuerat quondam ſolidiſſima tellus
" Eſſe fretum. Vidi factas ex æquore terras,
" Et procul a pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ
" Et vetus inventa eſt in montibus anchora ſummis."

" The face of places, and their forms, decay;
" And that is ſolid earth that once was ſea:
" Seas in their turn, retreating from the ſhore,
" Make ſolid land what ocean was before;
" Far from the ſhore are ſhells of fiſhes found,
" And ruſty anchors fix'd on mountain-ground."

It may be obſerved, by the way, that Mr. Dryden has reverſed the idea of the poet in the firſt couplet of his tranſlation, and continued the ſame in his ſecond, making only the land to gain on the ſea, inſtead of contraſting it with the oppoſite effect of the ſea encroaching on the land. Obſerving this to a ſon of my ingenious and learned friend Doctor Tytler, a boy of twelve years of age, he requeſted to have the Latin lines, and immediately produced the following ſtanzas:

" Turn'd into ſea I've ſeen the earth
" Diſſolved in the wave,
" And from the ſea new hills ſpring forth,
" And their broad backs upheave.

" And far from ocean's utmoſt bounds,
" Shells have diſcovered been,
" And on the tops of riſing grounds
" Old ruſty anchors ſeen."

In my laſt journey up the mountain I obſerved, alſo, about midway, ſeveral arborizations on ſtones, thoſe of the fern tribe very diſtinct; and in the ſame ſtratum, which is ſtrongly coloured with iron, I diſcovered ſeveral large maſſes of pyramidal cryſtals of quartz, and fine ſpecimens of hæmatite or blood-ſtone.

In our return over the mountains from Plettenberg's Bay little occurred to attract attention. The *Sparmannia* in the woods, with its large leaves of light green, contraſted with the dark and ſlender foliage of the yellow wood tree, and the ſtill darker *Eckbergia*, with the lofty ſummits of the naked mountains riſing far above them, afforded ſcenery for the pencil extremely pictureſque and beautiful. The fibres of the bark of the Sparmannia make an excellent kind of hemp, ſuperior in ſtrength to that of the *Hibiſcus*, which I mentioned to have found on a former viſit to this bay. Saplings of this tree the ſecond year riſe in a clear ſtem to the height of ſix feet, ſo that in the event of any future eſtabliſhment being made at Plettenberg's Bay, the *Sparmannia* may become a very uſeful plant. The *Gardenia Thunbergia*, or the wild Cape Jeſſamine, being in the height of its bloſſom, gave out ſo powerful a ſcent, that, in the evening, it could be felt at the diſtance of ſeveral miles. The *Nymphæa cerulea*, and another ſpecies of a ſmaller ſize with ſpear-ſhaped leaves (*foliis haſtatis*), and roſe-coloured petals, ornamented the margins of the *Keurboom* River; and the *Wachendorfia* with the *Aletris Uvaria* were common in all the boggy grounds. The ſtately white *Strelitzias*, which are found only on the banks of the Piſang River, were alſo now in flower.

The

The *Proteæ Grandifloræ*, on the ſummit of the mountains, reſembled, in their ſize and appearance, old ſtunted oaks. Heaths alſo were very large, and bulbous rooted plants in great abundance. We found, likewiſe, growing among the rocks, numbers of that ſingular plant the *Tamus Elephantipes*, ſo called from the reſemblance of its large tuberous root, riſing above the ſurface of the ground, to the foot of the elephant:—but I am deviating too far from the title I have prefixed to this Chapter, in making obſervations on natural hiſtory, which, indeed, the nature of the expedition was not well calculated to promote. I might, however, with more propriety, perhaps, have called it a Miſcellaneous Chapter, as it is not meant to be confined to one object.

The diſtrict of Plettenberg's Bay is in fact a rich field for the naturaliſt. Let his favourite purſuit be what it may, botany, ornithology, or zoology, he may here indulge his inclination. The greateſt part of the foreſt trees ſtill remain unexamined. The birds are numerous, and have *ſeriouſly* been attacked by no other collector than Mr. Le Vaillant, of whom Mr. Meeding, for many years the poſtholder at the bay, ſpeaks as being an excellent ſhot at ſmall birds, and a moſt indefatigable purſuer of them. Of animals, from the little tailleſs *das* or Cavy, and the pigmy Antelope, to the huge Elephant, the woods of Sitſikamma furniſh great variety. The *Plain* of *Hartebeeſts* abounds with that noble ſpecies of the antelope tribe from which it takes its name; and every thicket is filled with the beautiful *Boſbok*, or Buſh deer, remarkable for its ſpotted haunches, and ſtill more

ſo from the near reſemblance of its cry to the barking of a dog.

On reaching our quarters in Lange Kloof we were agreeably ſurprized to find that the ſhoes of all our horſes had been removed, and new ones placed on ſuch as wanted them. This had been a matter of ſerious conſideration from the firſt day of our expedition; for, as the horſes of the colony are never ſhod, except thoſe in the hands of the Engliſh, we could hardly flatter ourſelves that we ſhould meet with any perſon in the interior of the country, capable of undertaking ſuch an operation. A young man, however, born deaf and dumb, without ever having ſeen a horſe-ſhoe before, made ſeveral new ones, and replaced others with as much care and neatneſs, as one that had been brought up to the buſineſs of a farrier. This ingenious young man, the only one I can ſafely ſay that I ever met with in the courſe of my travels in this country, ſupported, by his labour, a worthleſs drunken father, and a number of brothers and ſiſters.

Nothing of moment occurred until we reached the borders of the Camtoos River, which divides the diſtrict of Zwellendam from that of Graaf Reynet. Being paſſable only by waggons at one ford, we encamped there, as the moſt eligible ſituation for keeping open a communication between Brigadier General Vandeleur and the Cape. Scarcely, however, had we arrived when an expreſs from the General directed us to proceed to Algoa Bay.

The

The country between the Camtoos River and this bay is extremely rich and beautiful. Like a gentleman's park, or pleaſure grounds, in England, the ſurface is diverſified with thickets and knots of ſtately trees, planted, however, by the ſpontaneous and free hand of nature. The knolls are covered with thick graſs, which, for want of cattle to eat it off, is ſuffered to rot upon the ground, or is partially burnt off towards the end of ſummer to make room for the young blades to ſhoot up with the earlieſt rains of winter. It is greatly to be lamented that ſo fine a country ſhould be ſuffered to remain in total neglect. A few indolent boors graſp the whole diſtrict, which, when in the poſſeſſion of the rightful owners, the Kaffers and the Hottentots, ſome thirty years ago, maintained many thouſand families by the numbers of their cattle it was found capable of ſupporting. The ſmall game, which here are plentiful, gramineous roots, the bulbs of the iris, of the wild garlick, and of the *Cyanella*, the filaments and anthers of whoſe ſtamens bear a remarkable reſemblance to the fingers and nails of the human hand, togegether with the ſeeds of the Strelitzia Reginæ, and a variety of wild berries, were the chief articles of ſubſiſtence of the Hottentot tribes, and milk was the principal food of the Kaffers.

Algoa Bay has little to recommend it as a reſort for ſhipping. Like all the other Bays, upon the ſame coaſt, it is directly open to the ſouth-eaſt winds, which, however, are leſs dangerous, becauſe leſs violent, than thoſe which blow from weſt and ſouth-weſt. The diſturbances of Graaf Reynet have cauſed a number of ſhips to viſit this bay from the Cape, but ſcarcely one that has been there has eſcaped accidents happening to their boats in

attempting to land. Almoſt a perpetual ſwell rolls upon the the ſandy beach. Being, however, ſo conveniently ſituated for an enemy to communicate with the rebellious boors of Graaf Reynet, and equally ſo with the Kaffers, General Dundas thought it adviſable to ſtation at the bay a few troops, and to erect a ſmall block-houſe for their protection. It was, indeed, ſurpriſing that none of the enemies' cruiſers from the Iſle of France thought of attacking this vulnerable, and hitherto defenceleſs, ſpot, ſo diſtant from the Cape that much miſchief might have been effected long before the government could have received information of it.

The French frigate *La Preneuſe* was the only enemy's ſhip that ventured to look into this or any of the bays during the whole war; at which time the Rattleſnake ſloop of war, and the Camel ſtore ſhip, happened to be at anchor there. The French ſhip came in under Daniſh colours, and brought up in the duſk of the evening between two and three cables' length from the Rattleſnake, whoſe captain was on ſhore with a detachment of the crew, unable to get on board on account of the high ſurf running upon the beach; but Lieutenant (now Captain) Fothergill diſplayed, on this occaſion, great judgment and bravery. Suſpecting her to be an enemy, he fired a ſhot a-head, of which ſhe took no notice; he then poured in a broadſide, which was returned by the frigate. About midnight, the fire from the Camel being ſilenced, the frigate changed her poſition, bringing her broadſide to bear directly upon the Rattleſnake. In this manner they engaged till three in the morning, when the frigate thought fit to ſlip her cable, and

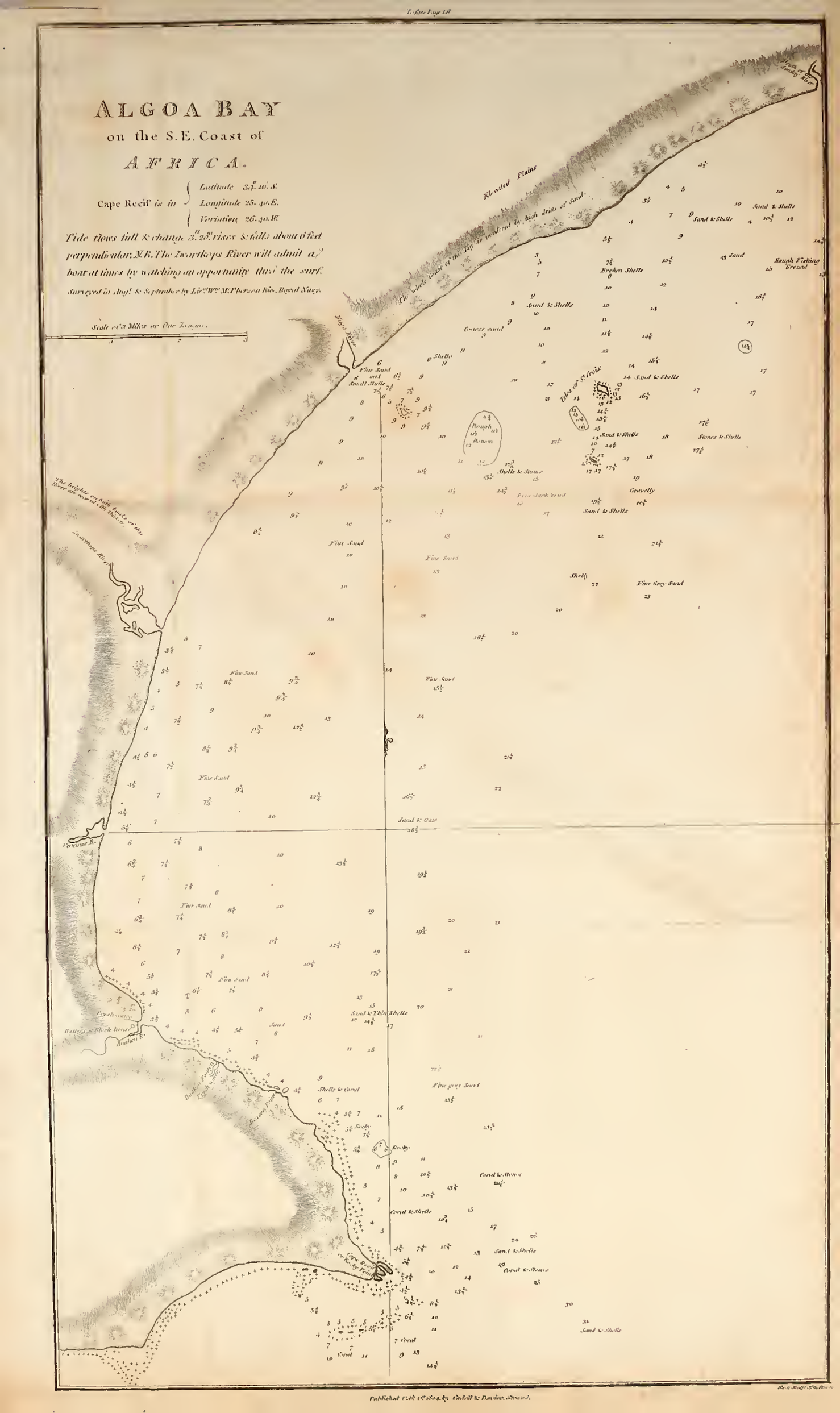
ALGOA BAY
on the S.E. Coast of
AFRICA.

Cape Recif is in { Latitude 34° 10' S. / Longitude 25. 40. E. / Variation 26. 40. W

Tide flows full & change 3h 20m rises & falls about 6 feet perpendicular. N.B. The Zwartkops River will admit a boat at times by watching an opportunity thro' the surf.

Surveyed in Augt & September by Lieut Wm M. Pherson Rio. Royal Navy.

Scale of 3 Miles or One Leagues



Published Feb. 1st 1806 by Cadell & Davies, Strand.

and ſheer off to ſea. The Rattleſnake was much damaged in her rigging, received many ſhot between wind and water, had three men killed and ſeveral wounded. La Preneuſe mounted 44 guns, and had on board upwards of three hundred men.

This affair decided General Dundas as to the expediency of erecting a ſmall work for the defence of the landing-place, and a block-houſe ſurrounded with a palliſade for the protection of the men to be ſtationed there. Theſe precautions were the more neceſſary as whalers and neutral ſhips ſometimes look into Algoa Bay and purchaſe refreſhments from the boors in exchange for gunpowder. The miſchief that an enemy might effect by landing here and putting muſquets and ammunition into the hands of the Kaffers, is not to be calculated; and theſe people for ſome years back have been ſtationed in vaſt numbers upon the banks of the Sunday River, which diſcharges itſelf into Algoa Bay oppoſite the iſlands of St. Croix, where it may be ſeen, by the chart, there is ſecure anchorage and convenient communication.

From the moment this bay became a military ſtation, the face of the ſurrounding country began to put on a new appearance. The ſlip of ground, contiguous to the landing place, was converted into gardens; and the ſtupid boors ſtared with wonder, and were ſtruck with aſtoniſhment, at the variety and quantity of vegetables they produced. Theſe people, alſo, ſoon found the benefit of a ready market for the conſumption of their produce. Many trifling articles, ſuch as milk and eggs, from which they had never before derived the leaſt advantage, were

now

now commuted into money. Their ſheep and cattle were ſold at higher rates than the butchers were accuſtomed to give them; and their butter, ſoap, and candles, which they were always under the neceſſity of carrying more than five hundred miles to market, fetched now, upon the ſpot, double the uſual prices.

This change of circumſtances, ſo favourable to the boors in the vicinity of the bay, was extended, likewiſe, in ſome degree, over the whole country by the moving of troops. The officers, conſtantly paſſing upon the road, ſoon prevailed upon the farmers to take money for their accommodations, which, under the Dutch government, they would have been afraid to do. Every petty clerk of the Secretary's office, an attorney or land-meaſurer, travelling in the country, aſſumed ſuch airs of conſequence, that the ignorant boor was glad to yield the whole houſe to his diſpoſal, and all that it afforded. The officers of government were alſo empowered to demand gratuitous teams of oxen to convey them, like paupers, from houſe to houſe. If a farmer had only a ſingle team, and it happened to be in the plough when one of theſe gentry paſſed, it would be neceſſary for him to break off work, and lend his oxen to tranſport the *groot heer*, the great gentleman, to the next neighbour's houſe. In this reſpect they muſt have felt a ſenſible difference in the conduct of the Britiſh officers. Near ten thouſand pounds were circulated, in one year, by the troops in Graaf Reynet, among more than two hundred families, and chiefly for articles of proviſion and forage, many of which, before this period, brought them no returns.

A few

A few days before our arrival at Algoa Bay, General Vandeleur had ſubdued the rebellious boors in the manner I have already deſcribed in the beginning of this chapter, and had ſent the ringleaders on board his Majeſty's ſhip the Rattleſnake, to be conveyed to the Cape to take their trial there by their own laws, before their own court of juſtice. Deſirable as it might have been to puniſh the leaders upon the ſpot by martial law, as an example to a rebellious people, the General reſolved to try once more what lenient meaſures might effect, concluding that, in the event of their own countrymen finding them guilty, the coloniſts muſt at leaſt acknowledge the juſtice of the deciſion; whereas in the other caſe, as it generally happens, the public are more ready to blame the ſeverity of martial law than to acknowledge the criminality of thoſe upon whom it is inflicted.

This trial for ſedition and rebellion cauſed no ſmall degree of ſpeculation at the Cape; and the general opinion was, that either from inclination, or the fear of offending their countrymen, the judges would acquit the priſoners. Such conjectures were founded on the very illiberal and erroneous notion, that in no inſtance where a coloniſt and a foreigner were concerned had the latter obtained his cauſe before this court. Such an idea might probably have taken its riſe from the conſtitution and the practice of the court. Two-thirds of its members were choſen out of the ſervants of the Dutch Eaſt India Company, and one-third only from the burghers of the town. The Company, as proprietors of the ſettlement, directed their ſervants to take the aſcendancy and the lead in all colonial affairs;

but by way of reconciling, in ſome meaſure, the free burghers, which were not in their employ, a certain number of theſe were admitted into the civil courts and boards; but the opinions and propoſitions of the former were, in moſt matters, found to preponderate.

Neither one nor the other in the Court of Juſtice were profeſſional men; nor were they ſuppoſed to poſſeſs a greater ſhare of legal knowledge than the other citizens out of which they were choſen. As members, compoſing a Court of Judicature, they had no ſalaries under the Dutch government, and therefore were ſuppoſed not to reject preſents from one or both of the parties who had ſuits before the Court. But although they had no ſpecial ſalaries, moſt of them either actually enjoyed other employments attended with profit, or were conſidered as entitled to ſucceed to them on vacancies, in recompence for their ſervices as miniſters of juſtice. And as the ſituation, though honourable and conferring a diſtinction of rank, was attended with a conſiderable ſhare of trouble and ſome expence, and as their lucrative offices, on the ſurrender of the ſettlement to the Engliſh, in a great meaſure ceaſed, it ſeemed but reaſonable that ſo important a duty ſhould be compenſated by an allowance from Government, which was accordingly made to them by Lord Macartney.

One part of their practice, however, in conformity with the cuſtom of the United Provinces, was particularly repugnant to the feelings of Engliſhmen and to the principles of Engliſh juriſprudence. The proceedings of the Court were always carried

ried on, *foribus clauſis*, with cloſed doors; no oral pleading admitted, no confronting the accuſed with the witneſſes, the depoſition of each being ſingly taken down before two commiſſioners, on oath, and afterwards read to the Court; all perſons were excluded from entering the Court except the parties concerned. In all criminal cauſes the Fiſcal, or Attorney-General, directed two commiſſioners of the Court to examine evidences, take depoſitions, hold inqueſts over bodies that had died ſuddenly by the viſitation of God, accident, or violence; and to draw up, in every caſe, preparatory information for the trial. For this troubleſome part of their duty they had no remuneration, unleſs when the delinquent ſhould be condemned to labour for the ſervice of government, in which caſe the expences of the trial were paid out of the produce of that labour.

Such is the outline of the conſtitution and practice of a court that foreigners have long been accuſtomed to mention with obloquy and detraction. In civil cauſes they might, perhaps, in ſome inſtances, have leaned a little to the ſide of their countrymen, if the caſe happened to be nearly upon a balance; but in all criminal caſes they act with the greateſt caution and circumſpection. Two irreproachable and concurring witneſſes are required to ſubſtantiate a fact againſt the delinquent; and *one* evidence of good character, produced on the part of a perſon accuſed of felony, is conſidered of equal weight with *two* produced againſt him: and even after ſentence has been paſſed, until the moment of execution, the condemned is allowed to bring forward evidence in his favour. Nor can circumſtantial

evidence, however ſtrong, warrant the carrying of any ſentence into execution, until a free confeſſion be made of the crime. Such confeſſion, it is true, was, under the Dutch government, ſometimes extorted by the application of the torture; in which caſe, if the guilty had nerve enough, he was ſure to eſcape, and if the innocent was feeble, he was equally ſure of being hanged.

Even in civil cauſes, the preſumption that they were generally right is in their favour; for ſince the eſtabliſhment of an Engliſh Court of Appeal in the year 1797, to the evacuation of the colony, out of the number of caſes brought before the ſaid Court of appeal, only one ſentence was reverſed; and it appeared that the error committed, in this inſtance, by the Court of Juſtice was owing to their tenacity rather to the letter, than to the ſpirit of the law; and that by rigidly adhering to the *ſummum jus*, their deciſion was productive of the *ſumma injuria*. It was alſo ſuppoſed that, in the caſe alluded to, a very undue influence was employed to ſway the Court; but as the affair is yet to come before a Britiſh court in England, I forbear to enter more at large into the ſubject. Neither are the members of the Court of Juſtice in the Cape ſo wanting in talent or in legal knowledge as might be ſuppoſed; at leaſt, they proved to the world that they had ſagacity enough to detect, and integrity and firmneſs enough to puniſh, the authors of a moſt nefarious and barefaced tranſaction, which thoſe perſons had contrived to carry through the Court of Vice-Admiralty with complete ſucceſs, though the impoſition was of the groſſeſt nature.

The trial of the boors for ſedition having engroſſed ſo much of the public converſation, his Majeſty's Fiſcal, or Attorney-General to proſecute for the crown in all criminal caſes, determined for once, though contrary to eſtabliſhed uſage, to carry on the whole proceedings with *open doors*. The priſoners were all found guilty, and three of them condemned to ſuffer death; but by the lenity of the Britiſh government which, in this colony was, on moſt occaſions, carried to an extreme, the ſentence was never put in execution. On the reſtoration of the colony the convicted boors were delivered into the hands of the new governors, who, on this occaſion, could not do leſs than pronounce a general amneſty; in which caſe, they will, moſt probably, be allowed to return to their old connections, and to their old habits.

But to return to the affairs of Graaf Reynet. The general having thus got rid of the rebel chiefs, and thereby put an end, as he thought, to further diſturbances, concluded that little now remained to be done, but to collect his ſcattered forces from the different parts of the diſtrict, and to aſſemble them at head-quarters in Bruyntjes Hoogte; part of which he meant to embark on board the Rattleſnake, and the remainder to ſend over land, by eaſy marches, to the Cape.

In croſſing the country from Algoa Bay to the northward, in order to put his plan in execution, to our no leſs ſurprize than mortification, we fell in with a large party of Hottentots, ſo diſguiſed, and dreſſed out in ſuch a whimſical and fantaſtical manner, that we were totally at a loſs to conjecture what to make

make of them. Some wore large three cornered hats, with green or blue breeches, the reſt of the body naked; ſome had jackets of cloth over their ſheep-ſkin covering, and others had ſheep-ſkins thrown over linen ſhirts. The women were laden with bundles, and the men were all armed with muſquets. We ſoon diſcovered, which indeed they readily confeſſed, that they had been plundering the boors. A Hottentot, among the many good qualities he poſſeſſes, has one which he is maſter of in an eminent degree,—I mean a rigid adherence to truth. When accuſed of a crime, of which he has been guilty, with native ſimplicity he always ſtates the fact as it happened; but, at the ſame time, he has always a juſtification at hand for what he has done. From lying and ſtealing, the predominant and inſeparable vices of the condition of ſlavery, the Hottentot may be conſidered as exempt. In the whole courſe of my travels, and in the midſt of the numerous attendants of this nation, with which I was conſtantly ſurrounded, I can with ſafety declare that I never was robbed nor deceived by any of them.

On making inquiry into the particulars of the unpleaſant tranſaction that had taken place, one of the Hottentots, called *Klaas Stuurman*, or *Nicholas* the *Helmſman*, whom they had ſelected for their chief, ſtepped forwards, and, after humbly entreating us to hear him out without interruption, began a long oration, which contained a hiſtory of their calamities and ſufferings under the yoke of the boors; their injuſtice, in firſt depriving them of their country, and then forcing their offspring into a ſtate of ſlavery; their cruel treatment on every ſlight occaſion, which it became impoſſible for them to bear any longer;

and

and the reſolution they had therefore taken to apply for redreſs before the Engliſh troops ſhould leave the country. That their employers, ſuſpecting their intention, had endeavoured to prevent ſuch application by confining ſome to the houſe, threatening to ſhoot others if they attempted to eſcape, or to puniſh their wives and children in their abſence. And, in proof of what he advanced, he called out a young Hottentot, whoſe thigh had been pierced through with a large muſquet ball but two days before, fired at him by his maſter for having attempted to leave his ſervice. "This act," continued he, "among many "others equally cruel, reſolved us at once to collect a ſufficient "force to deprive the boors of their arms, in which we have "ſucceeded at every houſe which has fallen in our way. We "have taken their ſuperfluous clothing in lieu of the wages "due for our ſervices, but we have ſtripped none, nor injured "the perſons of any, though," added he, ſhaking his head, "we have yet a great deal of our blood to avenge."

Such a rencontre at this time was extremely embarraſſing, and the more ſo as it appeared theſe were a very ſmall part of their countrymen that were then actually arming themſelves againſt the boors, and plundering their houſes. They informed us, moreover, that ſome of their countrymen, not willing to throw themſelves on the protection of ſtrangers, had fled among the Kaffers; but that the greateſt part were on the road to Algoa Bay, to lay their unhappy ſituation before the Engliſh general.

The connection that had long ſubſiſted between the boors and the Hottentots, a connection that was kept up by violence and oppreſſion

oppreſſion on one ſide, and by want of energy and patient ſuffering on the other, ſeemed now to be completely diſſolved. The farther we advanced, the more ſeriouſly alarming was the ſtate of the country. The boors, it ſeems, unable to reſtrain their ſavage temper, which the penalty levied upon them by the General had wrought up into a rage, with the aſſiſtance of a *ſopie*, determined to wreak their vengeance on the poor Hottentots, according to their common practice, whenever infuriate paſſion ſeizes them. The repreſentations made to us by this party were more than confirmed by our own obſervations in our progreſs through the country. Among the numerous inſtances of cruelty to which we bore witneſs, the following were particularly ſtriking.

We had ſcarcely parted from theſe people when, ſtopping at a houſe to feed our horſes, we by accident obſerved a young Hottentot woman with a child in her arms lying ſtretched on the ground in a moſt deplorable condition. She had been cut from head to foot with one of thoſe infernal whips, made from the hide of a rhinoceros or ſea-cow, known by the name of *ſambocs*, in ſuch a barbarous and unmerciful manner, that there was ſcarcely a ſpot on her whole body free from ſtripes; nor had the ſides of the little infant, in clinging to its mother, eſcaped the ſtrokes of the brutal monſter. With difficulty we had her removed to a ſituation where medical aſſiſtance could be given; but the fever ran ſo high, and the body was bruiſed to ſuch a degree, that for ſeveral days there were little hopes of her recovery. It was a puniſhment, far inadequate to the crime, to keep the inhuman wretch on bread and water who had

had been guilty of ſuch unmanly cruelty, until the fate of the ſufferer was decided. Owing to a good conſtitution ſhe gradually recovered; and the fellow was ſuffered to depart, after making her a pecuniary compenſation; had the wounds proved mortal, the perpetrator would, no doubt, have afforded the firſt inſtance of retributive juſtice for the numberleſs inſtances of murder that have been committed with impunity on this unfortunate race of men. The only crime alleged againſt her was the attempt to follow her huſband, who was among the number of thoſe of his countrymen that had determined to throw themſelves upon the protection of the Engliſh.

The next houſe we halted at upon the road preſented us with a ſtill more horrid inſtance of brutality. We obſerved a fine Hottentot boy, about eight years of age, ſitting at the corner of the houſe, with a pair of iron rings clenched upon his legs, of the weight of ten or twelve pounds; and they had remained in one ſituation for ſuch a length of time, that they appeared to be ſunk into the leg, the muſcle being tumefied both above and below the rings. The poor creature was ſo benumbed and oppreſſed with the weight, that, being unable to walk with eaſe, he crawled on the ground. It appeared, on inquiry, that they had been rivetted to his legs more than ten months ago. What was to be done in a caſe of ſuch wanton and deliberate cruelty? It was ſcarcely in human nature to behold an innocent boy for ever maimed in ſo barbarous a manner; and at the ſame time to look upon the cold blooded perpetrator without feeling a ſentiment of horror mingled with exaſperation,—a ſentiment that ſeemed to ſay it would ſerve the cauſe of humanity to rid

the world of ſuch a monſter. The fellow ſhrunk from the enquiries of the indignant general; he had nothing to allege againſt him but that he had always been a worthleſs boy; he had loſt him ſo many ſheep; he had ſlept when he ought to watch the cattle, and ſuch like frivolous charges of a negative kind, the amount of which, if true, only proved that his own intereſt had ſometimes been neglected by this child.

Determined to make an example of the author of ſuch unparalleled brutality, the General ordered him inſtantly to yoke his oxen to his waggon, and, placing the boy by his ſide, to drive directly to head-quarters. Here he gave orders to the farrier of the 8th regiment of Light Dragoons to ſtrike off the irons from the boy, an operation that required great nicety and attention, and to clench them as tight as he could on the legs of his maſter, who roared and bellowed in a moſt violent manner, to the inexpreſſible ſatisfaction of the by-ſtanders, and, above all, to that of the little ſufferer juſt relieved from torment. For the whole of the firſt night his lamentations were inceſſant; with a Stentorian voice a thouſand times he vociferated, "*Myn* "*God! is dat een maniere om Chriſtian menſch te handelen!*" "My God! is this a way to treat Chriſtians!" His, however, were not the agonies of bodily pain, but the burſts of rage and reſentment on being put on a level with one, as they call them, of the *Zwarte Natie*, between whom and the *Chriſtian Menſch* they conceive the difference to be fully as great as between themſelves and their cattle, and whom, indeed, they moſt commonly honour with the appellation of *Zwarte Vee*, black cattle. Having roared for three days and as many nights, at firſt

firſt to the great amuſement, but afterwards, to the no leſs annoyance, of the whole camp, he was ſuffered to go about his buſineſs on paying a heavy penalty in money for the uſe of the boy, whom he had abuſed in ſo ſhameful a manner.

Another inſtance occurred, ſince our departure from Algoa Bay, which ſtrongly marked the little reluctance that is felt by the African boors in the ſhedding of human blood, even of *Chriſtian Menſch*, for whom they affect ſo great a veneration. On leaving the bay it was diſcovered that three fine young lads of the 81ſt regiment had deſerted with their arms; and as theſe deſerters knew that the reſt of the people were to march that morning towards the upper part of the country, *Van Roy*, from whoſe houſe we departed, concluding they might return, enquired of the General what he ſhould do in caſe of ſuch an event? The anſwer was, "Secure them, to be ſure."—"But if "they ſhould reſiſt?"—"You muſt take them at any rate; you "and your ſons and people about the houſe are more than ſuf- "ficient to do that." The following day the man came galloping after us, pale and frightened, and ready to ſink into the ground. He had ſhot the three deſerters; he had been obliged to do it, as he ſaid, in his own defence, and for the protection of his family, whom they intended to murder. "If "you can make that appear to have been the caſe," the General told him, "you are juſtified in what you have done; but the "fact is ſo extraordinary, that a very rigid inquiry will be "made into it." It is wonderful how rapidly the fellow's countenance brightened up, on hearing there was ſome palliation in favour of what he had done. It was evident he felt

neither remorſe nor compunction in having deſtroyed three of his fellow-creatures, but was apprehenſive only of what might have been the conſequences to himſelf.

The General immediately rode back to his houſe. He found the dead bodies lying on the ground, juſt where they had fallen, one at the diſtance of ten or twelve yards from the door, the other two at forty or fifty. The firſt had evidently been ſhot through the breaſt, but both the others *through the back*. From theſe circumſtances it was ſtrongly conjectured that Van Roy and his ſons had waited at the door, with their loaded muſquets, the approach of theſe unfortunate men; that, on the firſt being ſhot, the other two had attempted to make their eſcape; in doing which they afforded the Dutchmen an opportunity of taking a cool and ſure aim. The family, of courſe, told the ſame ſtory as the maſter: What then remained to be done? Deſertion had already begun, and threatened to become very general. It was, therefore, deemed adviſeable to let the matter reſt; and to ſummon the troops in the neighbourhood to attend the funeral of the unfortunate men, whoſe fate might operate as a check to its further progreſs.

It would ſeem, by the end which this ſame Van Roy was doomed to make, that, as our immortal poet has finely expreſſed it,

" ——— Even-handed juſtice
" Returns th' ingredients of our poiſon'd chalice
" To our own lips."

He,

He, in the ſubſequent wars between the boors and Hottentots, was ſhot through the head in his own houſe; which was afterwards burnt to the ground; his property plundered and deſtroyed, and his family reduced to extreme poverty.

The ſanguinary character of many of the African coloniſts may be owing, perhaps, in a certain degree, to the circumſtance of their having been ſoldiers in German regiments ſerving abroad; where the leaſt relaxation from a rigid ſyſtem of diſcipline is followed up by the greateſt ſeverity of puniſhment. The ſoldier, having ſerved out the time of his engagement, which at moſt is five years, is at liberty to demand his diſcharge. If he is able to read and write, however indifferently, he uſually finds employment, as ſchoolmaſter, in a boor's family; if not qualified for ſuch a ſituation, he either engages as a ſort of ſervant, or hires himſelf to ſome butcher of the town, who ſends him to the extremities of the colony to collect ſheep and cattle. In all theſe ſituations he has the opportunity of making an intimate acquaintance with the boors, which generally leads to his marriage with one of their daughters. The parents of the girl ſpare him a few ſheep and cattle to commence with, on condition of their receiving half the produce as intereſt, until he can repay the capital; he looks out for a *place*, as it is called, no matter where, whether within or without the limits of the colony, and builds for himſelf a hut; with his cattle are conſigned to him, at the ſame time, and on the ſame terms, as he ſuppoſes, a few little Hottentot children to look after them; and on theſe little creatures, in the plenitude of his power, ſubject to no

controul, he exerciſes the ſame ſeverity of puniſhment that his own irregularities had incurred when he was in the ranks.

A very conſiderable portion of the inhabitants of the town is compoſed of people of this deſcription. Grown into affluence by the general proſperity that followed the conqueſt of the ſettlement, ſerjeants, and corporals, and trumpeters, are now men of the firſt conſequence, keep their ſlaves, and horſes, and carriages, and wallow in all the luxuries that the colony affords. But though they aſpire to the rank of gentlemen, they cannot diſguiſe the cloven foot. They are groſs in their manners, and vulgar in their converſation. Their language, in the preſence of women, is ſo coarſe and indecent, as would not be tolerated among civilized ſociety. A ſingle inſtance of this will be ſufficient to ſhew to what a low degree of delicacy and refinement they are yet advanced. One of this vulgar herd, who is conſidered as a great man in the Cape, took his wife and daughters to ſee a whale, that had been thrown aſhore near Green Point. It happened to be a female and was lying on its back. The burgher being ſtruck with the near reſemblace of certain parts to thoſe of the human ſpecies, with great exultation, and in the moſt vulgar and indelicate terms, pointed out his diſcovery to the ladies, who ſeemed to reliſh all the good jokes the burgher ſaid on this occaſion; and, in preſence of a number of ſpectators, the old dame actually aſſiſted him in a very cloſe, and by no means *ſuperficial*, examination into this ſingular phenomenon in natural hiſtory, which, among other properties, analogous to animals that ſuckle their young, determined the great Linnæus

to

to aſſign a place to the whale in the ſame claſs with human beings.

By indolent habits, exceſs of food, and fondneſs for indulging in ſleep, they become no leſs groſs in their perſons, than vulgar in their manners. A young lady deſcribed the Cape and its inhabitants in very few words. *De menſchen zyn moie dik en vet de huizen moei wit en groen.* "*The people are all nice and plump;* "*the houſes are prettily whitewaſhed and painted green.*" I believe there is no country in the world that affords ſo large a proportion of unwieldy and bulky people; and I am certain there is none where the animal appetites are indulged with leſs reſtraint, the moſt predominant of which are eating and drinking, or where the powers of body or mind are capable of leſs exertion. "When the Devil catches a man idle he generally "ſets him to work," is a proverb which is every day exemplified at the Cape of Good Hope. They are active only in miſchief; and crimes againſt morality meet with applauſe if the end be ſucceſsful. A man, who in his dealings can cheat his neighbour, is conſidered as a *ſlim menſch*, a clever fellow; even ſtealing is not regarded as criminal, nor does it materially affect the character of the thief. Truth is not held as a moral virtue, and lying paſſes for ingenuity.

There is a great want of affection among near relations; it has been obſerved, indeed, that there are ſcarcely two brothers in the Cape who will ſpeak to each other. The manner in which children are brought up, and in which the economy of a family is managed, is little favourable to ſocial intercourſe, or likely

likely to excite that harmony of ſentiment and union of intereſts which, in more civilized countries, are cheriſhed and grow to maturity by the genial warmth and cheerfulneſs and comfort of a family fire-ſide. Here the members of the ſame family ſeldom meet together. The huſband, having ſlept the greateſt part of the day, finds his bed irkſome in the morning and riſes with the dawn. He takes his ſolitary cup of coffee, or *ſopie*, or both, and ſmokes his pipe; then lounges about the houſe in his *ſlaap mutz* and *nagt cabaay*, his night cap and gown, or parades the *ſtoop*, or raiſed platform before the door, in the ſame dreſs, with a long pipe ſtuck in his mouth. About nine o'clock he takes a ſolid breakfaſt, and a few glaſſes of wine, continues to lounge about the houſe till dinner-hour, which is punctually at twelve, or, if the weather be tempting, or any news ſtirring, he walks out to meet his comrades. Immediately after dinner he goes to bed, riſes again at five or ſix, makes or receives viſits, when he ſmokes tobacco and drinks wine till nine o'clock, which is the ſignal for every one to repair to his own houſe. Here a hot ſupper, conſiſting of eight, ten, or even twenty ſolid diſhes of fiſh and butcher's meat, dreſſed in a variety of ſhapes, is ready to receive him, ſmoking on the table. This is the favourite meal, to which he conſiders all that he has eaten and drunken and ſmoked in the courſe of the day, as whets only to the appetite, and preparatives to the grand feaſt. Thus day after day,

> " The lazy glutton ſafe at home will keep,
> " Indulge his ſloth, and fatten with his ſleep."

The

The good woman of the houſe riſes about the ſame early hour with her huſband; takes her coffee alone; ſcolds the ſlaves; ſets them their daily taſk; dreſſes for a *vendutie* or public ſale, of which there are never fewer than three or four in the town, or its vicinity, every day of the week; comes home to dinner at twelve, and then goes to bed; riſes again with her huſband, receives or pays viſits with him; but here they ſeparate; the men drink and ſmoke in one room; the women are left to themſelves in another. The poor children ſcramble as well as they can among the ſlaves, to whom they are conſigned, one in one room, and another in another; each, in the better ſort of families, having its proper ſlave, called its *aya*, a Malay term, borrowed, perhaps, from the Portugueſe or Italian, ſignifying nurſe or protectreſs; and, by an inevitable conſequence, the *aya* is looked up to through life with more affection than the natural parents.

Little as character is regarded, they are extremely tenacious of their rank. More quarrels have ariſen about ladies taking precedency in the church, or placing their chairs neareſt the pulpit, than on any other occaſion. In the government of Lord Macartney a ſerious diſpute aroſe on this ſubject, between the ladies of the Landroſt or Chief Magiſtrate of the diſtrict, and of the Miniſter of the pariſh; and memorial was preſented after memorial on both ſides, ſtating their mutual claims and mutual grievances. His Lordſhip, feeling the delicacy of interpoſing his authority between two ladies of ſuch high rank, recommended a compromiſe, ſuggeſting, in caſe that ſhould not go down, that he would be under the neceſſity of adopting the

deciſion of the Emperor Charles the Fifth, when on a ſomewhat ſimilar occaſion he ſettled a diſpute of precedency between two women of faſhion at Bruſſels; "Let the greateſt ſim-" pleton of the two have the *pas*;" which made the two ladies prodigiouſly civil to each other ever afterwards, both ſtriving which ſhould give, inſtead of take, the precedency. A Dutch nobleman, who is the only titled man in the colony, and who held in the old government one of the higheſt employments, felt no degradation in aſſociating with butchers, nor in beſtowing the hand of his daughter on an attorney who, for his mal-practices, had been publicly declared *infamous* by the Court of Juſtice; but he would have thought himſelf diſgraced if his wife and daughter were deprived of their rank in the church.

There are, however, as muſt be the caſe in every ſociety, a number of worthy people in the colony, to whom the above obſervations do not apply: men, whoſe talents and information, propriety of conduct, and ſtrict integrity, would command reſpect in any part of the world; but the number of theſe is comparatively ſo ſmall, as to make only an exception to the general character. I need ſcarcely obſerve, that theſe people met with that conſideration and attention from the Britiſh government to which they were entitled; whilſt thoſe of the other claſs experienced the neglect and contempt they ſo juſtly deſerved.—But to return to *Klaas Stuurman* and his party.

From the barbarous treatment of the boors towards the Hottentots in their ſervice, of which we had ourſelves been witneſſes

neſſes in many inſtances, it would have been an act of the greateſt inhumanity to attempt to force theſe poor creatures back again upon their old maſters; yet a very ſerious difficulty aroſe, how to diſpoſe of them. Part of the troops, that compoſed the detachment under General Vandeleur, conſiſted of the ſtrength of the Hottentot corps, otherwiſe called the Cape regiment. This body of men had been partly formed under the Dutch government, and, in fact, were the only ſerviceable troops that oppoſed the Britiſh forces in the paſs of Muyſenberg, where they acted with ſpirit, though unſupported. After the capitulation, General Sir James Craig found it expedient, for many reaſons, to take them into the Britiſh ſervice, and to increaſe their numbers. He conſidered in the firſt place, that, from their rooted antipathy to the boors, they could always be employed as uſeful agents to quell any diſturbances that might ariſe in the diſtant diſtricts. He ſaw, alſo, that they were capable of being formed into excellent ſoldiers. In ſhort, after an experience of near two years, the character he gave them was that of an orderly, tractable, and faithful body of men; ready on all occaſions to obey the orders of their officers with cheerfulneſs and alacrity. And they have ſince ſhewn themſelves highly deſerving of the favourable teſtimony of Sir James Craig. During three years' ſervice in the diſtant diſtrict of Graaf Reynet, in the courſe of which time they were required, by an unfortunate and unavoidable train of events, to act againſt their own countrymen and comrades, they never ſhrunk from their duty, and, if I recollect right, one ſingle man only deſerted in the whole corps.

A Hottentot is capable of ſtrong attachments; with a readineſs to acknowledge, he poſſeſſes the mind to feel, the force of a benevolent action. I never found that any little act of kindneſs or attention was thrown away upon a Hottentot; but, on the contrary, I have frequently had occaſion to remark the joy that ſparkled on his countenance, whenever an opportunity occurred to enable him to diſcharge his debt of gratitude. I give full credit to all that Monſieur Le Vaillant has ſaid with regard to the fidelity and attachment he experienced from this race of men; of whom the natural character and diſpoſition ſeem to approach nearer to thoſe of the Hindûs than of any other nation.

Is it not then a moſt unaccountable circumſtance, that the Dutch ſhould have given the preference to a race of men, of talents much inferior, and whoſe temper, always capricious, becomes on ſlight provocations cruel and revengeful?—I mean the Malay ſlaves. The negroes of Moſambique and of Madagaſcar are harmleſs and ſtupid on their firſt arrival, but ſoon become cunning and diſhoneſt by intercourſe with their elder brethren. In full poſſeſſion of all the vices that muſt infallibly reſult from the condition of ſlavery, there is yet no part of the world where the domeſtic ſlaves of every deſcription are ſo well treated, and ſo much truſted, as at the Cape of Good Hope. They are better clothed, better fed, and infinitely more comfortable than any of the peaſantry of Europe. Yet ſuch are the bad effects, which the condition of ſlavery produces on the mind, that they are incapable of feeling the leaſt ſpark of gratitude for good and gentle uſage, whilſt, under the ſevere hand of a rigid and cruel maſter, they become the beſt of ſlaves. It

is an axiom or ſelf-evident truth, that ſuch are and always will be the conſequences of degrading man to the loweſt of all conditions, that of being made the property of man.

The Dutch uſe little prudence or precaution with regard to their domeſtic ſlaves: in the ſame room where theſe are aſſembled to wait behind their maſter's chairs, they diſcuſs their crude opinions of liberty and equality without any reſerve; yet they pretend to ſay that, juſt before the Engliſh got poſſeſſion of the Cape, and when it was generally thought the French would be before-hand with us, the ſlaves who carried the ſedan chairs, of which no lady is without one, uſed very familiarly to tell their miſtreſſes, "We carry you now, but by-and-by it will "be your turn to carry us." The proportion of ſlaves to whites, of both ſexes and all ages, in the town, is not more than two to one; but that of ſlave men to white men is near five to one.

The field ſlaves belonging to the farmers are not, however, nearly ſo well treated as thoſe of the town; yet infinitely better than the Hottentots who are in their employ. The farmer, indeed, having a life-intereſt in the one, and only five-and-twenty years in the other, is a circumſtance that may explain the difference of treatment. The one, alſo, is convertible property, an advantage to which they have not yet ſucceeded in their attempts to turn the other. The country ſlaves, notwithſtanding, are ill fed, ill clothed, work extremely hard, and are frequently puniſhed with the greateſt ſeverity; ſometimes with death, when rage gets the better of prudence and compaſſion.

In

In a country where *Chriſtians* only are conſidered as human beings, and where ſtrong prejudices prevail, the negro has little chance of obtaining juſtice. It has been obſerved, with too much truth, that if a black ſhould only ſtrike a white, he runs the chance of being tortured and torn in pieces, on preſumptive proof that his intention was to murder; but if a white man murders a black belonging to himſelf, he puts him into the ground, and nothing more is ſaid about it;—if he murders that of another, he has only to pay the owner his full value; unleſs, indeed, the owner ſhould be inexorable and bring the criminal before the Court of Juſtice, a caſe which I believe has not yet happened. Such is the diſtribution of juſtice between a man compelled to be a ſlave, and one born to be free!

We had little doubt that the greateſt number of the Hottentot men, who were aſſembled at the bay, after receiving favourable accounts from their comrades of the treatment they experienced in the Britiſh ſervice, would enter as volunteers into this corps; but what was to be done with the old people, the women, and the children? Klaas Stuurman found no difficulty in making a proviſion for them. "Reſtore," ſays he, "the coun-"try of which our fathers have been deſpoiled by the Dutch, "and we have nothing more to aſk." I endeavoured to convince him how little advantage they were likely to derive from the poſſeſſion of a country, without any other property, or the means of deriving a ſubſiſtence from it: but he had the better of the argument. "We lived very contentedly," ſaid he, "before theſe Dutch plunderers moleſted us; and why ſhould "we not do ſo again, if left to ourſelves? Has not the *Groot*

"*Baas*

" *Baas* (the Great Maſter) given plenty of graſs-roots, and ber-
" ries, and graſhoppers for our uſe; and, till the Dutch de-
" ſtroyed them, abundance of wild animals to hunt? And will
" they not return and multiply when theſe deſtroyers are
" gone?" We prevailed, however, upon Klaas to deliver up their arms, and, in the mean time, to follow the troops until ſome arrangement could be made for their future welfare.

Proceeding on our march, along the banks of the Sunday River, and among the vaſt thickets that almoſt entirely covered this part of the country, we fell in with a prodigious number of Kaffers with their cattle, belonging, as they told us, to a powerful chief named *Congo*. This man was at the head of all the other emigrant chiefs who had fled from the Kaffer country, eaſtward of the Great Fiſh River, on account of ſome enmity ſubſiſting between them and their King *Gaika*, with whom I had, in vain, attempted, in company of the Landroſt, to bring about a reconciliation two years before. As the poſition he now occupied not only encroached very much upon the territorial rights of the colony, but was alſo far within the line actually inhabited by the Dutch boors, we deemed it expedient to endeavour to prevail upon him to move towards the eaſtward; and for this purpoſe, we ſent a meſſenger to requeſt that he would give us the meeting. The anſwer brought back ſignified, that he did not care to come alone, and that he deſired to know, if we had any objections to receive him at the head of a certain number of his people. The meſſenger being told he might bring with him any number of his attendants not exceeding thirty, he ſhortly made

made his appearance at the head of a party to that amount, each armed with a haſſagay or ſpear.

On being told how neceſſary it was, for the ſake of preſerving tranquillity, that he ſhould quit his preſent ſtation among the boors, he replied, with great firmneſs, that the ground he then ſtood upon was his own by inheritance, for that his father had been cheated out of it by a Dutch Landroſt of Graaf Reynet; that, however, being deſirous of remaining in friendſhip with the Engliſh, he would remove eaſtward in the courſe of three days; but that it was impoſſible for him to croſs the Great Fiſh River, as there was a deadly hatred, or, as he expreſſed it, *there was blood between Gaika and himſelf;* and that Gaika was then much too powerful for him.

The decided tone in which he ſpoke, at the head of his ſmall party, when ſurrounded by Britiſh troops; his prepoſſeſſing countenance, and tall muſcular figure, could not fail to excite a ſtrong intereſt in his favour. An open and manly deportment, free from ſuſpicion, fear, or embarraſſment, ſeems to characterize the Kaffer chiefs. Though extremely good-humoured, benevolent, and hoſpitable, they are neither ſo pliant nor ſo paſſive as the Hottentot. The poorer ſort are ſometimes led to ſeek for ſervice among the boors, and engage themſelves for ſo many moons in conſideration of ſo many head of cattle; and they never ſuffer themſelves to be duped out of their hire like the eaſy Hottentots. The converſation with Congo ended by recommending him to withdraw his people and their cattle from the

the banks of the Sunday River, to which he gave a kind of reluctant aſſent.

The whole of the party that accompanied this chief were tall, upright, and well made men; affording a clear proof that animal food is by no means neceſſary to promote the growth of the human ſpecies; or to add ſtrength of fibre to the muſcular parts of the body; on the contrary, reaſoning from the general make and ſtature of the Dutch boors, who gorge themſelves with animal food floating in fat, from morning till night, one would be apt to conclude, that ſo far from being neceſſary, it is not even conducive to ſtrength of muſcle; but that its only tendency was to produce a laxity of the fibres, a ſluggiſh habit of body, and extreme corpulency; for the Dutch boors, though of a monſtrous ſize, poſſeſs neither ſtrength nor activity. Perhaps, indeed, theſe two qualities may be conſidered as correlatives, and that the defect of the former may be more owing to a want of the latter than to the nature of their food. Thoſe, perhaps, who have been accuſtomed to obſerve the peaſantry on the north-weſt coaſt of Ireland, a tall, ſtrong, and brawny race of men, ſubſiſting on butter-milk and potatoes, will think it unneceſſary to produce the Kaffers as inſtances of the above remark; it may ſerve, however, to ſhew that difference of climate has no power to alter the general principle, and that the ſame cauſe produces the ſame effect in the northern parts of Europe and in the ſouthern corner of Africa.

Milk in a curdled ſtate is the principal food of the Kaffers. To this they ſometimes add a few gramineous roots, berries of

various kinds, the ſeeds of the *Strelitzia Reginæ*, and the pith of a large palm to which botaniſts have given the name of Zamia. I obſerved alſo large tuberous roots, each the ſize of a man's head, of a ſpongy ſubſtance and an auſtere pungent taſte, but I was not able to trace the plant of which they were the roots. They rarely kill any of their cattle unleſs on particular occaſions. They poſſeſs no other domeſtic animals to yield them food. In the whole Kaffer country there is neither ſheep nor goats, pigs nor poultry. They cultivate no kind of grain nor vegetables on this ſide of the Great Fiſh River, and very little on the other ſide; but the Kaffer tribes, more to the weſtward, are very conſiderable horticulturiſts. The commiſſioners, ſent out by the Britiſh government in the year 1801, to endeavour to procure a ſupply of draught oxen, found extenſive fields of a ſpecies of Holcus near the city *Leetakoo*, the capital of a tribe of Kaffers called *Booſhooanas*, ſituate at the diſtance of ſixteen days' journey beyond the Orange River, in the direction of north-eaſt from the Cape.

In the official report of the commiſſioners, delivered to General Dundas, their entrance into this city is thus deſcribed:—
" Paſſing through ſeveral large tracts of ground, that were laid
" out and cultivated like ſo many gardens, we arrived about
" noon at the city of *Leetakoo*, not a little aſtoniſhed to find, in
" this part of the world, a large and populous city. We pro-
" ceeded to the reſidence of the chief, whoſe name was *Moo-*
" *liaban*, where we found him, with the elders of the place,
" ſeated on a plain that was encloſed with wood.... he offered
" us ſome curdled milk. After the reception he conducted us

" to

" to his habitation, and introduced us to his wives and chil-
" dren ; here alſo we ſaw numbers of women, who gazed at
" us with aſtoniſhment. His houſe, like all the reſt in the
" town, was built in a circular form, being about ſixteen feet
" in diameter. The bottom part, to the height of four feet
" from the ground, was ſtone laid in clay, and wooden ſpars
" erected at certain diſtances. On the eaſt ſide of the circle,
" about the fourth part of the houſe was open, the other three-
" fourths entirely cloſed. A round pointed roof covered the
" whole in the form of a tent, well thatched with long reeds,
" or with the ſtraws of the holcus. From the centre to the
" back part of the houſe, a circular apartment is made off,
" with a narrow entrance into it, where the head of the fa-
" mily takes his nightly reſt ; the other members of the family
" ſleep in the fore part, or between the large and ſmall circles
" of the houſe. All the houſes were encloſed by palliſades ;
" and the ſpace between theſe and the dwelling ſerves for a
" granary and ſtore for their grain and pulſe. Theſe granaries
" were conſtructed in the form of oil jars, of baked clay, the
" capacity of each being at the leaſt two hundred gallons ; and
" they were ſupported on tripods, compoſed of the ſame ma-
" terial, which raiſed them about nine inches above the ground.
" They were covered with a round ſtraw roof erected on poles,
" and ſufficiently high to admit an opening into the jars, the
" upper edges of which were from five to ſix feet from the
" ground.

" We walked through the town and obſerved that both
" within it, and on every ſide, were plantations of that ſpecies

" of Mimoſa which conſtitutes the principal food of the Ca-
" melopardalis. We eſtimated the city to be, in its circum-
" ference, as large as Cape Town, with all the gardens of Table
" Valley; but it was impoſſible to aſcertain the number of
" houſes, on account of the irregularity of the ſtreets, and low-
" neſs of the buildings, but concluded they muſt amount ſome-
" where between two and three thouſand, of the ſame kind,
" but not ſo large, as that of the chief. The whole population,
" including men, women, and children, we conſidered to be
" from ten to fifteen thouſand ſouls. Tracing our route from
" the laſt place in the Roggeveld, upon Mr. Barrow's map, and
" continuing the ſame ſcale, we calculated the ſituation of
" *Leetakoo* to be in latitude 26° 30′ ſouth, and longitude 27° 00′
" eaſt from Greenwich."

The women here, as well as among the eaſtern Kaffers, and indeed in all nations juſt emerged from a ſavage ſtate, went through all the hard labour and drudgery that was required for the ſupport of the family. They not only performed the taſk of breaking up the ground with a kind of hoe made of iron, and afterwards planted it, but they conſtructed their habitations, and collected the materials that were neceſſary for the ſame. They reaped the grain, cleared it from the huſk, and laid it up in the granaries, which, with other earthen pots and wooden veſſels, were the work of their hands. The men prepare the ſkins and hides which ſerve for ſhoes, and make them up into cloaks for themſelves, their wives, and children; they attend alſo the cattle, milk the cows, and hunt the ante-

lopes

lopes and other game, with a weapon called the Haſſagai, which is uſed alſo in battle.

I obſerved, in the former volume, that the Kaffers were not the aborigines of the ſouthern angle of Africa; that they might, perhaps, derive their origin from ſome of thoſe wandering tribes of Arabs known by the name of *Beduins*. I am more than ever convinced they are of Arabic origin. Their paſtoral habits and manners, their kind and friendly reception to ſtrangers, their tent-ſhaped houſes, the remains of Iſlamiſm diſcoverable in one of its ſtrongeſt features, the circumciſion of male children, univerſally practiſed among the Kaffer hordes, all denote their affinity to the Beduin tribes. Their countenance alſo is Arabic; the colour only differs, which in ſome tribes varies from deep bronze to jet black, but moſt generally the latter is the prevailing colour. Nor can I ſuppoſe they owe this colour to their connection with thoſe blacks which are uſually called Negroes, as they have no reſemblance, in any part of the body, to the peculiar conformation of this race of human beings. To the Ethiopeans or Abyſſinians they have a much cloſer reſemblance.

The public will ſhortly have an opportunity of forming a better judgment, than by any deſcription I can convey, of the Kaffer countenance and figure, from the accurate pencil of Mr. S. Daniell, who accompanied the above-mentioned commiſſioners, and who is preparing for publication a ſet of valuable prints, which are meant to deſcribe the character and coſtume of the various tribes of natives that environ the Cape ſettlement, toge-

ther

ther with accurate and ſpirited figures of the quadrupeds mentioned in my former volume, with others hitherto undeſcribed.

How far the belt of country extends in width acroſs the ſouthern part of Africa, inhabited by the Kaffers, is not exactly known, but the points on each coaſt are ſufficiently aſcertained to which they do not extend. To the ſouthward of the Portugueze ſettlement of Rio de la Goa, the natives are Kaffers; but from the deſcription given of them they appear to be a degenerated race. They are however *free;* nor has Portugueze avarice yet dared to attempt to make them ſlaves. This is not the caſe to the northward. At Mozambique and Soffala the black people are all negroes, not, however, at the preſent day, natives of the ſea-coaſt, but ſuch as are brought down from the interior as articles of trade. From Mozambique they have now, as appears from the information of a Portugueze ſlave merchant, a direct communication acroſs the continent with their ſettlements of Congo, Loango, and Benguela, on the weſt coaſt, between which negro merchants are eſtabliſhed in different parts of the country. So that there are no Kaffers in the line of this route.

The commiſſioners, from whoſe report I have above quoted, were informed at *Leetakoo* that another powerful tribe of the ſame nation, called the *Baroloos* dwelt at the diſtance of eight or ten days' journey farther to the northward. Reckoning the average of a day's journey to be twenty miles, we ſhall find the *Baroloos* inhabiting the country under the ſouthern tropic; and we may conclude, from the following information which Mr. Trüter

received

received of this people, that they are not the laſt to the northward. He was told, " That they were of a kind and friendly " diſpoſition; that their town was ſo extenſive, that if a perſon " ſet out in the morning from one extremity, and travelled " to the other, he would not be able to return before the fol- " lowing day; that this town contained many thouſand inha- " bitants; that the people were very ingenious in carving of " wood, and that they had furnaces for ſmelting both copper " and iron; that they were exceedingly rich in cattle; their " gardens and lands were better cultivated, and their dwellings " much ſuperior to thoſe of *Leetakoo*." The *Damaras* alſo, whom I mentioned in my former travels to be in poſſeſſion of the art of ſmelting copper from the ore, as well as I could collect from report, are inhabitants of the Tropic; and they are complete Kaffers, differing in nothing from thoſe on the eaſtern coaſt. I ſhould ſuppoſe, therefore, that a line drawn from the 24th parallel of latitude on the eaſt coaſt, to the 20th on the weſt, may mark the boundary, or nearly ſo, between the Kaffers and the negroes.

The late Colonel Gordon was of opinion, that a line from Cape Negro, on the weſt coaſt, to Cape Corientes on the eaſt, marked the boundaries between the Kaffers and the negroes; but in this he was obviouſly miſtaken; a line from theſe two points including Portugueze ſettlements on both ſides, that on the eaſt coaſt being known to be inhabited by the ſame kind of ſtupid negroes that are natives of Moſambique. Nor have we any reaſon for ſuppoſing that, by the Portugueze taking poſſeſſion of Rio de la Goa, the Kaffers have been driven in to-

wards

wards the Cape of Good Hope; for Vaſco de Gama found the inhabitants of this part of the coaſt of a copper or brown colour, clothed in cotton, in ſilk, and ſatin bonnets; and a little further to the northward he met with Indian ſhips having on board both compaſſes and charts. The Arabs, in fact, at that time, had poſſeſſion of all the coaſt from Cape Corientes to the Red Sea.

The tribe of Congo appeared to be very prolific; children, in ſwarms, iſſued from the thickets; and ſuch as were under the age of eight or nine years were perfectly naked; they exhibited no appearances of being ſcantily fed, but, on the contrary, were plump and healthful.

Juſt the reverſe was the condition of their dogs. Theſe animals were the moſt lean and miſerable looking creatures I ever beheld, and their numbers ſeemed little inferior to thoſe of the children. It is a fortunate circumſtance for the Kaffers, and equally ſo for the coloniſts, who are no leſs fond of dogs than the former, that, notwithſtanding the heat of the climate, the canine madneſs, with its concomitant and remarkable ſymptom the hydrophobia or dread of water, is totally unknown. One of the greateſt nuiſances in Cape Town is the number of dogs that prowl about the ſtreets (acknowledging no maſter) particularly by night, when they quit their dens and lurking places, in queſt of the offals of butchers' ſhops. In this reſpect, however, they are of uſe, for the lazy Dutchman conceives he has done his part by caſting them out of the ſlaughter-houſe into the ſtreet. Before the Engliſh brought in a garriſon of five thouſand men,

the head, the heart, the liver, &c. were all included among the offals; but an increaſe in the conſumption having cauſed an increaſe in the price of butchers' meat, theſe parts of the animal have, of late, been ſold as well as the carcaſe; and the dogs have conſequently leſs to clear away. Sometimes the wolves and hyenas deſcend from their dens in the Table Mountain, and diſpute the ſpoil with the dogs: at ſuch times the town reſounds with their hideous howlings the whole night long.

The circumſtance of Southern Africa being free from the canine madneſs, and alſo from the ſmall pox, would lead one to conclude that neither the one nor the other of theſe diſeaſes were of ſpontaneous origin; but that actual biting in the one caſe, and actual contact in the other, were neceſſary for their production. Whatever may have been the cauſe that firſt created thoſe diſeaſes, it ſhould ſeem ſuch cauſe has not yet exiſted here, or that the climate is unfavourable for its operation. Twice ſince the foundation of the colony the ſmall pox have been brought into it, and both times have committed dreadful havock among the ſettlers. That ſuch will always be the fatal effects, may readily be imagined among ſo groſs a people, unprepared for the reception of the diſeaſe, and ignorant how to treat it; but it is not ſo eaſy to conceive in what manner they got rid of it. I believe it is now forty years ſince the laſt time it made its appearance. All the old Kaffers, I obſerved, were ſtrongly marked with it; the diſeaſe, they ſay, was brought among them by a ſhip that was ſtranded on their coaſt; and I ſhould conclude it has viſited them ſince the time it was laſt brought into Cape Town, as the chief Congo, who could not,

when we ſaw him, be above thirty years of age, was marked with the ſmall pox. It is rather ſingular that a diſeaſe, which is ſuppoſed to have originated in the northern parts of this continent, and from thence diſſeminated into every corner of the world, ſhould neither be endemic in the ſouthern extremity of the ſame continent, nor its contagious effects, when carried thither, of permanent duration.

I am aware that ſome modern authors have traced the origin of the ſmall pox to Arabia, where it was common at the time of the flight from Mecca; but I think Doctor Mead's opinion more probable, that, at a much earlier period it prevailed, along with the plague, in Ethiopia and other inland countries of Northern Africa. For had a diſeaſe of ſo contagious a nature been endemic in Arabia, in the beginning of the ſeventh century, when the inhabitants of this country were the carriers of the eaſtern, and the conquerors of the weſtern world, its baneful effects would ſooner have been experienced in foreign nations. That the Saracens and Arabians were the means of diſperſing it through the world, there can be little doubt. The Chineſe, according to their own annals, had it from the latter in the tenth century; and as Doctor Mead has obſerved, in the beginning of the twelfth century it gained vaſt ground by means of the wars waged by a confederacy of the Chriſtian powers againſt the Saracens for the recovery of the Holy Land; "This being," ſays the Doctor, "the only viſible recompence "of their religious expeditions, which they brought back to "their reſpective countries." The Ethiopians being a race of people almoſt unknown, and ſhut out from all commerce with

with the reſt of the world, will account for its long confinement to its native ſoil.

That canine madneſs is not owing to heat of climate, as we are apt to ſuppoſe in England, may be inferred from its non-exiſtence in Egypt, in the Weſt India iſlands, and other tropical ſituations, as well as at the Cape of Good Hope.

From the banks of the Sunday River to head-quarters in Bruyntjes Hoogté, little occurred that was worthy of notice. The obſervation I formerly made, that men and other animals in Southern Africa appear to increaſe in their bulk, in proportion to the elevation of the country of which they are inhabitants, was forcibly exemplified in our journey from the Zuure Veld to Bruyntjes Hoogté. On the plains of the former, ſtretching along the ſea-coaſt, ſeldom ſubject to long drought, and well covered with graſs, the cattle are generally lean and of a diminutive ſize, and ſheep will ſcarcely exiſt. On the heights of the latter, where half the ſurface of the ground is naked, and the graſs found only here and there in tufts, they have the fineſt oxen, without exception, in the whole colony, and ſheep equal to thoſe of the ſnowy mountains. Nor are theſe heights leſs favourable to the growth of the human ſpecies. There is ſcarcely a family in which ſome part of it has not arrived to a very unuſual ſize. But of all the monſtrous beings I ever beheld, in the ſhape of a human creature, was a woman of the name of *Van Vooren*. So vaſt was her bulk that, although in perfect health, free from rheumatic or other local complaints, and under forty years of age, ſhe had not been

able to walk for the laſt twelve years of her life; nor, what was ſtill more extraordinary, to raiſe herſelf to a ſitting poſture upon the bed without the help of a ſtick, tied by the middle with a ſtring, and ſuſpended from the roof. Her arm, above the elbow, meaſured 23 Dutch inches, or $23\frac{2}{3}$ Engliſh, in circumference. Yet, in this helpleſs and deplorable ſituation, Mademoiſelle, for ſhe was an unmarried lady, contrived to fulfil the end of her creation, by bringing into the world a fine healthy child. The fate, however, of this extraordinary perſon, as I have ſince been informed, was attended with very melancholy circumſtances. In the ſubſequent wars between the boors and the Hottentots, the houſe in which ſhe lived was attacked and ſet on fire. All the reſt of the family effected their eſcape, except this unfortunate creature, whom they found it impoſſible, on account of her ſize, to get through the door, and were therefore under the neceſſity of leaving to periſh in the flames.

From Bruyntjes Hoogté we proceeded to the Kaffer frontier. The Great Fiſh River was now ſo low, that except in thoſe places where it ſtood in deep holes, we could croſs it without wetting our feet. Not a ſingle hippopotamus was now to be ſeen in any of thoſe holes, where, on my former viſit, they were ſo abundant. I ſuſpect they occaſionally migrate to other rivers, and if ſo it muſt be over land, as the ſea affords no ſubſiſtence for them, nor does it appear that they can long remain in ſalt water near the mouths of rivers. It is certain, at leaſt, that they always quit ſuch ſituations at night, and travel over land, ſometimes many miles, in ſearch of freſh water. So that the

Dutch

Dutch name of *ſea-cow* is equally improper as their ancient appellation of hippopotamus or river-horſe. The river rhinoſceros would be a more appropriate name than any other, although it has no horns upon its noſe, which obtained for the land animal the appellation of the *noſe-horn*, ῥινοκερως. With the natural hiſtory and habits of this extraordinary amphibious animal (if I may be allowed to call it ſo), we are very imperfectly acquainted; nor have I ſeen any figure that conveys an accurate repreſentation of its character, ſhape, and magnitude, except in a drawing made from nature by Mr. Daniell, from which a print will appear in his intended publication. Nor do I know of any good figure of the African rhinoſceros, which is altogether different from that of India covered with its hide of mail. The ſkin of the two-horned rhinoſceros is comparatively ſmooth, and has none of the folds ſo remarkable in that of the one-horned ſpecies; but it is ſo thick that the Dutch boors cut out of it their largeſt *ſambocs* or horſe-rods, which, if well prepared, are better than thoſe of the hippopotamus, and tranſparent as amber. The head of this animal is very remarkable. Not only the horns ſit upon the noſe, but the eyes alſo are placed in it, being directly under the root of the larger horn; and they are ſo minute, that one would ſuppoſe them of little uſe to ſo huge a creature. But nature, always provident, has remedied this ſeeming inconvenience by placing them in projecting ſockets, in which they turn in all directions like thoſe of the little chameleon. Had the eye been placed in the uſual part of the face, juſt below the projecting forehead, which is very large, the viſual rays would have embraced only about 180 degrees, or half of the horizon; whereas, in their preſent poſition, they

have a much greater ſcope, being able, I ſhould ſuppoſe, without any motion of the head, to ſweep from 260 to 270 degrees. Of two varieties of this animal Mr. Daniell has made excellent drawings, in one of which the upper horn is almoſt as large as the lower, and is pointed towards it.

Having collected the forces that had been ſtationed along the banks of the Great Fiſh River, we ſet out upon our return to Algoa Bay. On approaching the Sunday River, and perceiving that the Kaffers had made no preparations for departing, it was thought adviſable to renew the meſſage to their chief Congo. In the mean time the troops and the waggons proceeded on their march. After waiting ſome time the meſſenger returned without being able to ſpeak to the chief. Whatever reluctance Congo had diſcovered to quit the ſtation he had taken up among the coloniſts, it never entered into our calculations that he would be raſh and imprudent enough to commence an attack againſt a large body of regular troops. Such, however, was the ſtep he choſe to take, at the inſtigation, as we afterwards found, of ſome of the rebel boors, who had fled amongſt his people, in preference of appearing before the General in Bruyntjes Hoogté. Juſt as we came up with the main body a ſudden alarm was raiſed in the rear. A Hottentot driver of one of the waggons was killed by a haſſagai that had been thrown at him by ſome perſon poſted in ambuſh. Kaffers began to appear in great numbers on all the heights, collecting, apparently, with a view to attack us; and ſeveral were obſerved cloſe upon us lurking in the buſhes. Being at this awkward juncture in a narrow defile, choaked almoſt with bruſhwood, and ſurrounded with Kaffers,

we

we found it neceſſary to diſcharge two or three rounds of grape from two field-pieces, in order to clear the thickets.

The ſituation of the country became more and more embarraſſing. It was a point that required ſome management to prevent a junction between the Kaffers, urged by the rebel boors to this act of aggreſſion, and the diſſatisfied Hottentots, that were every where flying from the perſecutions of their maſters. To get the latter down to the plains near Algoa Bay, as ſpeedily as poſſible, was the moſt adviſable meaſure; accordingly, accompanied by a few dragoons, I took charge of the Hottentots and their cattle, and we purſued our journey to the ſouthward; whilſt the General marched back into the Zuure Veld, in order to pick up a party of infantry that had been ſtationed there, with a view of cutting off a retreat of the boors into the Kaffer country.

Whether it happened that, in paſſing through the woods, we had picked up ſome of the cattle belonging to the Kaffers, or that they had a deſign upon thoſe of the Hottentots that were driven before us, is not certain; but on our arrival, towards the evening, at Zwart Kop's River, a number of the Kaffers were obſerved lurking among the ſhrubbery. About the middle of the night, the centinel, which we had placed by way of precaution, gave the alarm of an enemy. Upon this a ſerjeant of dragoons obſerving ſomething move in the dark, ruſhed into the buſhes, and, firing his piſtol, brought a man to the ground. It was a young well-looking Kaffer about ſix feet high. He made great efforts to remain on his feet, but weakened by loſs of blood,

blood, he could not ſtand without ſupport. On examining his wound, we found the ball had entered juſt below the ſhoulder blade, and paſſed through the right breaſt. With ſome difficulty we contrived to ſtop the hemorrhage, and to bind up the wound, after waſhing it well with milk and water. From the diſtortions of countenance, and the large drops of ſweat that ran over his body, it was very evident that he ſuffered a violent degree of pain; but he neither vented a ſigh nor a groan, nor could be prevailed upon to open his lips, although ſpoken to in his own language by a Hottentot interpreter. We cauſed him to be carried into a clean ſtraw hut, and milk in a curdled ſtate to be brought to him, but he refuſed it. At an early hour in the morning I went to the hut to inquire after the patient's health, but he was gone. The *coffray*, or infidel, at the point of death, thought it ſafer to crawl into the woods, than to remain in the hands of Chriſtians.

From Zwart Kop's River we proceeded to a plain that is contiguous to Algoa Bay, where, to our great aſtoniſhment, we found the whole of the boors and their families aſſembled, who had been plundered by the Hottentots, with their cattle and waggons and the remains of their property, waiting our arrival; in order, as they ſaid, to claim protection againſt the heathens. It was a painful ſituation to be thus placed between two parties, each claiming protection, and each vowing vengeance againſt the other, without poſſeſſing the means of keeping them aſunder. My whole ſtrength conſiſted in about a dozen dragoons; the Hottentots, great and ſmall, amounted to upwards of five hundred; and the boors, with their families, to about one

one hundred and fifty. Fortunately the Rattlesnake was still in the bay, and I obtained from Captain Gooch twenty armed seamen; and, the more effectually to keep the contending parties in order, I caused a swivel gun to be mounted on a post immediately between the boors and the Hottentots.

In this state, after many days anxiety, in which none passed without quarrels and bickerings between the boors and Hottentots, I received a letter from General Vandeleur, stating, that the Kaffers, instigated by the rebel boors, had been led to the bold measure of attacking his camp near Bosjesman's River, for the sake, as he supposed, of obtaining a supply of gunpowder; that the latter had kept up a pretty brisk fire from behind the bushes, but that the Kaffers finding it useless to oppose their long missile weapons against musquetry, retired for a moment but soon appeared again, rushing forward upon the open plain, with the iron part only of the Hassagai in their hands. That, however, after several rounds of grape from the field-pieces, and the fire of the infantry, by which numbers were killed, they retreated into the thickets.

These people soon perceived of how much greater advantage was a short weapon to a muscular arm, than a long missile spear, whose slow motion through the air makes it easily to be avoided. The blade of the Roman sword, which once conquered the world, was only about fifteen inches long, and such a sword would, perhaps, at this awful moment, be well suited for the nervous arm and the bold and invincible spirit of a Briton.

The ſame letter gave an account of an unfortunate affair that happened to Lieutenant Chumney and twenty men of the 81ſt regiment. This officer had been detached towards the ſea-coaſt, and was returning to the camp at Bosjeſman's River, when he was ſurprized among the thickets by a large party of Kaffers, who attacked them hand to hand with the iron part of their Haſſagais, the wooden ſhaft being previouſly broken off. This young officer defended himſelf bravely till ſixteen of his party were killed. The remaining four, with a Dutch boor, got into a waggon that accompanied the detachment, and arrived ſafe at the camp. Poor Chumney was on horſeback, and when the waggon ſet out had three Haſſagais ſticking in his body. Finding himſelf mortally wounded, and perceiving that the whole aim of the enemy was directed towards him, he made a ſign to the waggon to drive off; and turning his horſe, he ſet off in a contrary direction, purſued by the whole body of Kaffers; affording thus an opportunity for the ſmall remains of his party to ſave their lives by flight.

In this ſituation of affairs the rebel boors, aſſociated with the Kaffers, contrived to circulate a report among the Hottentots at Algoa Bay, that it was the intention of the Engliſh to put them on board ſhip, and to ſend them to the Cape. Such an idea created no ſmall degree of alarm among theſe poor creatures; and I obſerved on the following morning, that a great number had ſtolen away in the night; and, as we afterwards found, had joined the Kaffers. This malicious and ill-judged conduct of the boors was the cauſe of all the ſubſequent misfortunes that befel themſelves and their countrymen, and ultimately brought on

on their own deſtruction. For it not only defeated our intention of carrying into effect ſuch arrangements as were likely to have reconciled the two parties to each other; but it was, likewiſe, the means of bringing together a collective body of Kaffers and Hottentots, whoſe firſt ſtep was to drive all the boors out of their ſociety, to plunder them of the reſt of their cattle, ſet fire to their houſes, and put ſeveral of them to death. Having cleared the whole of the lower part of Graaf Reynet, they advanced into the diſtrict of Zwellendam. Their whole hatred was levelled againſt the boors. Single dragoons carrying diſpatches have frequently been met by large parties of theſe plunderers, and ſuffered to paſs without moleſtation. Even a houſe, which they diſcovered at Plettenberg's Bay to belong to an Engliſh gentleman, they left undiſturbed, whilſt all the reſt that fell in their way were burnt to the ground.

The ſame houſe, however, was afterwards plundered by a party of boors who had been collected by the magiſtrates of Zwellendam to clear the diſtrict of the Kaffers and Hottentots. Theſe unprincipled men, either out of revenge, or from an irreſiſtible impulſe to miſchief, broke open the houſe, carried away clothing and every thing that was portable, drank all the wine and ſpirits they could find, and made themſelves completely intoxicated. Yet the very men who committed thoſe enormities, were, at that moment, under the impreſſion that their deareſt connexions (if it were poſſible any thing could be dear to ſuch men), their wives, and children, were maſſacred by the enemy, into whoſe hands they knew them to have fallen. They had been met, it ſeems, a few days before, in a narrow

paſs by a party of Kaffers and Hottentots, and, as uſual, on perceiving the enemy, mounted their horſes and galloped away as faſt as they could, leaving their wives and children and waggons in the poſſeſſion of the robbers.

No outrage nor injury were offered to the priſoners, but, on the contrary, as on all ſimilar occaſions, they were treated with reſpect. They even diſpatched a Hottentot after the fugitive boors to ſay, that if they choſe to ranſom their wives and children for a ſmall quantity of powder and lead, and a dozen head of cattle, they ſhould inſtantly be delivered up. It is natural to ſuppoſe that, under ſuch circumſtances, the ties of kindred affection would have ſuperſeded all conſiderations of prudence, and have ſtifled reſentment; and that a propoſal, which held out ſuch eaſy terms for the recovery of their wives and children, would have been ſeized with avidity. This, however, was not the caſe. An African boor has no ſuch feelings; his paſſions, uncontrolled by the powers of reaſon or reflection, are always predominant. One of the party, recogniſing the Hottentot, thus ſent to them, to have once been in his ſervice, and recollecting he was now ſtanding before him in the ſhape of an enemy, and defenceleſs, fired at once with rage and revenge, ſnatched up his muſquet in his hand, and ſhot him dead upon the ſpot. Intelligence of this atrocious act was ſpeedily conveyed, by the companion of the deceaſed, to the Kaffers and Hottentots; and it was reported, and believed, that they had in conſequence put all the women and children to death. And under this impreſſion, as I have before obſerved, the huſbands and fathers of theſe women and children broke open Mr. Cal-

lander's houſe, and were dancing, in a ſtate of intoxication, upon the green. The priſoners, however, were given up, notwithſtanding the murder of the meſſenger; for they diſdained, as they told them, to take away the lives of the innocent; but that they ſhould ſoon find an opportunity of avenging the death of their countryman upon their huſbands, together with the many injuries and oppreſſions under which they had ſo long been labouring.

It is painful to dwell on ſubjects that diſgrace human nature, but as the atrocities of the African coloniſts have hitherto eſcaped the puniſhment of the law, all that can be done is to expoſe them to the horror and deteſtation of mankind. The following act ſtated officially to government by Mr. Vander Kemp, a miſſionary in Graaf Reynet, is enough to make one ſhudder at the name of a Cape boor. This zealous and intelligent man, on finding the Kaffers were not diſpoſed to profit by his inſtructions, eſtabliſhed himſelf under the ſanction of government near the Sunday River, in order to try his ſucceſs with the more tractable Hottentots. His little village ſoon became an aſylum for the poor fugitives, who, after their ſkirmiſhes with the boors, had concealed themſelves among the rocks and thickets. They now fled to Mr. Vander Kemp as to a place of ſecurity, and to one on whom, being, as they conſidered him to be, in the ſervice of the Britiſh government, they could place unbounded confidence. Among others, one poor fellow with his wife and child, in his way to the aſylum, called at a boor's houſe in Lange Kloof of the name of Van Roy,

Roy, a relation of the man who ſhot the three deſerters, to aſk for a little milk for his wife and child, who were nearly exhauſted with hunger. The unfeeling monſter ſeized the man, and bringing a loaded muſquet, ordered a Hottentot in his ſervice to ſhoot him; the Hottentot obſtinately perſiſting to refuſe, the exaſperated boor ſnatched the gun and ſhot him dead upon the ſpot, and then cauſed the other Hottentot with his wife and child to be murdered! If, obſerves Mr. Vander Kemp, atrocious deeds like theſe are to paſs with impunity, the unfortunate Hottentots, not knowing whom to truſt, would be driven to deſperation, and a general inſurrection would be the conſequence.

It is, indeed, much leſs ſurpriſing that this nation ſhould, at length, be rouſed to a ſpirit of vengeance, than that it ſhould ſo long and ſo patiently have endured every ſpecies of injury. As pretended friends, and maſters, the boors have always treated them with injuſtice and oppreſſion; as enemies, with barbarous inhnmanity. In their expeditions againſt the Bosjeſmans, of which I have ſpoken at large in the former volume, their chief aim is to murder the men, and make the children ſlaves. I cannot convey a better idea in what manner they have been accuſtomed to conduct their hoſtile expeditions againſt the Kaffers, than by inſerting a few articles of the inſtructions, propoſed by the Landroſt of one of the diſtricts, to be given to the commandant.

" Article 1ſt. No unneceſſary cruelty to be exerciſed on the " priſoners, on pain of exemplary puniſhment.

" Article

" Article 2d. The women and children, and *eſpecially* thoſe " of the Kaffers, that may happen to fall into the hands of the " *Commando*, are not to be mal-treated, nor the children taken " away; but, on the contrary, to be ſafely returned by a proper " perſon to their reſpective families, after the *late example* " *ſhewn by the Kaffers* at Plettenberg's Bay." (This alludes to the circumſtances I have already related.)

" Article 3d. On the conqueſt of any kraal (village) the huts " are not to be ſet on fire, as uſual; as there is every reaſon for " ſuppoſing that, *to this practice alone*, the burning and plun- " dering of our farm-houſes are to be aſcribed.

" Article 4th. *The dead carcaſes of the enemy are not to be* " *violated*, as has uſually been the practice of the evil-diſpoſed " part of the Commandos, by *cutting them with knives*, *laſhing* " *them with waggon whips*, *and hacking them with ſtones*; as " ſuch conduct tends only to exaſperate the enemy, and induces " them to commit murder.

" Article 5th. It is not, perhaps, adviſable for the boors, *in* " *the firſt inſtance*, to take away the cattle of the Kaffers; be- " cauſe, by doing this, the enemy will always be tempted to " hover round the Commando in order to watch a favourable " opportunity to retake them; beſides, to guard a conſider- " able number of cattle, by requiring many men, weakens the " *Commando*; they ought therefore to confine their operations " to the purſuit of the enemy, and to expel them the country,

" by

" by which *the whole of their cattle will, of courſe, fall into* " *the hands of the boors.*"

This curious production concludes by obſerving that, " al- " though all the above points have been repeatedly urged to " the Commandants, it will avail nothing unleſs they be en- " forced by the government." He might have added that, removed as they were out of the reach and inſpection of government, no recommendation nor orders would be attended to by men who were ſo completely under the dominion of their brutal paſſions. I ſhould not have ventured to give the fourth article of theſe extraordinary inſtructions as authentic, had it not appeared before me as an official document. The Britiſh government was much too mild and moderate for a ſet of men of ſo odious a character as their own countryman has here deſcribed them, in the articles of his inſtructions. Such men will never become civilized until they are " ruled with a rod of iron." The moſt lenient meaſures, replete with every indulgence, have been tried without ſucceſs. Not one ſentiment of gratitude ever eſcaped them for a full pardon of all their offences, and the remiſſion of a large debt; on the contrary, rebellion raiſed its head in the ſame moment that indulgence was extended. So conſcious, indeed, are they of their wickedneſs, that, whenever they eſcape puniſhment, they conclude that the government no longer poſſeſſes the power of inflicting it, and that it ſpares them only becauſe it is convenient to let them alone. Yet to what a wretched condition might they be reduced by one ſingle act of the government; forbidding them all acceſs to the Cape, and

and depriving them of gunpowder; both of which might eaſily and completely be effected by the ſmall military poſt at Algoa Bay.

However deſirable it might have been to apprehend and puniſh the rebels, who had inſtigated the Kaffers to acts of hoſtility againſt the Britiſh troops, yet it was by no means adviſable, in order to obtain that point, to wage an unequal conteſt with ſavages in the midſt of impenetrable thickets, whoſe deſtruction would have added little luſtre to the Britiſh arms, and been advantageous only to the very people who had urged them on. General Vandeleur, therefore, very prudently withdrew his forces, and marched them down to Algoa Bay, where part of them were embarked on board the Rattleſnake, and the reſt intended to proceed to the Cape by eaſy marches. Subſequent events, however, delayed their departure, and rendered the preſence of troops neceſſary at Algoa Bay until the evacuation of the colony.

Having delivered over the remaining Hottentots, on the return of the General, and finding I could be of no further uſe, I ſet out for the Cape, where, after a journey of ſixteen days, performed with two horſes, I arrived on the 8th of June.

Little occurred on the homeward journey that was worthy of obſervation, unleſs it was the viſible change that had taken place in the behaviour of the people of Zwellendam. While the boors of Graaf Reynet were ſtill in arms, the inhabitants of this neighbouring diſtrict appeared to be wavering, but on hear-

ing of their complete reduction, they now pretended to condemn their conduct. Whatever the real ſentiments of the coloniſts might be with regard to the Britiſh government, this was not their laſt attempt to effect their avaricious deſigns on the cattle of the Kaffers, by commencing hoſtilities againſt the magiſtrates and the ſmall force left in Graaf Reynet for their protection. But theſe diſturbances were merely local, and had plunder only for their object. All the other diſtricts remained quiet; and long before the intelligence of a general peace had reached this country, the people were ſo much reconciled to the Britiſh government, as neither to expect nor wiſh for a return of their own.

In fact there is no natural tie between the Cape and the United Provinces. The greater part of the coloniſts, being the deſcendants of ſoldiers in German regiments, compoſed of Pruſſians, Hanoverians, Flemings, and Poles, and of French refugees who took ſhelter here after the revocation of the edict of Nantz, have neither knowledge of, nor family connections in, the ſtates of the Batavian republic; nor have they any diſtinct idea of *Vaderland*, a word, however, that is conſtantly in their mouths. All they know is, that the Cape belonged to a company of merchants; that this company was their ſovereign; and that they uſed to ſee a flag with three broad horizontal ſtripes, red, white, and blue, flying upon the caſtle, inſtead of the *Spinnekop*, or ſpider legs, as they called the Britiſh enſign. A few years more would therefore, in all probability, have rendered them, or the greateſt part of them, very indifferent as to the government under which they were to remain.

Some little rejoicing might, however, naturally be ſuppoſed to take place on ſeeing once again the ſame flag hoiſted on the caſtle walls, which they had always been accuſtomed to look at; and they would have ſhewn themſelves a very worthleſs and deſpicable people not to have teſtified their feelings of joy on ſuch an occaſion. Theſe rejoicings, however, were neither general nor tumultuous, nor of long duration; they were chiefly confined within the caſtle walls. The recollection of the miſerable condition of the colony at the capture, and the general proſperity that had rapidly ſucceeded it, ſeemed forcibly to have operated at this moment. From a ſtate of poverty, and almoſt general bankruptcy, they were now grown individually rich. Inſtead of near half a million ſterling, that for the laſt ſeven years had annually been expended in the colony by the army, the navy, and Engliſh ſettlers, they now began to conſider that half of this ſum might annually be taken out of their pockets for the maintenance of their future garriſon. Little care, indeed, was taken to conceal that ſuch was the deſign of the Batavian government under the preſent exhauſted ſtate of its finances.

They ſaw likewiſe that the ſettlement, though nominally reſtored to the Batavian republic, was actually to become a colony of France. Of this they had many convincing proofs. The commandant of the troops was a Frenchman of Swiſs extraction, and half of the officers were French. A native of the Cape, who had held an employ of conſiderable importance under the old government, happening to be in Holland

at the time when the definitive treaty of peace was ſigned, made application to the State Directory for a very high ſituation at the Cape, which, however, they thought proper to refuſe. He went to Paris; obtained an audience of Buonaparte, or his miniſter, in conſequence of which an *order* was ſent to the State Government to reviſe their motives of refuſal.

Another inſtance of French influence prevailing at the Cape was too ſtriking to be overlooked. A Swiſs gentleman, who had filled a high and honourable ſtation in the ſervice of the Engliſh Eaſt India Company in Bengal, but for ſome reaſon or other had been diſmiſſed, paſſed through the Cape on his return to England, and became enamoured of its attractions. His wife, in his abſence, being handſome and much younger than himſelf, engaged the attention of Mr. Talleyrand, and lived with him as his miſtreſs, until the French government had found it convenient to paſs a reſolution *that there was a God*, and therefore that there ought to be a religion, when the former Biſhop of Autun found no difficulty in obtaining a diſpenſation from the Pope to marry her. The huſband, on his return to Europe, proceeded to Paris, where Mr. Talleyrand, to prevent his becoming troubleſome, recommended him to accept of a high appointment at the Cape of Good Hope, where, I underſtand, he arrived within a month after the evacuation, not as plain Mr. G——, late of the Engliſh Eaſt India Company's ſervice, but as *Monſieur Le G——, Conſeiller privé et intime de la Republique Batave auprés du Governeur et Conſeil au Cap de Bonne Eſperance.*

It

It alſo appeared, from the conduct of the three commiſſioners that were ſent out to arrange certain points with the Britiſh government, that French intereſt was likely to predominate at the Cape. Theſe gentlemen, though calling themſelves Dutch, made a hard ſtruggle, though without ſucceſs, that the minutes of their joint tranſactions, and correſpondence with the commiſſioners that were appointed on the part of the Britiſh government, ſhould be kept in the French language. In ſhort, every ſtep that was taken by the new government, clearly evinced that, although the Batavian flag might be ſuffered to fly, French influence was likely to prevail. Long, indeed, before the peace, it was become pretty evident that Holland was not in a condition to make any ſucceſsful ſtruggle in defence of her integrity or exiſtence, and that an incorporation with Belgium, and becoming a department of France, would, in all probability, be the final *Euthanaſia* of their *High Mightineſſes*, the United Provinces.

Theſe and other conſiderations produced a gloomineſs and melancholy on the minds of the greater part of the coloniſts that bordered on deſpondency. When the day of evacuation arrived, the caſtle and the road to the wharf were lined with ſpectators; not drawn together for the ſake of expreſſing a boiſterous joy uſual on ſuch occaſions, but to take a melancholy farewell of their beſt friends. As General Dundas paſſed along with the Commiſſary General de Miſt and the Governor Janſens, a dead ſilence prevailed; not a word nor a murmur was heard. And the friendly and affectionate leave the Commanders in Chief of the two garriſons took of each other, after the delicate and trying

ſituation

ſituation in which, for the two laſt months, they had been placed, in conſequence of the order from England countermanding the reſtoration of the ſettlement, was highly honourable to their feelings as men and officers. Few places, I believe, have been ceded by one power to another with more regularity and leſs commotion, than what happened at the reſtoration of the Cape of Good Hope, by General Dundas on the part of his Majeſty's Government to the repreſentatives of the Batavian Republic.

CHAP. III.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope conſidered as a Military Station.

Views of the Britiſh Government in taking Poſſeſſion of the Cape—State of that Colony—Arrival of the Britiſh Forces—Behaviour of the Inhabitants—Capture of the Settlement—general Opinion of its Importance—Plans for its Government.—Lord Macartney appointed Governor.—Reſolution of the Miniſter.—Conduct of the preſent Directors of the Eaſt India Company—compared with that of thoſe in the American War.—Conſequences of our Failure in the Expedition againſt the Cape at that Time. —Conſiderations propoſed in a Treaty with Holland in 1787*—Opinion of Lord Macartney.—Holland not deſirous to have the Cape.—Order of the Eaſt India Company prohibiting their Ships to touch at the Cape—countermanded with regard to Ships navigated by Laſcars.—Condition of two Regiments brought to the Cape in ſuch Ships. —Deſign of the following Part of this Work.—Meaning of the Term* Military Station.—*Soldiers, what.—Importance of forming Men previous to Embarkation. —Inconveniences attending a Sea Voyage.—India not favourable for forming Recruits into Soldiers.—A middle Station deſirable.—Cape of Good Hope, great Advantages of in this Reſpect—poſſeſſes all the Requiſites deſired by the Eaſt India Company as a Depôt.—Healthineſs of Climate, various Proofs of—ſeaſons the Conſtitution for India—remarkable Inſtance of in upwards of two thouſand Men ſent to India—another in twelve hundred to the Red Sea.—Difficulties ſtarted againſt this Expedition. —Importance of the Cape on Account of the ſmall Expence of ſubſiſting Troops there.— Value of the Ration here and elſewhere.—Price of Proviſions—of Wine.—Profits derived by the Government at the Cape from Bills on his Majeſty's Paymaſters—from Specie imported—from Copper Money—from iſſuing new Paper Money.—Expenditure in the military Department—a mere Trifle compared with the Importance of the Station—capable of being borne in Peace out of the colonial Revenues.—Importance of the Cape on account of its local Poſition—inſtanced in detecting the Views of Tippoo*

at

at the Iſle of France—in ſending Troops expeditiouſly to India.—Opportunities of doing this in Engliſh or neutral Ships.—General Advantages.—Importance of the Cape ſtated in compariſon with that of Malta.—Views of the French on India—ſeen in the Publication of Anquetil Duperron.—*Diſadvantages of Malta being in the Hands of the French.—Difficulties that would attend an Expedition by Sea from Suez.—Iſland of Perim.—Difficulties that would occur by Land—not inſurmountable.—De la Croix's Opinion of the Cape.—Defences of the Cape.—Table Bay and Site of the Town—Works—Citadel—Lines—Craig's Battery and Tower—Fort Knocke—Rogge Bay, Amſterdam, and Chavonne Batteries—the Mouillé—Camp's Bay and Batteries—Importance of the Lion's Rump—Objections againſt it.—Chapman and Hout Bays.—Simon's Bay.—Garriſon of the Cape, Strength of.—Unprotected Coaſt and Bays.—Algoa Bay.—Means to be employed by an Enemy for diſtreſſing the Garriſon—taken by a* Coup de Main.—*Garriſon of the Dutch.—Diſpoſition of the Hottentot Corps.—State of the Batavian Ships of War in the Eaſtern Seas.—Ammunition and Stores at the Cape.*

WHEN the Prince of Orange had departed from Holland, and the ſubſequent affairs of that nation had rendered it ſufficiently obvious that the majority of the inhabitants of the United Provinces were inclined to adopt the revolutionary principles of France, it became a meaſure of precaution, in our government, to take immediate poſſeſſion of the Dutch colonies. Among theſe the Cape of Good Hope claimed the earlieſt attention, being conſidered as a ſettlement of too great importance to be truſted in the hands of the Dutch coloniſts, although it was well known the principal and greateſt number of the military officers, as well as many of thoſe who held civil appointments there, were indebted to their Prince for the ſituations they enjoyed in that colonial government.

An expedition was accordingly ſent out to take poſſeſſion of the Cape, not however in a hoſtile manner, but to hold it in defence

fence and ſecurity for, and in the name of, the Prince of Orange, who had furniſhed letters dated from London to that effect. But the miſguided people of the colony, having received only imperfect accounts of affairs in Holland, and being led to expect a French force at the Cape, had already embraced the principles of Jacobiniſm, whoſe effects were the more to be dreaded on account of the conſummate ignorance of the bulk of the ſettlers. Some French emiſſaries, thoſe aſſiduous diſturbers of the human race, who, ſnake like, have crept into every ſociety and corner of the world, poiſoning the ſprings of peace and good order, found little difficulty in urging a people, already ſo well diſpoſed, to carry their principles into practice. The few officers of the government who were ſuppoſed to be attached to the cauſe of the Stadtholder, and friends to the old ſyſtem, were completely ſubdued; and the weakneſs of the governor favoured the views of the diſorderly citizens. They became clamorous to declare themſelves, by ſome public act, a free and independent republic; they prepared to plant the tree of liberty, and eſtabliſhed a convention, whoſe firſt object was to make out proſcribed liſts of thoſe who were either to ſuffer death by the new-faſhioned mode of the guillotine, which they had taken care to provide for the purpoſe, or to be baniſhed out of the colony. It is almoſt needleſs to ſtate that the perſons, ſo marked out to be the victims of an unruly rabble, were the only worthy people in the ſettlement, and moſt of them members of government.

The ſlaves, whoſe numbers of grown men, as I have before obſerved, are about five to one of male whites who have arrived

at the growth of manhood, had alſo their meetings to decide upon the fate of the free and independent burghers, when the happy days of their own emancipation ſhould arrive, which, from the converſations of their maſters on the bleſſings of liberty and equality, and the unalienable rights of man, they were willing to ſuppoſe, could not be very diſtant.

In this ſtate of things the Britiſh fleet appeared before the bay. The governor called an extraordinary council to deliberate upon the ſteps to be taken in this critical juncture. Some were inclined to throw the ſettlement under the protection of the Britiſh flag, but the governor and the greater number influenced, and perhaps intimidated, by the citizens, liſtened to the abſurd propoſals of reſiſting the Engliſh force, and, if ſucceſsful, as they doubted not they would be, of ſetting up immediately a free and independent republic of their own. They talked of the thouſands and ten thouſands of courageous boors, who, on the ſignal of alarm being given, would flock to the Batavian ſtandard; ſo ignorant were they of the nature and the number of their valiant countrymen. The *burgher cavalry*, a militia of country boors, who were then in the vicinity of the town, were immediately called out, and a few hundreds reluctantly obeyed the ſummons. The conduct and the cowardice of this undiſciplined rabble, whoſe martial ſpirit had hitherto been tried only in their expeditions againſt the native Hottentots, might eaſily have been foreſeen. A few ſhot from the America, man of war, ſtriking the rocks of Muiſenberg, ſoon cleared that important paſs, and cauſed the regular troops to retreat to Wynberg, a tongue of land projecting from the eaſt ſide of the Table

ble Mountain, and about eight miles from Cape Town: the Hottentot corps ſtill loitered about the rocks, and did ſome miſchief, but being ſpeedily diſlodged, fell back alſo upon Wynberg; but the brave burgher cavalry ſcampered away to their reſpective homes without once ſtopping to look behind them.

The Britiſh troops, led on by General Sir James Craig, under the orders of Sir Alured Clarke, marched to attack the enemy on their elevated poſt; and by the aſſiſtance of the ſailors, having brought his guns and artillery to bear upon them, a few ſhot cauſed them to retreat within their lines. The Engliſh encamped on the ſpot from which they had diſlodged the enemy; who, finding it vain longer to oppoſe a feeble reſiſtance, ſent, in the middle of the night, a flag of truce to propoſe a capitulation, which was acceded to; and the next day concluded between the two parties. Moſt of the members of the government that were well diſpoſed to the Prince of Orange, and had conducted themſelves with propriety, were continued in office; and thus the plans of the Jacobin party were, for the preſent, completely defeated.

When the news of this event firſt reached England, the acquiſition of ſo valuable a ſettlement was conſidered of the utmoſt importance to the Britiſh empire, and particularly to the Eaſt India Company, as being a barrier and grand out-work to their vaſt poſſeſſions in India. So forcibly was the public impreſſed with an opinion of the great advantages that might be derived to the nation at large from the poſſeſſion of the Cape, that the

queſtion was immediately ſtarted and diſcuſſed among perſons entruſted with the management of the firſt political and commercial intereſts of the empire, under what tenure it ſhould be held. Whether the Cape ought to be conſidered as a foreign dependency of the crown, and ſubject to the ſame regulations as all the other colonies are; or, annexed to the poſſeſſions under the adminiſtration of the Eaſt India Company? Thoſe who held the latter opinion quoted the charter granted by Queen Elizabeth, by which the Company are allowed the privilege of a free and ſole trade into the countries of Aſia, Africa, and America, or any of them beyond the Cape of Buona Eſperanza, to the Streights of Magellan. Thoſe, who were inclined to think that the charters of the Eaſt India Company gave them no claim to the Cape, brought forward the charter they received from Charles the Second, in which no mention whatever is made of Africa.

While theſe queſtions were in agitation, two general plans floated in the mind of Mr. Dundas (now Lord Melville); both of which were ſo conceived as to combine the intereſts of the public with thoſe of the Eaſt India Company. One of theſe plans ſuppoſed the Cape to be a foreign dependency of the crown, and included ſuch proviſions and regulations as were compatible with the intereſts and the chartered privileges of the Eaſt India Company: the other inveſted the territorial poſſeſſion in the Eaſt India Company, but propoſed ſuch regulations as were calculated to promote the general commercial proſperity of the Britiſh empire. And, in the mean time, until one or other of theſe plans ſhould be adopted, the ſettlement was to be

be conſidered as dependent on the Crown, to be adminiſtered by the executive power, as conſtitutionally reſponſible to Parliament.

Every precaution was alſo taken that the rights and privileges of the Eaſt India Company ſhould ſuffer no infringement. The excluſive advantage of ſupplying the Cape with India and China goods was immediately and unconditionally granted to them. And the regulations adopted in conſequence, by the Earl of Macartney, and the vigilance that was conſtantly employed under his government, prevented and defeated every attempt to undermine their intereſts, and were productive of a ſource of conſiderable profit to the Company.

It was, in fact, the well known integrity of his Lordſhip's character, and the able and decided meaſures employed by him, on various trying occaſions, for promoting and combining the intereſts of the Eaſt India Company with the honour of the Crown, and the commercial proſperity of the Britiſh empire, that determined the miniſter in his choice of him as governor for this important acquiſition: and his Lordſhip was accordingly nominated without his knowledge, whilſt abſent on public ſervice in Italy.

As little doubt was entertained, at that time, either by his Majeſty's miniſters or the public, that the Cape would become, at a general peace, a ſettlement in perpetuity to England, great pains were employed in drawing up inſtructions and in framing

regulations that were calculated to promote the proſperity of the colony, ſecure the intereſts of the Eaſt India Company, and extend the commerce and navigation of Britain. Its importance, indeed, was deemed of ſuch magnitude, that it was a reſolution of the miniſter from which he never meant to recede, "That no foreign power, directly or indirectly, ſhould obtain "poſſeſſion of the Cape of Good Hope, for, that it was the "*phyſical guarantee* of the *Britiſh territories* in India." Its political importance could be doubted by none; its commercial advantages were believed by all.

Yet, after every precaution that had been employed for ſecuring the privileges, increaſing the conveniency, and promoting the intereſts, of the Eaſt India Company in this ſettlement, it would ſeem that an inclination prevailed in ſome of its directors to diſparage or undervalue it. What their motives could have been, which led to ſuch an opinion, I do not pretend to determine; nor is there any reaſon to ſuppoſe that a body of men, who have always been remarkable for acting upon the broad baſis of national proſperity, would, in the preſent inſtance, deviate from their uſual line of conduct, and bend to the influence of any little jealouſy about patronage or prerogative, when the welfare of the public was ſo nearly concerned. The opinions of men, it is true, when grounded on moral events, are fugitive, and yield to circumſtances: it were difficult, however, to aſſign any event or circumſtance that could have operated ſo as to produce any reaſonable grounds for a change in the opinion of the directors of the Eaſt India Company, in the courſe

of

of the laſt twenty years, with regard to the value of the Cape of Good Hope: many have occurred to enhance its importance.

That they did conſider it of the utmoſt conſequence, towards the end of the American war, their own conduct will ſufficiently teſtify. The moment that a Dutch war was found to be inevitable, towards the cloſe of the year 1780, Lord North, whoſe ſentiments on this point were in perfect agreement with thoſe of the directors, loſt no time in communicating to the ſecret committee of the Eaſt India Company the information of it; in order, that they might take or ſuggeſt ſuch meaſures, without delay, as the event might render moſt conducive to their intereſts. The chairman and deputy chairman, who, if I miſtake not, at that time, were Mr. Devaynes and Mr. Sullivan, loſt not a moment in conſulting with ſuch of their officers as happened to be then in London, and were ſuppoſed to be qualified to give good information. The reſult of which was, that the firſt and only meaſure propoſed for the advantage of the Eaſt India Company's concerns was, in the event of a Dutch war, that an expedition ſhould inſtantly be ſent out to take poſſeſſion of the Cape of Good Hope; a propoſal that met the concurrence of the miniſter, and of which the reſult was the ſquadron diſpatched under the command of Commodore Johnſton, who carried under his convoy their outward-bound fleet; fought an indeciſive battle with Suffrein in Porta Praya Bay, which enabled the French to reach the Cape of Good Hope, and to place it in ſuch a ſtate of ſecurity that the Commodore did not think it prudent to make the attack, but contented himſelf

ſelf with the capture of a few Dutch Indiamen in Saldanha Bay; whilſt the French Admiral, having refitted and refreſhed his ſquadron at the Cape, proceeded to Mauritius, and from thence to the Indian Seas with his ſhips and men in the higheſt order; a circumſtance that was attended with no ſmall degree of detriment and annoyance to the trade and poſſeſſions of the Eaſt India Company, as well as of expence and inconvenience to the Crown. For the failure, in the grand object of this expedition, not only gave the enemy the vaſt advantage of landing and refreſhing their ſeamen and troops, who were ſoon recruited by the invigorating effects of a temperate climate and abundance of freſh proviſions, fruits, and vegetables, but it likewiſe enabled him to keep a fleet almoſt conſtantly at ſea, by the proviſions and naval ſtores it received from the Cape through Mauritius by agents reſiding there. Their own iſlands of Mauritius and Bourbon furniſh no ſuch ſupply, their productions not being adequate to the conſumption of the inhabitants and the garriſons.

The French, in fact, have always contrived to refit and proviſion their ſhips, and to ſend their armaments ſupplied with ſtores to the Indian Seas from the Cape of Good Hope. Had it not been for the ſupplies furniſhed from this ſettlement, together with the poſſeſſion of the harbour of Trincomalee, it would have been utterly impoſſible for Suffrein to have ſupported his fleet, or maintained the conteſt with us in the manner he did.

It was not, indeed, without a full conviction of its great utility to England, as well as of encumbrance to the Dutch, by

by the enormous expence it occaſioned, that Mr. Dundas was induced, in the conſiderations on the treaty between Great Britain and Holland, tranſmitted to the Britiſh ambaſſador at the Hague in 1787, to propoſe to them the ceſſions of certain ſtations in India, which were to them of little weight, either in a political or commercial point of view. The reaſoning employed on this occaſion was, "That the Cape was invaluable in the "hands of a maritime power, being really and truly the key "to India, which no hoſtile fleet could paſs or re-paſs, as the "length of the previous voyage, either from India or Europe, "muſt have diſabled ſuch a fleet, in a certain degree, before it "could reach the Cape—that it was the intereſt of Holland "itſelf that the Cape and Trincomalée ſhould belong to Great "Britain; becauſe Holland muſt either be the ally of Britain or "of France in India; and becauſe Great Britain only can be "an uſeful ally of Holland in the eaſt—that the Dutch were not "able to protect their ſettlements in that quarter, and Britain "fully competent to their protection—that the Cape and Trin-"comalée were not commercial eſtabliſhments, and that the "maintenance of them was burthenſome and expenſive to the "Dutch—but that the force required to protect the Britiſh "Indian poſſeſſions, would render the defence of the Dutch ſet-"tlements much leſs ſo to Britain."

The Earl of Macartney was not leſs convinced of the policy, nor leſs perſuaded of the readineſs of the Dutch, to leave the Cape in our hands, provided they were allowed to have a choice of their own. In his letter to Mr. Dundas, dated Oc-

tober 1797, he obſerves, " The power and influence of Hol-
" land appear to me ſo irretrievable, that it is impoſſible ſhe can
" ever again hold an independent poſſeſſion of the Cape. In-
" deed, before the war, ſhe was neither rich enough to main-
" tain its eſtabliſhments, nor ſtrong enough to govern its peo-
" ple, and, I believe, had it not been for our conqueſt of the
" country, it would ſoon have attempted to become inde-
" pendent. As Holland is likely to be in future leſs powerful
" at home, and conſequently leſs reſpectable abroad, and as the
" Cape would be a burthen to her, not eaſy to bear, it would
" not be againſt her intereſt to leave it in our hands, for in
" ſuch caſe ſhe might derive, without any expence, all the ad-
" vantages of its original intention, which was that of a place of
" refreſhment for her commerce to the eaſtward; and there are
" other circumſtances which, were ſhe now in a ſituation diſpaſ-
" ſionately to conſider, I have reaſon to imagine, would lead
" her to adopt this ſentiment. The French (who, to ſpeak of
" them in the language of truth and experience, and not in the
" jargon of pretended Coſmopolites, are, and ever muſt be, our
" natural enemies) can only wiſh to have the Cape either in
" their own hands, or in thoſe of a weak power, that they may
" uſe it as an inſtrument towards our deſtruction; as a channel
" for pouring through it an irreſiſtible deluge upon our Indian
" poſſeſſions to the ſouthward of the Guadavery. Of this I am
" ſo perfectly convinced, that if it ſhall be found impracticable
" for us to retain the ſovereignty of the Cape, and the French
" are to become the maſters of it, either *per ſe*, *aut per alium*,
" then we muſt totally alter our preſent ſyſtem, and adopt ſuch
" meaſures

" meaſures as will ſhut them out of India entirely, and render " the poſſeſſion of the Cape and of the Iſles of France and Bour- " bon of as little uſe to them as poſſible."

Whatever might have been the feelings of the Dutch with regard to the Cape, under the old government, I am authorized to ſay that Holland never did expect, and ſcarcely wiſhed for, the reſtoration of this colony at a peace; well knowing that they would be allowed from the Engliſh to enjoy the advantages of refreſhing and proviſioning their ſhips, without the expence of keeping it. They would have been glad even to have declared it a *free port*, under any flag except their own. But the only power that Holland poſſeſſed, in framing the treaty of peace, was a mere name; and all the territories that were nominally reſtored to the Batavian Republic were virtually given up to France.

I have ſtated thus much with regard to the opinions that have hitherto been held of the importance of the Cape of Good Hope to the Britiſh trade and ſettlements in India, at a time when we were made to feel the inconvenience of its being in the poſſeſſion of an enemy, or even of a neutral power, becauſe a very ſenſible change of opinion appears to have taken place from the very moment it became a dependency on the Britiſh crown. For it is very certain that the directors of the Eaſt India Company did not only aſſume an affected indifference, with regard to this ſettlement, but endeavoured to diſcourage the retention of it in the ſtrongeſt terms they poſſibly could have thought of, by ſhewing and proving to the world, as they imagined they

had done, that the poſſeſſion of the Cape was of no uſe whatſoever to their commerce, or their concerns in India. For this apparently abſurd purpoſe the commanders of all the ſhips in their employ were forbid, in the moſt poſitive terms, to touch at the Cape, either in their outward or their homeward bound paſſage, except ſuch, on the return voyage, as were deſtined to ſupply the ſettlement with Indian goods.

The ſtrength and conſtitution of Engliſh ſeamen, corroborated by wholeſome food, will ſupport them on a paſſage from India to England, ſhortened as it now is by the modern improvements in the art of navigation, without the neceſſity of touching at any intermediate port. But this is not the caſe with regard to the Laſcars, or natives of India, who, in time of war, conſtitute frequently more than two-thirds of the crew. Theſe poor creatures, whoſe chief ſuſtenance is rice, oil, and vegetables, are ill calculated to ſuffer a long privation of their uſual diet, and ſtill leſs to bear the cold of the ſouthern ocean, eſpecially in the winter ſeaſon. By them the Cape was looked up to as a half-way houſe, where a ſtock of freſh ſupplies was to be had, and where the delay of a few days had a wonderful effect in recruiting their health and ſpirits. And the event ſhewed that ſuch a half-way houſe, to ſuch people, was indiſpenſibly neceſſary; for the directors were obliged to countermand their order as far as it regarded thoſe ſhips that were navigated by the black natives of India.

Whenever it has happened that government was under the neceſſity of ſending out troops in ſhips navigated by Laſcars, a greater

greater degree of ſickneſs and mortality has prevailed than in ſhips entirely manned by Europeans; and under ſuch circumſtances it would be highly criminal to attempt to run from Europe to India without ſtopping at ſome intermediate port, not only to procure refreſhments for the troops and Laſcars, but to clean and fumigate the ſhips in order to prevent contagious diſeaſes. The two Boy regiments, as they are uſually called, the 22d and 34th, which it was neceſſary to ſend to the Cape as a reinforcement of the garriſon, after the able and effective men had been ſent away to Madras, who ſoon after ſo materially aſſiſted in the conqueſt of Seringapatam, arrived in a very ſickly ſtate at the Cape. Yet the ſame ſhips, after being properly waſhed, ſcoured, and fumigated, and the crews completely refreſhed, carried on other troops to their deſtination without the loſs of a ſingle man.

How far the conduct of the directors was compatible with the intereſts of the Eaſt India Company, who have conſigned them to their management, I ſhall endeavour to point out in the courſe of this and the following chapters; the deſign of which is, by general reaſoning, grounded on facts, to appreciate the advantages that would have reſulted to the Britiſh nation in general, and to the Eaſt India Company in particular, from annexing the Cape to the foreign poſſeſſions of England; and the ſerious conſequences that may enſue from its being in the poſſeſſion of an enemy. Opinions on this ſubject, it ſeems, widely differ; on which account a fair and impartial ſtatement of ſuch circumſtances as may tend to elucidate a doubtful

point, can do no harm, and may, perhaps, ultimately be productive of good, by aſſiſting thoſe, to whoſe care the beſt intereſts of the country are committed, to form their judgment on facts locally collected, and brought in ſome order together under one point of view. It is important to premiſe that ſuch facts were either taken from authentic and official documents, or fell immediately under my own obſervation.

I proceed then, in the firſt place, to conſider the Cape of Good Hope in the view of a military ſtation; by which is not only implied a garriſon to act for the defence of the ſettlement, but likewiſe a depôt, or place ſuitable for collecting and forming, ſo as always to have in readineſs, a body of troops, either belonging to his Majeſty's regular regiments, or to the armies of the Eaſt India Company, fitted and prepared for foreign ſervice, and ſeaſoned for the climates either of the Eaſt or the Weſt Indies.

A very general notion ſeems to have been entertained in this country in all our former wars, by people who conſider only the outlines or ſuperficies of things, and ſuch, by the way, conſtitute by far the largeſt portion of mankind, that if the miniſter can contrive to furniſh money, the money will ſupply men, and theſe men will form an army. It is true they will ſo; juſt as a collection of oak timber brought to a dock-yard will form a ſhip. But a great deal of labour is neceſſary in the ſeaſoning, hewing, and ſhaping of ſuch timber, and a great deal of judgment and practice ſtill required to arrange and adapt the ſeveral parts

parts to each other, ſo that they may act in concert together, and form a complete whole that ſhall be capable of performing all the effects that were intended to be produced. Thus is it alſo in the formation of an army. It is not enough to collect together a body of men and to put arms into their hands. They muſt be claſſed and arranged, ſeaſoned and inured to a certain way of life; exerciſed in certain motions and poſitions of the body, until long practice has rendered them habitual and eaſy; they muſt be taught to act in an uniform and ſimultaneous movement, and in ſuch a manner that the ſeparate action of the individuals ſhall form one united impulſe, producing the greateſt poſſible effect of aggregated ſtrength. They muſt alſo be taught to preſerve their health and ſtrength by habits of temperance and cleanlineſs, and to take care of themſelves in the various circumſtances that may occur of ſituation and climate.

Such a body of men, ſo formed and prepared, may properly be called ſoldiers. And no ſmall degree of attention and judgment is required to bring a body of men to ſuch a ſtate of diſcipline. Yet it is highly important that all troops, intended to be ſent on foreign ſervice, ſhould at leaſt be partly formed, and inſtructed in the art of taking proper care of themſelves, previous to their embarkation. Being once accuſtomed to habits of cleanlineſs and regularity, they are leſs liable to fall a ſacrifice to the cloſe confinement and want of room in a ſhip; and the inconveniences of a long ſea voyage will always be leſs felt by perſons thus prepared than by raw undiſciplined recruits, who are apt to be heedleſs, ſlovenly, and irregular.

But

But even old ſeaſoned troops, after a long ſea-voyage, are generally found to be diſqualified, during a conſiderable time, for any great exertion. The tone or elaſticity of the mind has become relaxed as well as the habit of body. Let any one recollect how he felt after a long ſea-voyage, and aſk himſelf if he were capable of the ſame exertion, and of undergoing the ſame fatigue, immediately after landing as before his embarkation. The anſwer, I fancy, will be in the negative. The limbs, in fact, require to be exerciſed in order to regain their uſual motions, and the lungs muſt have practice before they will play with their uſual freedom in the cheſt. And theſe effects, adverſe to prompt and energetic action, will generally be proportioned to the length of the voyage, and the privations to which men muſt neceſſarily ſubmit.

The very able and intelligent writers of the *Précis des evènemens militaires*, or *Epitome of military events*, ſeem to aſcribe the defeat of the Ruſſian column, commanded by General Hermann, in the affair at Bergen, where it was almoſt cut to pieces, to their marching againſt the enemy immediately after landing from a ſea-voyage, although it had not been very long. They obſerve that, " by being crowded on board tranſports, and other inconveniences experienced at ſea, not only a conſiderable number of individuals are weakened to ſuch a degree that they are incapable of any ſervice, but whole corps ſometimes preſent the ſame diſadvantages—the extreme inequality of ſtrength that, in ſuch caſes, prevails between the individuals or conſtituent parts of corps, is, at once, deſtructive of their aggregated and combined impulſe."

If

If then ſuch be the effects produced on ſeaſoned troops, on a ſea-voyage of moderate length, they muſt be doubly felt by young recruits unaccuſtomed to the neceſſary precautions for preſerving their health. In fact, a raw recruit, put on board a ſhip in England, totally unformed and undiſciplined, will be much farther from being a ſoldier, when he arrives in India, than when he firſt ſtepped on board. The odds are great that he dies upon the paſſage, or that he arrives under incurable diſeaſe. And, indeed, of thoſe who may chance to arrive in tolerable health, a great proportion dies in the ſeaſoning, from the debilitating effects of a hot climate. India is, perhaps, the worſt place in the whole world for forming an European recruit into a ſoldier. Unable to bear the fatigue of being exerciſed, his ſpirits are moreover depreſſed by obſerving how little exertion men of the ſame rank and condition as himſelf are accuſtomed to make. It cannot, therefore, be denied that, as long as it ſhall be found neceſſary to recruit our large armies in India with European troops, it would be a moſt deſirable object to be in poſſeſſion of ſome middle ſtation to break the length of the ſea-voyage; a ſtation which at the ſame time enjoyed a middle temperature of climate, between the extremes of heat and cold, to ſeaſon the body and adapt it to ſuſtain an increaſed quantity of the one or the other.

The Cape of Good Hope eminently points out ſuch a ſtation. Its geographical poſition on the globe is ſo commanding a feature, that the bare inſpection of a map, without any other information, muſt at once obtrude its importance and value in this as well as many other reſpects. Its diſtance from the coaſt

of Brazil is the voyage of a month; from the Dutch colonies of Surinam, Demarara, Berbice, and Eſſiquebo, with the Weſt India iſlands, ſix weeks; the ſame to the Red Sea; and two months to the coaſts of Malabar and Coromandel. With the eaſt and the weſt coaſts of Africa and the adjacent iſlands, it commands a ready communication at all ſeaſons of the year. A place ſo ſituated, juſt half way between England and India, in a temperate and wholeſome climate, and productive of refreſhments of every deſcription, would naturally be ſuppoſed to hold out ſuch irreſiſtible advantages to the Eaſt India Company, not only by its happy poſition and local aſcendancy, but alſo by the means it affords of opening a new market and intermediate depoſitary for their trade and commodities, that they would have been glad to purchaſe, at any price, an acquiſition of ſuch immenſe importance; and that ſuch great advantages, however they might be blinked by ſome or unknown to others, would ſpeedily have forced a general conviction of their value, in ſpite of real ignorance or affected indifference.

One might alſo have ſuppoſed that the poſſeſſion of the Cape of Good Hope would have ſuggeſted itſelf to the Eaſt India Company as a place which would have removed many, if not all, of the difficulties that occurred to them, on the renewal of their privileges in 1793, when a depôt for their recruits in Britain was in contemplation. The principal regulations propoſed for ſuch depoſitary of troops, as contained in "*Hiſtoric View of* "*Plans for Britiſh India*," were the following:—"That the age "of the Company's recruits ſhould be from twelve to fifteen "or twenty, becauſe at this period of life, the conſtitution was "found

" found to accommodate itſelf moſt eaſily to the different varia-
" tions of climate—that the officers of the police ſhould be
" empowered to transfer to the depôt all ſuch helpleſs and in-
" digent youths as might be found guilty of miſdemeanors and
" irregularities approaching to crimes—that the ſaid officers of
" police and others ſhould be authorized to engage deſtitute and
" helpleſs young men in a ſervice, where they would have a
" comfortable ſubſiſtence, and an honourable employment—
" that the young men ſo procured ſhould be retained in Great
" Britain, at the depôt, for a certain time, in order to be in-
" ſtructed in ſuch branches of education as would qualify for
" the duty of a non-commiſſioned officer, and in thoſe military
" exerciſes which form them for immediate ſervice in the regi-
" ments in India."

Now of all the places on the ſurface of the globe, for the eſtabliſhment of ſuch a depôt, the Cape of Good Hope is pre-eminently diſtinguiſhed. In the firſt place, there would be no difficulty in conveying them thither. In every month of the year, the outward bound ſhips of the Company, private traders, or whalers, ſail from England, and the fewer that each ſhip carried, the greater the probability would be that none of them ſhould die on the paſſage. And there is, perhaps, no place on the face of the earth in every reſpect ſo ſuitable as the Cape for forming them into ſoldiers. It poſſeſſes, among other advantages, three that are invaluable; healthineſs of climate, cheapneſs of ſubſiſtence, and a favourable ſituation for ſpeedy intercourſe with moſt parts of the world, and particularly with India. I ſhall make a few remarks on each of theſe points.

With regard to the healthineſs of climate, I do not conſider it as neceſſary to the preſent ſubject to give copies of the regular returns of deaths in the ſeveral regiments that, for the laſt ſeven years, have been ſtationed at the Cape of Good Hope. Such dry details furniſh very little of the uſeful and leſs of the agreeable. They might, indeed, ſerve to ſhew, on a compariſon with other returns ſent in from different foreign ſtations, how very trifling has been the mortality of troops in this ſettlement. It will be ſufficient, however, for my purpoſe to obſerve, that Lord Macartney, in order to ſave a vaſt and unneceſſary expence to the public, found it expedient to break up the hoſpital ſtaff, which, in fact, was become perfectly uſeleſs, there being at that time no ſick whatſoever in the general hoſpital, and ſo few as ſcarcely worth the noticing in the regimental hoſpitals; and the ſurgeons of the regiments acknowledged that thoſe few under their care were the victims of intemperance and irregularity. At this time the ſtrength of the garriſon conſiſted of more than five thouſand men.

Shortly after the capture, it is true, a conſiderable ſickneſs prevailed among the Britiſh troops, and great numbers died, a circumſtance that was noticed, and at the ſame time fully explained, by General Sir James Craig in his letter to Mr. Dundas, about three months after the ceſſion of the colony. He obſerves that the ſoldiers of the Dutch Eaſt India Company were obliged to furniſh their own bedding and blankets, as well as the neceſſary garriſon and camp furniture; ſo that, when the Dutch entered into the capitulation, not a ſingle article of garriſon furniture could be claimed; and the ſhops, at that time, furniſhing

niſhing no ſuch materials, the men were obliged to ſleep on the bare flag-ſtones in the great barrack, until a ſupply of blankets and camp utenſils of every kind could be ſent out from England.

Invalids from India recover very quickly at the Cape. The ſervants of the Eaſt India Company are allowed to proceed thus far on leave of abſence without prejudice to their rank; and here they generally experience a ſpeedy recovery. The two Boy regiments, whom I have already mentioned to have ſuffered ſeverely on the paſſage from England in ſhips navigated by Laſcars, and who landed in fact on the height of a malignant and contagious diſeaſe, rapidly recovered; and, in the courſe of two years, from being a parcel of weakly boys, unable to carry a muſquet, became two very fine regiments, fit for ſervice in any part of the world. When the orders, indeed, for the final evacuation of the Cape were countermanded, the 34th regiment, which two years before had excited the pity of every one who ſaw them, enfeebled as they were by diſeaſe, and unfit, from their tender years, for the fatigues of ſoldiers, was now a very eſſential part of the ſtrength of the garriſon.

It may, therefore, I think, be ſafely concluded, that the climate of the Cape is not only ſalubrious, but that it is particularly favourable for forming young and raw recruits into ſoldiers. And it would appear, moreover, that the ſalutary effects of this climate are not merely local, but that their ſeaſoning efficacy is extended beyond the hemiſphere of Southern Africa, and qualifies, in a very remarkable manner, the raw recruit

and

and the ſeaſoned ſoldier for the climate of India, and the ſtill more trying ſituation of the voyage thither. The conſtitution would ſeem to acquire, by a few years reſidence at the Cape, a ſtrength and vigour which not only enabled it to ſurmount the inconveniences of the ſea, but, contrary to what uſually happens, to ſuſtain the fatigue of long and continued marches in a hot climate, immediately after debarkation.

The truth of this obſervation was made evident by a number of inſtances that occurred during the ſeven years that the Cape remained in our poſſeſſion; but in none more ſtrongly than that, in the government of Lord Macartney, when three almoſt complete regiments of infantry, the 84th, the 86th, and the Scotch brigade, were embarked and ſent off, at a few days' notice, under the command of Major-General Baird, to join the army of India againſt Tippoo Sultaun. This reinforcement, conſiſting of upwards of two thouſand men in their ſhoes, arrived to a man, and in the higheſt ſtate of health; took the field the day after their landing; marched into the Myſore country; co-operated with the Indian army, and contributed very materially towards the conqueſt of Seringapatam. The very man (Major-General Baird), under whoſe command they ſailed from the Cape but a few months before, led them on to ſtorm this celebrated capital of the Myſore kingdom.

One might have ſuppoſed that the facility and ſucceſs of throwing reinforcements into India, exemplified in this remarkable inſtance, would have ſtamped on the minds of the directors an indelible value on the Cape. "By poſſeſſing and

"im-

" improving the advantages of ſeaſoning and preparing our " troops at the Cape," obſerves Lord Macartney in his letter to Lord Melville on the importance of the Cape, dated April the 25th, 1801, " I had it in my power, almoſt at a moment's no- " tice, to ſend to Madras, under the command of Major-Gene- " ral Baird, about two thouſand effective men in the higheſt " health, vigour, and diſcipline, who eminently contributed to " the capture of Seringapatam, and the total ſubverſion of the " power of Tippoo."

It did not ſeem, however, to have made any ſuch impreſſion on the Eaſt India Company; at leaſt their conduct and opinions indicated no change in conſequence of it. Nor could their inflexible indifference be rouſed by the multiplied inſtances which clearly demonſtrated the importance of having a ſuitable ſtation for the ſeaſoning and training of young troops to act, on any emergency and at a ſhort notice, in their ſervice, and for the protection of their vaſt poſſeſſions in India. Had not the inſtance above recited been conſidered as ſufficient to ſtamp its value, the reinforcement of troops that was ſent from the Cape, to accompany the expedition of Sir Home Popham to the Red Sea, one might have thought would have forced a full conviction of the importance of ſuch a ſtation. On this occaſion were embarked, at almoſt a moment's warning, twelve hundred effective men, compoſed of detachments of artillery, cavalry, and infantry, who all arrived to a man, at Coſſir, a port in the Red Sea, from whence they were found capable of immediately ſuſtaining long and fatiguing marches, notwithſtanding the heat of the climate, the heavineſs of the ground, and the ſcarcity of water.

water. The 61ſt regiment, Sir Robert Wilſon obſerves, landed at Coſſir after having been near ſixteen weeks on board, without having one ſick man, though the ſtrength of the regiment exceeded nine hundred men.

A thouſand difficulties, it appears, were ſtarted in England with regard to the ſailing of this expedition, by people who derive their information only from defective books and not from local knowledge. The ſeaſon of the Monſoon was ſtated to be unfavourable for the navigation of the Red Sea, and the deſarts by which it was bordered were held to be totally impaſſable. But to vigorous and determined minds few things are inſurmountable. "The man (Lord Melville) who projected, and "perſevered in, the expedition to Egypt," ſaw very clearly that the expedition to the Red Sea could not fail under proper caution and management, and the event proved that he was right.

Having thus ſufficiently ſhewn, as I conceive, the importance of the Cape as a military ſtation, or depoſitary of troops, with regard to the healthineſs of the climate, and the effects produced on the conſtitution of ſoldiers, by being ſeaſoned and exerciſed a ſhort time there, I ſhall now proceed to ſtate the comparative ſmall expence at which the ſoldier can be ſubſiſted on this ſtation, and the ſaving that muſt neceſſarily enſue both to Government and the Eaſt India Company, by ſending their recruits to the Cape to be trained for ſervice either in the Eaſt or the Weſt Indies.

The

The Cape of Good Hope is the only military ſtation that we have poſſeſſed of late years, where government was enabled to make a ſaving by feeding the ſoldier. What I mean by this is, where the ration, or ſettled proportion of victuals, could be furniſhed for a ſum of money leſs than that which is ſtopped out of his pay in conſideration of it. In other parts of the globe, government is a very conſiderable loſer by feeding the ſoldier; that is to ſay, his ration muſt be purchaſed for a ſum of money more than that which is deducted from his pay. The government conſents to this loſs for the accommodation of the ſoldier, who, on moſt ſtations, could not poſſibly ſubſiſt on his pay, on account of the dearneſs of proviſions. At the Cape of Good Hope each ration coſt the government ſomething leſs than ſixpence, which was the amount of the ſtoppage deducted in lieu of it. At home, and in different parts abroad, as I have been informed, the ration ſtands the government in different ſums from tenpence to half-a-crown.

At the Cape of Good Hope, ſome twenty years ago, two pound of butchers' meat coſt one penny; at the capture by the Engliſh the price had advanced to one pound for twopence; yet, notwithſtanding the increaſed demand, occaſioned by the addition of five thouſand troops and near three thouſand ſeamen, frequently more than this number, with all the various attempts and combinations that were practiſed (and, on a certain occaſion in the year 1800, very unwiſely countenanced by high authority,) to raiſe the price of this article, the contract for ſupplying the garriſon was never higher than at the rate of two and five-eights pounds for ſixpence. Two pounds of good

wholeſome bread might be generally purchaſed for twopence. Even in the midſt of a ſcarcity, which threatened a famine, bread roſe no higher than twopence the pound; and all kinds of fruit and vegetables are ſo abundant, and ſo cheap, as to be within the reach of the pooreſt perſon. A pint of good ſound wine may be procured for threepence; and, were it not for the circumſtance of the licence for ſelling wine by retail being farmed out as one ſource of the colonial revenue, a pint of the ſame wine would coſt little more than three-halfpence.

This farming out the wine licence was a ſubject of grievance to the ſoldier, as it compelled him to buy his wine in ſmall quantities at the licenſed houſes, when the civilians and houſekeepers were allowed to purchaſe it in caſks of twenty gallons, at the rate of five or ſix rix-dollars the caſk, which is juſt about half the retail price he was obliged to pay for it. Yet, vexatious as ſuch a regulation appeared to be, it was ſtill ſufficiently cheap to enable the ſoldier to purchaſe fully as much as was uſeful to him. Numbers of the ſoldiers, indeed, contrived to ſave money out of their pay. The 91ſt regiment of Highlanders, in particular, were known to have remitted a good deal of money to their families in Scotland; and many of the ſerjeants of the different regiments, at the evacuation of the colony, had ſaved from one to two hundred pounds in hard money.

In the year 1800 the government, in order to bring a little more money into the treaſury from the wine licence, directed, by proclamation, that the retail ſellers ſhould demand from the ſoldier the increaſed price of eightpence the bottle, inſtead of

ſix-

ſixpence, which, however, they had prudence enough to decline. The ſum brought into the government treaſury by tolerating this monopoly, averaged about ſeventy thouſand rix-dollars annually. But in the event of the Cape falling again into our hands, which ſooner or later muſt happen, if it be an object to ſecure our Indian poſſeſſions, it would be wiſe to ſupply this part of the revenue by ſome other means.

Government likewiſe derived other profits beſides thoſe which accrued from the cheapneſs of the rations. The Deputy Paymaſter-General drew bills on his Majeſty's Paymaſters-General in England, in exchange for the paper currency of the colony, in which all the contingent and extraordinary expences of the garriſon were paid. Theſe bills, except in the firſt few months when there was not yet any demand for remittances, and when, perhaps, their credit was not fully eſtabliſhed in the minds of the Dutch, always bore a premium againſt the paper, varying from five to thirty per cent., but fixed, for the greateſt part of the time, at twenty per cent. They would, indeed, have advanced to a much higher rate; for the merchant, unable to make his remittances to any great extent in colonial produce, or in India goods, which, if permitted, might have been injurious to the intereſts of the Eaſt India Company, was under the neceſſity of purchaſing theſe bills. Lord Macartney, however, conſidered it expedient to fix the premium at twenty per cent., deeming it right that government bills ſhould bear the higheſt premium of bills that might be in the market, but, at the ſame time, not to proceed to ſuch a height as to become oppreſſive either to the merchant or the public: So that if the ration was ſupplied to

government for fivepence-halfpenny in paper currency, the real coſt was little more than fourpence-halfpenny.

The amount of bills drawn for the contingent and extraordinary expences of the army, from the 1ſt of October 1795, when the colony was taken, to the 28th of July 1802, the time it ſhould have been evacuated, as appears from the Deputy Paymaſter's books, is 1,045,814*l.* 14*s.* 1*d.* upon part of which (for part was drawn at par for ſpecie) the profit derived to his Majeſty's government amounts to the ſum of 115,719*l.* 3*s.* 1*d.*

Another ſource of profit, which might have been very conſiderable, was derived from the importation of ſpecie. The ſubſiſtence of the ſoldiers, it may be obſerved, was always paid in hard money, and not in paper currency. The Spaniſh dollar was iſſued in payment to the troops at the rate of five ſhillings ſterling, which I imagine might have been purchaſed and ſent out at four ſhillings and fourpence each, making thus a profit of more than fifteen per cent. on the pay, as well as on the extraordinaries, of the army. The ſum that was thus imported amounted to 103,426*l.* 18*s.* 3*d.* Upon which, ſuppoſing the whole ſent out by government, which I underſtand was not exactly the caſe, though nearly ſo, the profits muſt have been 15,514*l.* at home, beſides an additional profit of 710*l.* 13*s.* 3*d.* ariſing from a ſmall quantity of ſpecie bought in the Cape. The government alſo ſent out about four thouſand pounds of copper money, in penny pieces, which were circulated at twopence, from which there was conſequently another profit derived of 4000*l.*

Shortly after the capture of the Cape, General Craig, finding it impoſſible to raiſe, upon bills, a ſufficient ſum of paper currency to defray the extraordinaries of the army, was reduced to the bold meaſure of ſtamping a new paper iſſue, on the credit of the Britiſh government, to the amount of fifty thouſand pounds; a ſum that was never redeemed from circulation, nor brought to any account, until the final reſtoration of the colony. So that the intereſt of this ſum for ſeven years produced a further profit to government of 17,500*l.*

By taking theſe ſums together, namely,

Profit on bills drawn -	£.	115,719	3	1
—— on ſpecie imported -		16,224	13	3
—— on copper money -		4,000	0	0
—— on paper money circulated		17,500	0	0
We have	£.	153,443	16	4

which may be conſidered as a clear gain to the government, (independent of the ſaving on each ration) and, conſequently, a leſſening of the expenditure that was occaſioned at the Cape of Good Hope.

As this expenditure has been ſtated to be ſo enormous, as more than to counterbalance the advantages reſulting from the poſſeſſion of the ſettlement, and we have already ſeen how important theſe advantages are, when conſidered in only one point of view, it may not be amiſs to point out, in as correct a manner as the nature of the ſubject will admit, the exact ſum expended

expended in any one year, in the military department, at the Cape of Good Hope. The year I ſhall take is from May 1797 to May 1798, when the garriſon was ſtrongeſt; conſiſting of

The 8th, 28th } Light Dragoons.

The 84th, 86th, 91ſt, Scotch Brigade } Infantry.

In that year the eſtimate was made up according to the following extract:

1. Subſiſtence of the non-commiſſioned officers and privates of the two regiments of dragoons and four regiments of infantry, for one year, according to the new rate of payment, deducting for rations and hoſpital charges,	55,729	2	6
2. Clothing and contingent expences for ditto,	28,133	13	2
3. Full pay of the commiſſioned officers of two regiments of dragoons, and four regiments of infantry for one year, according to the lateſt regulations, - -	43,667	14	8
4. Staff officers and hoſpital eſtabliſhment of one inſpector, two phyſicians, one purveyor, four ſurgeons, two apothecaries, and nine hoſpital mates, - - -	11,178	2	6
Carried forward £.	138,708	12	10

Brought forward	£. 138,708	12	10
5. Commiſſary-General's department, including engineers, which alone amounts to 17,225 *l.* 16 *s.* 5 *d.* - -	107,794	10	11
6. Ordnance department, including artillery expences, - - -	18,536	14	4
7. Deputy Quarter-Maſter General's Department, including lodging money to officers, which amounts to about 4000 *l.* and bat and forage for 200 days about 6000 *l.* in the whole - - -	25,000	0	0
Total amount of one year's expence	£. 290,039	18	1

Or, we may, perhaps, be able to come ſtill nearer the truth by taking the total expenditure of the whole ſeven years, thus:

Amount of bills drawn by the Deputy Paymaſter-General for paper and ſpecie, for the pay and ſubſiſtence of the non-commiſſioned officers and privates, and for the extraordinaries of the army for ſeven years - - -	1,045,814	14	1
Specie imported and bought (about) -	111,000	0	0
Clothing and contingent expences at the rate as above ſpecified per year - -	196,935	12	2
Full pay of the commiſſioned officers of ſix regiments, as above, for ſeven years	305,674	2	8
Ordnance department for ſeven years -	129,757	0	4
Total amount	£. 1,789,181	9	3

which

which total amount, divided by ſeven, gives 255,597*l.* 7*s.* for the annual average expence incurred in the military department at the Cape of Good Hope. But it would be the height of abſurdity to ſay, that even this ſum, moderate as it is, was an additional expence to Government in conſequence of the capture of this ſettlement; ſince it is not only compoſed of the expences of maintaining the garriſon, and the contingencies and extraordinaries of the army, but it includes, likewiſe, the pay, the ſubſiſtence, and the clothing of an army of five thouſand men. Now as theſe troops muſt have been fed, clothed, and paid in any other place, as well as at the Cape of Good Hope, and as I have ſhewn, at a much greater expence, it is certainly not fair to charge this ſum to the account of the garriſon of the Cape. Even in peace the commiſſioned officers would have received their half pay, which alone would amount to a ſum from 100,000*l.* to 150,000*l.*

There is little reaſon, therefore, in reality, for conſidering the Cape in the light of an expenſive ſettlement. In fact, the ſums of money, that have been expended there, dwindle into nothing upon a compariſon with ſome of the Weſt India iſlands, whoſe importance are a feather when weighed againſt that of the Cape of Good Hope. Viewing it only as a point of ſecurity to our Indian poſſeſſions, and as a nurſery for maturing raw recruits into complete ſoldiers, the queſtion of expence falls to the ground. Of the ſeveral millions that are annually raiſed for the ſupport of government at home, and its dependencies abroad, a ſmall fraction of one of theſe millions may ſurely be allowed for

for the maintenance of a ſtation whoſe advantages are incalculable.

But the article of expence, trifling even in war, could be no object whatſoever in time of peace. The fortifications, which were in the moſt ruinous condition when the place was taken, being finiſhed in a complete manner, would require no further expence than that of merely keeping the works in repair, which might amount, perhaps, to an annual ſum of five thouſand pounds. The contingencies and extraordinaries of the army could not, at the utmoſt, amount to twenty thouſand pounds; ſo that twenty-five or thirty thouſand pounds would be the extent of the contingent and extraordinary expences of the Cape in time of peace; a ſum that, by proper management, and a prudent application of the revenues of the colony, might eaſily be defrayed out of the public treaſury there, and leave a ſurplus adequate to all the demands of the civil department, together with the neceſſary repairs of public works and buildings.

The manner in which I calculate is thus: from a review of the colonial revenues, I find that the average in the Dutch Government in ten years, from 1784 to 1794 was little more than 100,000 rix dollars yearly, but that by the regulations and new impoſts made by the Dutch Commiſſaries General in 1793, the amount in the following year was 211,568 rix dollars. They afterwards experienced a conſiderable increaſe, and from the firſt year of Lord Macartney's adminiſtration they roſe gradually as follows:

From the 1ſt Oct. 1797 to the 30th Sept. 1798, they were - -	*R.*	*d.*	
	322,512	7	5
1ſt ditto 1798 to ditto 1799 -	360,312	0	0
1ſt ditto 1799 to ditto 1800 -	369,596	0	0
1ſt ditto 1800 to ditto 1801 -	450,713	2	4

And it is here not unworthy of notice, that from the moment of the preliminaries of peace being known they fell, the laſt year's produce, being only

From 1ſt Oct. 1801 to 30th Sept 1802 -	389,901	6	0

And in the following year, as far of it as was expired, they were ſtill leſs productive.

In this ſtate of progreſſive improvement, under the Britiſh Government, without a ſingle additional tax being laid, but on the contrary, ſome taken off, and others modified, arrears of land-rent remitted and again accumulating, I think, without any danger of exaggeration, we might reckon upon a net annual revenue of half a million rix dollars, or one hundred thouſand pounds currency. The annual average expenditure, including ſalaries and contingencies of departments, with the neceſſary repairs of public works and buildings, were, under the adminiſtrations of Lord Macartney and Lieutenant-General Dundas, at the moſt about 300,000 rix dollars or 60,000 *l.* Suppoſe then the contingencies and extraordinaries of the army to be 30,000 *l.* the whole ſum required would be 90,000 *l.* or 450,000 rix dollars, the exact amount of the colonial revenue at the cloſe of the year 1801.

The

The point of view, in which the importance of the Cape next preſents itſelf to our conſideration, is its local poſition, as being favourable for diſtributing troops to any part of the globe, and eſpecially to our ſettlements in the eaſt, with facility and diſpatch; which is by no means the leaſt among the advantages it poſſeſſes as a military ſtation. For however important to a depôt of troops the benefits may be that reſult from a healthy climate, and cheapneſs of ſubſiſtence, their value would be materially diminiſhed by great diſtance from, or difficulty of conveyance to, ſuch places where their ſervices may be wanted.

The longer the voyage the leſs effective will the troops be on their arrival, and delay is dangerous even to a proverb. Perhaps it is not ſaying too much, that we are indebted to the Cape for the conqueſt of Myſore and the overthrow of Tippoo; not merely from the reinforcements ſent from thence to join the Indian army, though they eminently contributed to the conqueſt of Seringapatam, but from the vigilance of Lord Macartney in detecting the tranſactions of the Sultaun's agents at the Iſle of France, of which, at that time, they were ignorant in India, and the active meaſures he took to communicate ſpeedy intelligence thereof to the Governor-General of Bengal. "I re-" ceived," the Marquis of Welleſley obſerves, in his diſpatch to the Court of Directors, "on the 18th of June 1798, a regular " authentication of the proclamation (of the Governor of the Iſle of France) in a letter from his Excellency the Earl of " Macartney, dated the 28th of March." And he acted, on

this intelligence, with that prudence, promptitude, and ſpirit, for which the character of the noble Marquis is ſo eminently diſtinguiſhed. The object of Tippoo was to gain time in order that he might ſtrengthen his poſition and augment his forces. But the rapid movement of our troops towards his capital, as ſoon as his hoſtile views were confirmed, fruſtrated his plans, and effected the total ſubverſion of his country. Both the moment of attack and the reinforcement from the Cape were acknowledged to be important; in either of which a failure might have proved fatal to the campaign, and would, at all events, have poſtponed the day of victory.

The almoſt incredible celerity, with which twelve hundred effective men joined the Egyptian army in high health and ſpirits from the Cape of Good Hope, is another inſtance that muſt force conviction of its vaſt importance as a military ſtation. Nor are the advantages afforded by its geographical poſition of acquiring and conveying intelligence with reſpect to the affairs of neighbouring nations, or of embarking troops, precarious or depending on chance; there being ſcarcely a week in the year in which Engliſh whalers or merchantmen, or ſhips of neutral powers, do not touch at the Cape, eſpecially on their outward-bound voyage. And moſt of theſe are willing to engage as tranſports.

It appears from the books of the Cuſtom-houſe, and the returns of the Captain of the port, that there ſailed from the Cape

In

In 1799	-	103 ſhips
1800	-	109 ditto
1801	-	130 ditto
1802	-	131 ditto

being, in four years, 473 ſhips,

beſides the men of-war and coaſting veſſels. Of theſe 82 were Americans, 66 Danes, 24 Portugueze, 15 from Hamburgh, and 6 Swedes, 4 from Pruſſia and Bremen, and the reſt Engliſh.

The Americans, for ſome years paſt, have been eſtabliſhing a very conſiderable carrying trade from the eaſtward on the ruins of the Dutch commerce, and have acquired no ſmall portion of the India and China trade. The ſhips of this nation have always found it convenient to touch at the Cape, partly for the ſake of refreſhing their crews, but with a view, at the ſame time, of diſpoſing of the whole or any part of their cargo to advantage. This cargo is generally lumber, or it is compoſed of what they quaintly term *notions*, from the great variety and aſſortment of goods which they take a fancy, or *notion*, may ſucceed. In payment of ſuch a cargo they are glad to get bills on India for hard money, which they carry to China to purchaſe teas, nankeens, and porcelain. From the Cape to India they are always willing to be employed as tranſports.

The ſituation is pretty much the ſame with regard to the Danes. But the aſſiſtance of neither the one nor the other could poſſibly be wanted, provided the numerous fleets of our Eaſt India Company were permitted to touch at the Cape.

Without the leaſt inconvenience to their commercial concerns, theſe ſhips might tranſport from England to the Cape a conſtant ſucceſſion of raw recruits to be formed there into complete ſoldiers, from whence they might take on board as many of the latter as ſhould be wanted to reinforce their vaſt armaments in India.

In a word, the advantages that England would acquire by retaining poſſeſſion of this grand out-work of all Aſia cannot ſufficiently be appreciated. Nor are theſe advantages to be conſidered as excluſively confined to England. Other nations trading to the eaſt would ſhare the benefit ariſing from the Cape as a Britiſh colony. During the late war, the Danes, the Swedes, the Hamburghers, and the Americans, were allowed to refreſh, and derived every advantage on the ſame terms as the Engliſh. The only diſtinction was an additional duty of five per cent. on goods brought in foreign bottoms. In all other reſpects the trade of the Cape was open to them in the ſame manner as to Britiſh ſubjects. There was no monopoly granted to individuals for ſerving foreign ſhipping with proviſions and refreſhments as was the caſe under the Dutch government; when it is well known they were obliged to pay at leaſt double the price of the market for every article brought on board. Were France in poſſeſſion of the Cape there is reaſon to ſuppoſe that, according to the commercial ſyſtem which her preſent government was endeavouring to eſtabliſh, the reſtrictions ſhe would impoſe at this important ſtation would amount to a total excluſion of foreign ſhipping.

To

To England the Cape is more valuable as a point of effectual ſecurity to her Indian trade and ſettlements than as a place of annoyance to other nations, or as to the means it affords of interrupting their commercial concerns. The unbounded credit of the Eaſt India Company, the immenſity of its capital employed, the ſuperior quality of Britiſh manufactures, and the low rate at which they can be afforded in foreign markets, will always enſure to them the beſt part of the trade to India and China, and give to England a preference before the other maritime powers of Europe, or that of America. No naval power, therefore, except France, could feel any jealouſy, nor entertain reaſonable grounds of objection againſt the Cape becoming a ſettlement of the Britiſh empire; but every one of them are very materially intereſted, and the Americans more eſpecially, that it ſhould not fall into the hands of France; who would not fail, on every ſlight occaſion, to aim at excluding her numerous ſhips from the Indian Seas, and endeavour to annihilate her growing commerce in the eaſt; whilſt to England, I again repeat it, the Cape is to be conſidered as chiefly important on account of the advantages it holds forth as a point of ſecurity to her valuable poſſeſſions in the eaſt, againſt the deſigns of an ambitious and implacable enemy.

We have already, indeed, experienced the truth of this remark. The Iſles of France and Bourbon were rendered uſeleſs to the French during the late war, and incapable of giving to us the leaſt annoyance in the Eaſtern Seas, from the moment that their ſhips of war and privateers had been deſtroyed by our cruizers from the Cape. They were neither able to ſend troops

to

to theſe iſlands from France, nor from thence to India. The trade of the Americans ſuffered no interruption in the Eaſtern Seas, nor that of the Portugueze in the Southern Atlantic. In the hands of the French it would have been a point equally convenient for aſſiſting the Spaniards at Rio de la Plata, or attacking the Portugueze at Rio de Janeiro: whilſt againſt us it would have furniſhed the moſt effectual means of endangering the ſecurity to our Indian trade and ſettlements.

The poſſeſſion of this place, at an early period of the war, ſo completely excluded every hoſtile power from the Indian Seas, threw ſo great an increaſe of commerce into our hands by that excluſion, left us in ſuch quiet and undiſturbed dominion in the eaſtern world, and gave us ſo many ſolid advantages unexampled in any former war, that one would ſuppoſe it to be a moral impoſſibility for the Eaſt India Company to be unmindful of the ſource from whence they ſprung. But things that are apparently of little value in themſelves, are ſometimes magnified by intenſe obſervation, ſwell into importance by diſcuſſion, and become indiſpenſable by contention; whilſt objects of real moment loſe their magnitude when ſlightly viewed, or ſeen only at a diſtance, grow little by neglect, and uſeleſs without a quarrel.

The French ſeem to have been aware of the truth of this obſervation, by avoiding any diſcuſſion, in the late negociation for peace, reſpecting the importance of the Cape of Good Hope. Their views, no doubt, were well known to our Government, which induced it, in the very firſt ſketch of the conditions of peace

peace, to propoſe that the Cape of Good Hope ſhould be reſtored to the Dutch, or be declared a free port. The latter, however, happened to be juſt what France could have wiſhed, and it was, therefore, on further conſideration, reſtored in full ſovereignty to its ancient poſſeſſors. France, finding that her purpoſe would be completely anſwered when once it was reſcued out of the hands of the Engliſh, made no objection to this arrangement. Ceylon ſhe conſidered as a leſs important ſacrifice, although ſhe knew it to be a much greater to Holland than that of the Cape. The latter has always been an expenſive ſettlement to the Dutch, whilſt from the former they derived a conſiderable revenue. Had the Cape been demanded on the part of England, there can be little doubt the French would have been no leſs tenacious in rejecting the propoſal than they were with regard to Malta; being well convinced that theſe two poſſeſſions, in the hands of England, would be two grand points of ſecurity to her Indian empire, of which they have long been ſo jealous.

I have no intention to diſcuſs the comparative importance of theſe two ſtations to England, conſidering them both to be eſſentially neceſſary to her independence as well as to the protection of her commerce and ſettlements, ſo long as the reſtleſs and aggrandizing ſpirit of the French Government ſhall continue to diſturb the peace of Europe. It may not, however, be improper to endeavour to point out, and to compare ſome of the inconveniences that would neceſſarily have reſulted to our trade and ſettlements in the Eaſt Indies during the late war,

from either one or the other of theſe places being in the hands of an ambitious enemy.

In the firſt place, it may be conſidered as a general principle that has long been rooted in the French Government, and from which it will never depart, to aim at the overthrow of our power in India, and to endeavour to erect upon its ruins an empire of their own. To accompliſh this point, and in conſequence thereof, in the language of the preſent Corſican ruler, "To ſtrike a blow at England which will be followed up with "its complete deſtruction," they know there are but two roads to take: the one by getting poſſeſſion of Egypt and Syria, where they might collect and ſeaſon their troops for the grand expedition, either by ſea or land; the other by occupying the Cape of Good Hope. The former they tried in the hope of ſucceſs, becauſe they knew the other to be a deſperate attempt. Had they, or their forced ally, the Dutch, kept poſſeſſion of the Cape, there is no reaſon for ſuppoſing that the ſame fleet which ſailed for Egypt, might not have ſailed, from ſome other port, to this ſtation; or that they could not have ſlipped out from time to time almoſt any number of troops they might have thought proper to ſend. Theſe troops, when ſeaſoned and prepared at the Cape, for a warmer climate, could eaſily have been tranſported to the Iſles of France and Bourbon, where the French would not only continue to draw ſupplies from the former, and to victual and proviſion their ſhips of war and tranſports from thence, as in the American war, but where they could not fail to have received a material reinforcement to their ſhipping from the

the Dutch; for it may be recollected, that the fleet under the command of Admiral Lucas reached Saldanha Bay, in ſpite of the obſtacles which the Southern Atlantic preſented, by the Cape being then in our hands. This fleet combined with that of the French would have required a naval force, on our part, in the Indian Seas that might not have been quite convenient for us to ſpare. It is poſſible, alſo, they might have eluded the vigilance of our force, as their object would not have been ſo much to fight us, as to have put in execution a plan that many are inclined to ſuppoſe floated in the mind of Buonaparte when he took the road of Egypt, though he was ſoon convinced of the futility of it by that route without at leaſt double the number of troops; his whole army being barely ſufficient to keep the conquered country in ſubjection.

Among many reaſons, which led to this conjecture, was the work of *Mr. Anquetil Duperron* on India, which, as I have already obſerved, being withheld from publication for fifteen years on account of the information it contained, and of which it was ſuppoſed the Engliſh might avail themſelves, was haſtily iſſued from the preſs on the failing of this memorable expedition; being intended, moſt probably, as a guide for the officers on their arrival in India. This intelligent writer, who, to a mind capable of obſervation and deep reflection, adds the great advantage of local knowledge, fixes on the coaſt of Malabar as the foundation and corner-ſtone of their long projected empire in India. The conſiderations which induce him to give this coaſt the preference are, among others, the facility of poſſeſſing the paſſes of the neighbouring mountains and of thus ſecuring

the internal commerce of Hindoſtan—the opportunity it would afford of entering into an alliance with the Mahrattas, whom he conſiders as a warlike and faithful people—the eaſy intercourſe that might be maintained from this coaſt with the Perſian gulph, the Red Sea, the Iſles of France and Bourbon, Madagaſcar, and the Cape of Good Hope.

Theſe are certainly important conſiderations, and demand all the vigilance and attention of our Government in India. Even a ſmall force of French troops, had they been thrown upon the coaſt of Malabar, at the very moment when our forces were drawn off into the Myſore, againſt the Sultaun's army, might have proved fatal to our poſſeſſions on this coaſt. The uſurper would, no doubt, have obtained his reinforcement from the Iſle of France, and probably without our knowledge, rendering, by their means, the conqueſt of Seringapatam doubtful. If, in ſuch a ſtate of things, the French forces could have gained a footing at Bombay, Goa, or Guzzarat, and intrigued themſelves into an alliance with the Mahratta powers, though it might not have realized their project of an Indian empire, it would, at leaſt, have been deſtructive of our poſſeſſions in the weſt of the peninſula, to hold which, indeed, Mr. Anquetil conſiders as fatal to our power in India.

On this ſubject his opinion is not ſingular; before the overthrow of the Myſore kingdom, there were many of our own countrymen, whoſe ſentiments in this reſpect accorded with his; and who, like himſelf, have not only a profound knowledge of Indian politics, but are well acquainted with the phy-

ſical and moral character of the natives, their ſeveral connections and relations; and who, at the ſame time, poſſeſs the advantage that local information ſo eminently affords.

Theſe gentlemen were then fully perſuaded, that if the native powers of India could once totally get rid of Europeans, they never would again admit them as inmates, if they could poſſibly avoid it; and that if we fairly relinquiſhed the Malabar and Coromandel coaſts, it would not be difficult to keep others out of them for ever. It might fairly be aſked, indeed, if our preſent poſſeſſions there anſwer to us the advantages expected from them? Do they produce a ſurplus revenue, either in money or merchandize, over and above their immediate occaſions and expences, to ſay nothing of the extraordinary charges they are expoſed to from inſurrection or invaſion? Have they not reabſorbed, not only all their own reſources, but drained Bengal of immenſe ſupplies to preſerve them from periſhing? Have we, or can we expect to find, interior reſources there to depend on, without having recourſe to Bengal for ſupport? If we have not, and the India budget convinces us that we have not, would it be unwiſe to take early meaſures for converting our preſent hollow truce with the native powers of Southern India into a ſolid alliance with them, and (by the ceſſion of what we can never hold at all without jealouſy and envy, and never can hold long without conteſt,) for a valuable conſideration, which, no doubt, might be had, cut away every inch of ground there, which the French might hope to ſtand upon. In ſuch caſe the poſſeſſion of the Cape or Ceylon would then be of leſs moment to us, our Indian force would be concentrated and invulnerable

in

in the provinces of Bengal, which, with China, afford an ample revenue, and a beneficial commerce, that no enemy is likely to deprive us of for a long period of time. But theſe ſpeculations would all have vaniſhed into air, had we retained the Cape at a peace, the poſſeſſion of which, from its poſition on the globe, would contribute greatly to ſecure our territories in Southern India, the danger to which is otherwiſe ſo much to be apprehended. The conqueſt of Myſore has certainly contributed in no ſmall degree to our ſecurity on the Malabar coaſt; has conſolidated our power in Southern India, and rendered the junction of foreign forces with the Mahratta powers more difficult if not altogether impracticable. On the northern parts of this coaſt only are we vulnerable in India by ſea.

Suppoſing, however, the views of the enemy, on the Malabar coaſt, to have failed, they would, at leaſt, have been enabled, with the aſſiſtance of the Dutch, to annoy and cut up our Indian and China trade by the multitude of cruizing veſſels ſent out from their iſlands of France and Bourbon, and from the Cape of Good Hope. Even under every diſadvantage, the French frigates and the neſt of privateers on the Mauritius ſtation did much miſchief at the commencement of the late war, and although they had few reinforcements from France, it required five years, with a very active and powerful ſquadron from the Cape and from India, before they were all taken and deſtroyed. What then muſt have been the caſe, if, inſtead of the Engliſh poſſeſſing this important ſtation, it had been an enemy's port for aſſembling, refitting, and refreſhing the combined fleets of the French and Dutch? It is unneceſſary to obſerve,

ſerve, that neither of theſe powers would have found much difficulty in reaching the Cape with ſingle ſhips, when we have an inſtance of a whole fleet of Dutch ſhips arriving there notwithſtanding they were fifteen weeks on their paſſage. This ſingle fleet, acting from the Cape, might have been productive of much inconvenience, expence, and injury to England, and eſpecially to the trade of the Eaſt India Company. Were, indeed, the French and Dutch to keep up a proper naval force at this place, it is extremely doubtful if any of the homeward-bound fleets of the Eaſt India Company would ever reach England, or if they did, it would be under an expence of convoy ſo enormous, that the profits on the cargoes would be inadequate to meet it; but of this we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak more particularly in the next chapter. Such are the dangers to be apprehended in conſequence of the Cape being held by an enemy.

The principal diſadvantages that would reſult to England by leaving Malta in the poſſeſſion of France appear to be, in the firſt place, the power it would give them of excluding our ſhips from that port, the beſt, undoubtedly, in the Mediterranean, and of increaſing their force there to the complete deſtruction of our Mediterranean trade; and ſecondly, the means it would afford of facilitating their views upon Egypt, by enabling them to throw into that country a force ſufficient to renew their project upon India.

With regard to the extent and importance of the Mediterranean trade I ſpeak with diffidence, but I am not apprehenſive

of

of hazarding much by ſaying that it admits not of a compariſon with that of India and China, though, perhaps, too valuable to be altogether relinquiſhed. In this reſpect the value of Malta is certainly leſs important than that of the Cape of Good Hope. But the ſecond point is of a more ſerious nature. Some, however, are of opinion, that although the ſubjugation of Egypt may at any time be accompliſhed by the French, through Malta, yet, in ſuch an event, we have every reaſon to expect that the vigilance and activity of a Britiſh fleet, and the valour of Britiſh ſoldiers, would always enable us to diſpute with them the paſſage of Syria. That, admitting even they ſhould ſucceed in collecting at Suez an army equal to their wiſhes, the difficulties of tranſporting this army to India would be almoſt inſurmountable. If it be meant by thoſe who ſupport this opinion that the attempt is to be made by ſea, whilſt the Cape remained in our poſſeſſion, I have little heſitation in agreeing with them that it would certainly fail. During the laſt war, when their troops had marched to Suez, they had not a ſingle ſhip in the Red Sea that dared to carry the French flag, nor, with the Cape and Ceylon in our hands, could they at any future period have a fleet of any deſcription without our permiſſion.

But we will even allow them to have aſſembled at Suez a fleet of their own ſhips, or of the country coaſters, ſufficient to take on board their armament deſtined for the Malabar coaſt. The next queſtion is, where, or in what manner, are they to victual and to proviſion ſuch a fleet for a month or five weeks paſſage, and eſpecially in the ſupply of the indiſpenſable article of water? The fountains of Moſes, it is true, furniſh a ſupply

of

of water at all ſeaſons of the year, but they are ſituated at twelve miles diſtance from Suez. Water may be, likewiſe, and is, collected in tanks or reſervoirs near the town, but it ſoon grows fetid. The difficulty, however, of victualling and watering ſuch a fleet, though great, is not inſurmountable, and therefore may be allowed to be got over.

The dangerous navigation of the Red Sea, in which it appears not fewer than fifteen armed ſhips were loſt between the time of the French entering Egypt, and the ſigning of the definitive treaty of peace, is the next obſtacle that preſents itſelf, and which may alſo be ſurmounted. But as the navigation down this ſea can only be performed ſix months in the year, on account of the periodical winds which there prevail, we can always know, within ſix months, when ſuch a fleet would attempt to paſs the narrow ſtrait of Babelmandel, and be prepared accordingly. This ſtrait is completely commanded by the iſland of Perim, againſt which there is no other objection but the want of water. If, however, we have allowed the French to ſurmount ſo many difficulties before they can arrive at the ſtrait of Babelmandel, we may ſurely give ourſelves the credit of being able to overcome this ſingle objection againſt the iſland of Perim. A reſervoir to collect and preſerve rain water might be conſtructed; or, by digging below the level of the ſea, freſh water would, in all probability, be obtained; or, at any rate, water might be tranſported thither from the continent, ſufficient for the ſupply of the ſmall garriſon that would be neceſſary to protect the ſtrait. The poſſeſſion of this iſland, with a few frigates, is ſaid to be competent for the deſtruction of all the craft

that could poſſibly be collected and ſent down from Suez and all the other ports of the Red Sea. Little, therefore, is to be apprehended from the deſigns of the French on India by the way of the Red Sea, ſo long as we can command the ſtrait and victual the force neceſſary to be ſtationed there; advantages which the poſſeſſion of the Cape and of Ceylon would always enable us to make uſe of.

But if through the Cape the French can contrive to aſſemble and victual a large armament in the Indian Seas, we muſt have an immenſe force to prevent ſuch an armament from co-operating with a body of troops that may previouſly have been thrown into Egypt and Syria, a plan which they probably intended to have carried into effect, had not the ambitious views of the Conſul put us on our guard, and rendered the preſent war both juſt and neceſſary. Such a plan, at any future period of peace, may eaſily be realized, long before any intelligence of it could reach India, or any force be ſent out from England to counteract it, if Malta and the Cape of Good Hope were acceſſible to the French, but could not be carried into execution provided the Cape be left in our hands, and converted into a naval and military ſtation, for which it is ſo peculiarly adapted.

What the conſequence might be of an attempt entirely by land, from Greece or Syria to India, is not quite ſo certain; and under the preſent circumſtances of the French, it is not improbable that the experiment will be made by land and not by ſea. If, indeed, the emperor Paul had lived to carry into execution his wild but dangerous ſcheme, of aſſembling a large body

body of troops on the eaſtern borders of the Caſpian Sea, to act in concert with the French, it is difficult to ſay where the miſchief of their quixotiſm might have ended. The minds of men, intoxicated with power and maddened by ambition, are not to be meaſured by the ſame motives which uſually guide the actions of mankind. It is certain that neither Paul nor Buonaparte regarded the great waſte of men that ſuch a project would have occaſioned. They muſt have known that by no precaution nor exertion could they have made ſure of a conſtant ſupply of proviſions for ſo vaſt a combined army; but ſuch knowledge would not have prevented them from making the experiment, the lives of their people being objects of little conſideration with them. If, like the hoſt of Xerxes, they ſhould be compelled to feed on graſs and the ſhrubs of the thicket, or, like the army of Cambyſes, in their march againſt the Ethiopians, be reduced to the ſtill more dreadful neceſſity of killing every tenth man to feed the reſt, what remorſe would ſuch calamities occaſion in the breaſt of that man, who could deliberately put to death by poiſon the companions of his victories, for no other fault than the misfortune of being diſabled by ſickneſs?

Yet, although vaſt numbers would neceſſarily periſh in ſuch an enterprize, the reſult might, nevertheleſs, be the means of ſhaking our ſecurity in India; and this would be conſidered as a moſt ample compenſation for any loſs the enemy might ſuſtain in the expedition. The obſtacles that have been urged againſt it were, perhaps, equally great and numerous when the Macedonian hero undertook to march his army acroſs the ſame countries; yet he overcame them all. And if Alexander could ſuc-

ceed in penetrating into India, why not Buonaparte, ſince military ſkill and tactics are now ſo much ſuperior among Europeans to what they were in his day, whilſt they have remained nearly ſtationary in the nations of the eaſt? No ſufficient reaſon can, perhaps, be aſſigned why the one, with the ſame or with increaſed means, and with talents, perhaps, not leſs ſuited to apply theſe means to the beſt advantage, ſhould not be able to proceed to the ſame length that the other did.

That no part of his army would ever return is extremely probable. When a conſiderable proportion had periſhed by fatigue, by ſickneſs, and by famine, the reſt, in all human probability, by change of climate, manner of living, and by intermarrying with a new people, would produce a new race, and that race would ceaſe to be Frenchmen. An army for ſuch an expedition muſt, in the outſet, be immenſe, to afford a ſufficient number of men to maintain the conquered countries through which they muſt paſs. The farther they proceeded the more formidable would be the enemies left in their rear; and on their approach to India, there are good grounds for ſuppoſing that the native powers would keep them in check, jealous, as they now muſt be, of admitting new European viſitors, after the dearly bought experience they have already had of their old friends from that quarter. Theſe, however, are contingencies that amount to no ſecurity of a failure in the main object of the expedition, namely, the deſtruction of our empire in the eaſt. We ſhall, perhaps, come neareſt the mark by conſidering the moſt ſerious, and probably the only, obſtacle that would impede their progreſs in the countries that lie between Syria and India,

to be occaſioned by the great difficulty of procuring proviſions and tranſporting the baggage and ammunition that would be required for ſo large an army. But even theſe are difficulties which, by an enterprizing and determined mind, would be ſurmounted.

Whether the French really intended to march an army by land, in the event of their having reduced Acre and got poſſeſſion of Syria, ſeems to be doubtful; but it is pretty evident they entertained hopes, at one time, of being able to co-operate with the Sultaun of Myſore by the Red Sea, though it does not appear that any previous plan had been concerted for tranſporting their troops from Egypt to India. The whole expedition, indeed, ſhould ſeem to have been, in the firſt inſtance, a momentary thought, without any further plan or deſign than that of diverting the original intention of an armament, which was vauntingly called the Army of England. The fact ſeems to be, that the power and the influence of Buonaparte, who had the command of this army, had rendered him the object of jealouſy and hatred to the Directory, who were equally glad with himſelf to have an excuſe for changing the current of theſe vaſt preparations from a hazardous, almoſt hopeleſs, enterprize, whoſe failure would have ended in equal diſgrace both to the Directory and their general, into a romantic expedition that had the ſanction of the old government for the attempt, and, at all events, was more promiſing of ſucceſs than the pretended invaſion of the Britiſh iſlands. The fame of Buonaparte required, in fact, to be ſupported, at that time, by ſome new and ſignal adventure which might be the means of reſcuing him from the ſecondary

condary part the Directory had reſerved for him, by the command of a pretended expedition againſt their only remaining enemy. In this ſituation ſome of his friends, it is ſuppoſed, ſuggeſted to him the conqueſt of Egypt, which had long been an object of the French Government under the monarchy. The brilliancy of ſuch a conqueſt was well ſuited to the enterprizing ſpirit and ambitious views of the Corſican. It is ſuppoſed, alſo, that the memoir which the philoſopher Leibnitz preſented to Louis XIVth was put into his hands, and that the grand objects held out therein took ſtrong poſſeſſion of his mind. "*The* "*ſovereignty of the ſeas—the Eaſtern Empire—the overthrow of* "*the Porte—and univerſal arbitration*," were all to be accompliſhed by the conqueſt of Egypt, a conqueſt that was reſerved for his mighty arm. "Soldiers," ſays he, on the departure of the expedition, "you are about to undertake a conqueſt, the "effects of which, upon commerce and civilization, will be in- "calculable; and the blow it will give to England will be fol- "lowed up with its deſtruction."

But vain are often the hopes of man! The brilliancy of ſuch a conqueſt, however alluring at a diſtance, ſeems to have faded on the approach. Whether his unſucceſsful attempt againſt Acre had damped his ardour, and thrown an inſurmountable barrier to any views he might have entertained againſt India, or whether he meant to be ſatisfied with annexing Egypt to the colonies of France, is ſtill matter of conjecture; but it would ſeem from one of his letters, publiſhed in the intercepted correſpondence, written at a time when he had not the leaſt idea of being baffled in his ſchemes, and his army finally driven out by the

the Engliſh, that the acquiſition of Egypt was the end of his deſign, and that his intention was to return to Paris as ſoon as the neceſſary arrangements could be made for its future government. His object, no doubt, as appears from his letters to the King of England and the Emperor of Germany, was to obtain a general peace, and by certain ſacrifices on the part of France or its allies, to retain poſſeſſion of this new colony, from whence, at ſome diſtant period, when he had aſſembled a ſufficient force, and prepared the neceſſary quantity of ſhipping in the Red Sea, he might have availed himſelf of a favourable opportunity of making a deſcent on the Malabar coaſt. In ſuch an event he was well aware that England, at that time, would never have relinquiſhed the Cape of Good Hope, which he might therefore have propoſed as an equivalent for Egypt. The importance which the French have attached to this halfway ſtation between Europe and India, appears from the conferences which took place between Lord Malmeſbury and Monſieur *De la Croix*, wherein the latter perſiſted that the Cape of Good Hope was of infinitely greater importance to England than the Netherlands were to France, and that if our demands for keeping it were acquieſced in, it ſhould be conſidered as a full and ample compenſation for them. " If," ſays he, " you " are maſters of the Cape and Trincomalée, we ſhall hold all " our ſettlements in India, and the Iſles of France and Bourbon " entirely at the tenure of your will and pleaſure; they will be " ours only as long as you chooſe we ſhould retain them; you " will be ſole maſters in India, and we ſhall be entirely de- " pendent on you." On one occaſion he vehemently exclaimed, " Your Indian empire alone has enabled you to ſub-

" ſidize

" ſidize all the powers of Europe againſt us, and your monopoly " of the Indian trade has put you in poſſeſſion of a fund of in- " exhauſtible wealth !"

As the French, in all human probability, will very ſoon be deprived of all their colonies in the weſt, they will be more anxious to increaſe their eſtabliſhments in the eaſt; and however limited might have been the extent of their views on the memorable expedition to Egypt, there cannot now be a difference of opinion on the ſubject. India is, undoubtedly, their object, and to gain that object they will leave no meaſures untried, nor regard the ſacrifice of thouſands. They have now, indeed, ſtronger motives than ever for attempting the deſtruction of our power in the eaſt. Driven from the moſt valuable of their Weſt India ſettlements, by a conduct of which the conſequences might eaſily have been foreſeen, and in a fair way of loſing the reſt, they will ſeek for reparation in Egypt and in India. If, however, England can ſucceed in keeping them out of the Eaſtern Seas, the feeble remains of their maritime ſtrength muſt ſpeedily be extinguiſhed; for without colonies they can have little or no foreign trade, and conſequently no ſeamen. To effect this deſireable end, it will be indiſpenſably neceſſary for England to regain poſſeſſion of the Cape of Good Hope, which, with Malta and Ceylon, are the beſt guarantees for the tranquillity of our Indian trade and ſettlements, and without which their ſecurity muſt always be conſidered as precarious.

It is almoſt ſuperfluous to obſerve how much every nation of Europe is intereſted, that the power of the Britiſh empire ſhould,

ſhould, at this moment, be upheld by every poſſible ſecurity that may enable her to reſiſt the overwhelming and inſatiable ambition of France. Do the other powers vainly hope to meet a better fate under her triumphant arms than Holland, Hanover, or Switzerland have experienced, where, before the palſying arm of French tyranny had deſtroyed their health and vigour, the people were proſperous, happy, and free? Would Denmark or Sweden, Pruſſia or the principalities of Germany, be treated with more conſideration than the Italian provinces have been? Will Spain and Portugal increaſe their influence, wealth, and commerce by being degraded into tributary provinces of France, and do they promiſe themſelves a better ſecurity of their colonies by the humiliating alliance? Nothing, ſurely, but the moſt morbid apathy could prevent theſe and the reſt of Europe from riſing in a maſs to wipe off the diſgrace that has already fallen on ſome, and momentarily threatens the reſt. How is it poſſible that thoſe powers, who yet have the means of reſcuing Europe from univerſal miſery, can remain inactive, and inſenſible of their own impending danger? A little iſland, animated with a great ſoul, is their only ſecurity, and if that ſhould fail, the tyrant's fell graſp will ſoon reach them all. The ſyſtem, deeply rooted in the mind of the Conſular Government, appears to be that of univerſal and arbitrary dominion—to reduce all Europe into gallic provinces as Aſia fell under the yoke of Rome.

Nor would the dreadful effects of French aggrandizement be confined to Europe, were they not completely checked by the maritime power of Great Britain. Aſia, Africa, and South America would ſoon be overrun with Frenchmen. No one can

doubt, for a moment, what the fate of Egypt would be if England ſhould relinquiſh the poſſeſſion of Malta. The Firſt Conſul, indeed, in an unguarded moment of frenzy, has moſt unequivocally avowed it. The deſtruction of the Ottoman Government is another object of French ambition. One of the moſt intelligent of the French officers, in his correſpondence with the Executive Directory, obſerves, "The Ottoman Empire is ge-
"nerally regarded as an old edifice, tottering to its fall. The
"European powers have long been preparing to divide its ſcat-
"tered fragments, and many politicians conceive that the cataſ-
"trophe is cloſe at hand. In this ſuppoſition, they think it but
"right that France ſhould have her ſhare of the ſpoils; *and the*
"*part allotted to her is Egypt.*"

But let thoſe profeſſed Coſmopolites, who, from principles of pretended humanity, declare themſelves friends to the diſmemberment of the Turkiſh Empire, reflect ſeriouſly on the conſequences that would inevitably enſue were France concerned in the diſſolution and partition of this government. However deſirable it may ſeem to free the Greeks from the miſerable yoke under which they long have groaned, yet a ſudden tranſition from ſlavery to freedom would ſcarcely be borne with more moderation by the Greeks, than by the French at home or the negroes in the Weſt India iſlands. Nor would the horrors of a revolution be confined to the Turkiſh provinces. The licentious army who might effect it, trained and accuſtomed to rapine and plunder, led on by needy or ambitious officers, who, on their part, are ſpurred by the aggrandizing views of their government, would not be content to ſit down with Egypt as their

ſhare

ſhare of the plunder. As Malta was the ſtep that led them to Egypt, ſo would Egypt be to Syria, and Syria to the poſſeſſion of India; to the plunder of that wealth which, in their opinion, is the great ſupport of Britain. Thus would the ſcourge of their inordinate ambition be felt from the Nile to the Ganges, and from thence, in all probability, to the Yellow Sea. And by adverting to the geographical poſition of the ſouthern extremity of Africa, in relation to other countries, and to the advantages it commands as a military ſtation, we ſhall perceive with what eaſe might all the ports of South America be made ſubſervient to their ambitious views, and how ſpeedily that great continent from the iſthmus of Darien to Terra del Fuego would fall into their inſatiable graſp. The accompliſhment of theſe objects, chimerical as they may appear, are prevented only by the tranſcendant and invincible ſtrength of the Britiſh navy.

As it muſt therefore obviouſly be the intereſt of the whole world that the reſtleſs and aggrandizing ſpirit of France ſhould effectually be counteracted, and as the Cape of Good Hope and Malta in her poſſeſſion would forward her views at univerſal dominion, there can be no reaſonable objections made on the part of the other powers of Europe againſt theſe two grand points of ſecurity being left, at a general peace, in the hands of England, or, at all events, to be protected by Engliſh garriſons, as ſome guarantee againſt the deſigns of the general enemy of the human race.

As the importance of every military ſtation muſt depend, in a conſiderable degree, on the ſufficiency of the works that either

are already conſtructed for its defence againſt internal or external attack, or on the local advantages it poſſeſſes of being rendered defencible, it may be expected I ſhould here ſay ſomething on this ſubject. Being no profeſſional man, I am aware, in doing this, of the riſk I run of laying myſelf open to the cenſure of ſome who are ſo, particularly as I have heard ſo many and ſuch contrary opinions advanced as to the beſt means of attacking and of defending the Cape of Good Hope. The little I have to offer on the ſubject will be chiefly deſcriptive; and as to the defence of the place my ideas will be grounded on the opinion of thoſe whoſe ſkill in their profeſſions, and whoſe ſound judgment in the ordinary affairs of life, joined to their local knowledge, entitle ſuch opinion to ſome degree of conſideration. It may be obſerved, however, that there are not, perhaps, two officers who perfectly agree on this ſubject.

By the defence of the Cape of Good Hope, is meant only that of the peninſular promontory, containing the two bays which are the uſual reſort of ſhipping, and on the northern part of which the town is ſituated. And for the better illuſtration of what follows, I have added a military map of the ſaid peninſula, the outline of which was taken, I believe, ſome years ago by a French engineer, was afterwards filled up by different officers in the Dutch ſervice, and was examined, corrected, and verified with great care and accuracy, by Captain (now Lieutetenant-Colonel) Bridges of the Britiſh engineers, under whoſe directions ſeveral new and important works were conſtructed by order of Sir James Craig. For the ſake of conveniency, I found it neceſſary to reduce the ſcale to half the ſize of the original

To face page 205.

MILITARY PLAN
OF THE
CAPE PENINSULA
drawn by order of the Dutch Government
and revised and corrected by
Lieut Col Bridges Roy! Engineer.

TABLE BAY

Deep sandy Isthmus

with some irregularity

of Surface

High Sand Hills

Hout or Wood Bay

Bloedhouse Battery

CHAPMANS BAY

Kalk Bay

Muizenberg or Fish Pt

Zeer or Fish Bay

Elsies Bay

Gabrielles or Mackerell Bay

Simons Bay

Battery

PART OF

FALSE BAY

Cape Point
34° 21' 30" S.

References

A The Citadel
B Cape Town
C Table Mountain 3582 Ft High
D Devils Hill 3315
E Lions Head 2160
F Lions Rump 1145
G Craigs Tower & Battery
H Fort de Knokke
I The landing place & Wharf
K Roggebay Battery
L Amsterdam Battery
M Changenne Battery
N Battery de Mouille
O Little Battery
P Society House
Q Camps Bay
R The orange
S Ecksteinberg
T Zandebosch
U Estate called Bandenberg
V Dº Welgelegen
W Dº of Joubert
X Dº Rebelet
Y La rue de Mer
Z Roode Bloem
1 The old Corn Mill
2 The Salt River
3 Farm called Zonnebloem
4 Buurden or Horse Island
5 Salt River
6 Liesbecks River
7 The Old Mouth
8 Great Road to False Bay
9 Gordons Battery
10 Cokburns Battery

References

11 The Sea Vlaey
12 Monicks Lines
13 Breyers Estate
14 Kruyers dº
15 Herkules dº
16 Berghe dº
17 Hebrews dº
18 Hunting dº
19 Kreskens dº
20 Langerjans dº
21 Estate called Stellenberg
22 Dº Rust en werk
23 Dº Vredenhuff
24 Dº of Baltus
25 Wynberg
26 Estate of De Waal
27 Klaasenbosch
28 Goed geloof
29 Witteboomen or the Silver Trees
30 Vinekens Estate
31 Great Constantia Estate
32 Little Constantia dº
33 Brinks Farm
34 Elsteins Fº called Long vlei
35 The English Camp
36 The Deep River
37 Van Elsteins Estate
38 Lecknaars dº
39 Rousseaus dº
40 Lake nearly dry in Summer
41 New lands
42 Paradise
43 Keurboom
44 Van Reenens Estate

Published Feb. 1st 1803 by Gadsall & Dean New Strand.

drawing, and have added to the Dutch ſcale of roeds one of Engliſh yards, the former being to the latter as $4\frac{118}{1000}$ to 1.

This military plan, together with the bays, I have thought it expedient to publiſh, as multiplied copies of them are in the poſſeſſion not only of the government and officers at the Cape, but alſo of French officers in Europe; and it is preſumed they may be of uſe to thoſe who, perhaps, may hereafter be ſent on an expedition againſt this important ſettlement without poſſeſſing local knowledge, although, for ſuch a purpoſe, and againſt ſo extenſive a colony, it would be highly adviſeable to ſelect ſuch as were well acquainted not only with the fortified peninſula, but alſo with the different bays and paſſes of the country, the manners of the coloniſts and their reſources, and, above all, with the habits of the native Hottentots.

Cape Town, which may be called the capital of the colony, is ſituated on the ſouth-eaſt angle of Table Bay. It uſually happens that the advantages of the bay, in forming a new ſettlement, determines the choice of the ſite for the town; but, in this inſtance, the convenience of a plentiful ſtream of pure limpid water, ruſhing out of the Table Mountain, was the primary object to which the bay was ſubſervient. Had this not been the caſe, the firſt ſettlers would unqueſtionably have given the preference to Saldanha Bay, whoſe only defect is the want of freſh water near it; whereas Table Bay is faulty in every point that conſtitutes a proper place for the reſort of ſhipping; and ſo boiſterous, for four months in the year, as totally to exclude all ſhips from entering it.

As

As this, however, became the ſeat of the petty concerns in which the Dutch Eaſt India Company allowed its ſervants to traffic, and, under certain reſtrictions, the other ſettlers to carry on with foreign ſhips, a commerce that was chiefly confined to the ſupply of proviſions and refreſhments in exchange for Indian and European articles, they found it neceſſary to build a fort for the protection of their property and of the Company's warehouſes againſt the attempts of the natives.

As the trade to India increaſed, and the Cape, in conſequence, became more frequented, it was deemed expedient to extend the works, and to erect a citadel that ſhould ſerve as a defence againſt any attack either by land or by ſea. This citadel is the preſent caſtle, a regular pentagon fort, with two ravelins and ſome other outworks, and ſurrounded by a wet ditch; but ſo injudiciouſly placed, in the very loweſt part, or ſink, of the valley, that although it commands the town and part of the anchorage, itſelf is commanded by the ground riſing from it in a ſlope to the Devil's Hill, which, therefore, renders it not defenſible. This ſlope is now occupied as high as the commencement of the perpendicular rocky ſide of the Devil's Hill, by various redoubts, batteries, and block-houſes commanding each other, and the advance ground to the caſtle, all of which were added by Sir James Craig.

During the American war, when the French were at the Cape, they raiſed lines with two redoubts to protect the approach to the caſtle on the land ſide, the expence of which they paid in paper money. Theſe lines, however, extending no farther

ther up the tongue of land that projects from the Devil's Hill, than the point, No. 12, in the map, were liable to be turned between that point and the craggy ſummit D, a manœuvre, I believe, which General Craig intended to put in practice, provided the Dutch, after being driven out of Wynberg, were diſpoſed to make a ſtand at the French lines. He therefore, very properly, ordered a battery and block-houſe to be conſtructed immediately under D, and a ſecond a little lower down the hill, which, with the two redoubts in the lines, and Fort de Knokke at their extremity on the ſhore of Table Bay, being all within the compaſs of 1500 yards, would enable the garriſon to keep up ſuch a croſs and concentrated fire, as to prevent any moderate number of troops from attempting to force the lines in their approach to the town from Simon's Bay. And, in order to ſtrengthen the northern extremity of the lines, and, at the ſame time, to cover the landing place at the mouth of, and paſſage acroſs, the Salt River, he added, alſo, a bomb-proof tower and battery at G, both of which bear his name. Notwithſtanding, however, the ſtrength of theſe lines, the officers of the Dutch garriſon, now at the Cape, were of opinion that the moſt elegible mode of attacking the town would be to force the lines, though at the hazard of loſing a number of men, after which the caſtle muſt immediately fall; and many Engliſh officers are of the ſame opinion.

Fort Knokke is connected with the citadel by a rampart drawn along the ſhore, called the Sea lines, defended by ſeveral batteries, mounted with heavy guns, and furniſhed with ovens for heating ſhot. Within theſe lines is a powder magazine, and

and a long range of low buildings that were converted, under the Engliſh government, into a general hoſpital, with lodgings for the inſpector, ſtorekeeper, and apothecary to the forces.

On the weſt of the bay are three ſtrong batteries at the points K, L, M, the Rogge-bay battery, the Amſterdam battery, and the Chavonne battery, the guns of which all bear directly upon the anchorage. At N is alſo a ſmall battery, called the Mouillé, commanding the entrance of the bay; for all ſhips, when coming in, keep the point of the Mouillé cloſe on board, and go out of the bay between Roben Iſland and the continent. A little farther, at the point O, where there is a ſmall ſandy cove, a work was thrown up with a few light guns and a furnace for heating ſhot, to prevent a landing at this place, which they have further endeavoured to impede by fixing three anchors acroſs the inlet. A very few ſhot from one of our frigates ſoon, however, diſlodged the enemy from this work.

At Camp's Bay, on the weſtern coaſt of the peninſula, there are alſo a few ſmall batteries, and a military poſt on the height above it, directly between the Table Mountain and the Lion's Head. An almoſt perpetual ſurf rolls upon the ſandy beach of Camp's Bay, otherwiſe, this might be conſidered as a very vulnerable point. An army landing here, and at Three Anchor Bay, might take the town and all the batteries in their rear, or, which would ſtill be more important, might get poſſeſſion of the Lion's Rump at F, from whence, with a few howitzers, the town and citadel, and the ſtrong batteries on the weſt ſide of Table Bay, would be completely commanded. And this hill has

has the very great advantage of not being commanded by any other point.

So fully convinced was Sir James Craig of the vaſt importance of this ſituation, that he propoſed to Government, in the event of the Cape remaining in our poſſeſſion, to erect a citadel upon it, with buildings for every military purpoſe, ſuch as barracks for the garriſon, houſes for an hoſpital, buildings for the ordnance department, for military ſtores, and for at leaſt twelve months' proviſions. Such a fortification, when properly completed, would, in the opinion of Sir James, be ably defended, in time of war, by 1200 men; and would render the town, the batteries, and the caſtle, untenable by an enemy, all of which might be totally deſtroyed from this height in four-and-twenty hours. The moſt intelligent of the officers of the Dutch garriſon, now at the Cape, were preciſely of the ſame opinion, and immediately pointed out the ſituation as the moſt eligible for erecting a citadel. The Government, however, are not in circumſtances at preſent to undertake a work of ſuch magnitude and expence, not being able to raiſe funds adequate to meet the ſubſiſtence of the troops, and the contingent and extraordinary expences of the garriſon, conſiſting of about two thouſand men.

The greateſt difficulty, in employing this ſituation for ſuch a purpoſe, would be the want of water; but it is by no means an inſurmountable difficulty. Twelve hundred men, at a daily allowance of a quart to each man, would conſume, in twelve months, 109,500 gallons, and a ciſtern, capable of containing

this quantity, would not be required to exceed a ſquare of twelve yards, provided the depth be about four yards and a half. And two ciſterns of theſe dimenſions, would be fully adequate for every purpoſe that the garriſon would require.

Another objection, however, was ſtarted, grounded on the opinion of ſome of the artillery officers in the ſervice of the Eaſt India Company, who conceived the Lion's Hill to be within point blank ſhot of the Devil's Hill, the ſlope of which, below the rocky ſummit, is at leaſt twice the height of the former, and conſequently commanded it. Theſe gentlemen, who are ſuppoſed to be among the beſt informed of the Company's officers, may be very good artillery officers, but they are certainly bad judges of diſtance in a mountainous country; for, as Sir James Craig has obſerved, the neareſt point of the Devil's Hill is at the diſtance of 3700 yards; but that, in order to get any thing like a level with the part of the Lion's Rump, on which the moſt conſiderable part of the works would be placed, it would be neceſſary to go farther back on the ſlope of the Devil's Hill, at leaſt five hundred yards, and even then the elevation would not be equal to that point on which the ſaid works were ſituated; ſo that the point blank range of the Campany's artillery officers is, at leaſt, 4200 yards. Sir James obſerves, that a reſidence of fourteen months at the Cape, ſince he gave his opinion on this ſubject, and a continued and unremitting ſtudy, to render the place as defenſible as poſſible, had only ſerved to confirm him in it; an opinion, indeed, which perfectly coincided with that of Lieutenant-Colonel Bridges, who commanded the Britiſh engineers, as well as with that of every intelligent

telligent officer who has been on duty at the Cape, not only among the Engliſh, but alſo among the French, Dutch, and German officers now ſerving there.

Near the narroweſt part of the peninſula, on the weſtern ſhore, are two contiguous bays called Hout or Wood Bay, and Chapman's Bay; the latter communicating, by a defile of the mountains, about 2700 yards in length, with Vis or Fiſh Bay cloſe to Simon's Bay; and the former, by another defile, with the great road leading from Cape Town to Simon's Bay. There appears to be no inſtance on record of any ſhip going into Chapman's Bay, it being completely expoſed to all the prevailing winds that blow at the Cape, and, in conſequence, ſeldom free from a heavy ſwell of the ſea. Were it, indeed, ever ſo ſecure and convenient for landing troops, all the advantages it holds out would be obtained by a landing at Simon's Bay. This is not the caſe, were an enemy to effect a landing at Hout Bay to the northward of it; as, from this place, they would be enabled to make their approach to the lines, leaving Muiſenberg, which, on a former occaſion, I have called the Thermopylæ of the Cape peninſula, in their rear.

Hout Bay affords ſafe and convenient anchorage for eight or ten ſhips; and has a rivulet of freſh water falling into it from the back part of Table Mountain; but the getting out of the bay is ſuppoſed to be very difficult and precarious, on account of the eddy winds from the ſurrounding mountains when they are moderate in the Offing, or from the ſouth-eaſterly winds ſetting into the entrance; as well as from the conſtant weſterly

ſwell and wind prevailing from that quarter in the winter ſeaſon. Captain Blanket, however, in the year 1784, when he commanded the Nymph ſloop of war, ran, out of curioſity, into Hout Bay, at which the Dutch were exceedingly jealous and angry, none of them having ever ſeen a ſhip there before. It is now defended with a battery and a block-houſe.

As to Simon's Bay, which lies on the eaſtern ſide of the peninſula, in the great bay of Falſe, and is the uſual reſort of ſhipping for five months in the year, it ſhould ſeem the Dutch had no idea of their colony being attacked from that quarter, as the ſtrong ground at Mulſenberg was entirely unoccupied before the Britiſh expedition appeared in the bay; and all the works and batteries there were conſtructed between the time of its arrival and the day the troops marched to attack it.

For the defence of the various works upon the Cape peninſula, all of which I have juſt enumerated, a garriſon of five thouſand men has been conſidered, by all who are acquainted with the place, as the very leaſt force that would be required; and, conſequently, no part of it could, with propriety, be detached into the interior, without expoſing the garriſon to danger. The colony, indeed, is ſo extenſive, having an unprotected coaſt of 580 miles from Cape Point to the Kaffer country on the eaſt, and of 315 miles from Cape Point to the River Kouſſie on the north, that an army of ten thouſand men would ſcarcely be ſufficient to keep out an enemy, if he were determined to effect a landing. A large force, however, landed at any great diſtance from the Cape, could not poſſibly be ſubſiſted. At

Moſſel Bay it might, perhaps, receive a ſmall ſupply of corn, but no cattle; at Plettenberg's bay, neither the one nor the other. At Algoa Bay an enemy might, at all times, create a great deal of miſchief, by putting arms into the hands of the Kaffers and Hottentots, who might very eaſily be encouraged to drive the whole colony within the limits of the Cape peninſula; a meaſure, by which the garriſon and the ſettlers would immediately be ſtarved for want of proviſions. It is obvious that ſuch a ſtep would be attended with the preſent ruin of the ſettlement, and would not, on that account, be reſorted to but by a deſperate or a Machiavelian enemy.

This bay might, however, be very fairly, and ſucceſsfully, made uſe of to land about a hundred light dragoons, from whence, by marching into Graaf Reynet, they would not only find the means of mounting and of ſubſiſting themſelves, but might effectually cut off the large ſupplies of ſheep and cattle which are principally furniſhed by this diſtrict for the uſe of the town and garriſon. A quantity of Spaniſh dollars would enſure the party a cordial reception from the boors, at leaſt as long as their money laſted; nor do I believe, ſo long as the memory of their laſt campaigning is freſh in their minds, they will ever be induced again to aſſemble in arms, on any occaſion, againſt Europeans. The Dutch, I underſtand, have ſtationed at this bay near three hundred troops, to keep the peace between the boors, the Kaffers, and the Hottentots, but the greater part would, undoubtedly, be withdrawn on receiving intelligence of the preſent war; the weakneſs of the garriſon not admitting of ſo large a detachment being ſent off the peninſula, eſpecially as in the month

month of July laſt they had received no reinforcements from the French, and expected none from Holland.

But the moſt effectual way, perhaps, of diſtreſſing the garriſon, would be to land detachments at various points not very diſtant from the Cape peninſula; as, for inſtance, at Gordon's Bay, which may be done at all ſeaſons of the year, but moſt conveniently from September to May. Here, as I before obſerved, immediate poſſeſſion might be taken of Hottentot Holland's Kloof, which is but a few miles diſtant, and from which a ſmall party, with field-pieces or howitzers, would not eaſily be driven out; at the ſame time a ſecond detachment, landed at Saldanha Bay, might take poſſeſſion of Roode Sand Kloof; thus totally cutting off the poſſibility of any ſupply of cattle from the interior parts of the country. A third detachment, landed near Blauwberg, at a ſhort diſtance from the anchorage off Roben Iſland, might form a chain of poſts between this hill and the party in Roode Sand Kloof, and thus cut off the ſupplies of grain from Zwartland Berg River, Picquetberg, Reibecks Caſtle, and the four-and-twenty rivers, which are the principal corn diſtricts. The time ſhould be the months of January and February, when the corn of the new harveſt begins to be ſent up to town, whither two-thirds of the quantity reaped are uſually brought in the courſe of the two ſucceeding months. In January 1803, the magazines of grain were completely exhauſted, which will alſo be the caſe in January 1804, the returns of the harveſt being barely ſufficient for the exigencies of the year.

The

The invading fleet, if ſuperior in force to that on the ſtation, might eaſily be ſupplied with freſh proviſions, either at the anchorage off Roben Iſland, where they could lie in perfect ſecurity, or in Saldanha Bay. At ſix miles diſtance to the northward of this bay, there is good water at a place called *Witte Klip*, the White Rock, and not bad, though, perhaps, a little brackiſh, at ſeveral places on the eaſt ſhore of the bay; and I have little doubt that plenty of good water might be procured by digging wells at the foot of the Blauwberg, or even on Roben Iſland, an operation which the Dutch have neither ſkill to conduct, nor induſtry to accompliſh.

Some, however, are of opinion that the place would beſt be taken by a *Coup de Main*, by daſhing at once into Table Bay in a ſouth-eaſt wind, and cutting out all the ſhips that may happen to be at anchor. In doing this, they would have to ſuſtain the fire of Craig's tower and battery, Fort de Knokke, the ſea lines and the caſtle, but the three heavy batteries, on the weſt coaſt of the bay, would pour their fire into their own ſhips. There are few places, however, where ſo great a fire can be concentrated, as can be brought to bear on the anchoring ground of Table Bay. The batteries are mounted with a conſiderable number of heavy guns; but, it is true, they are very old; a great part of them honeycombed, and the carriages of many completely demoliſhed. The Amſterdam battery has alſo many defects, and, in the opinion of ſome naval officers, would ſoon be ſilenced by a ſingle ſhip of the line, brought to lie cloſe alongſide of it.

Others

Others are of opinion, that a moderate force of infantry and artillery, landed at Three Anchor Bay, might eaſily ſucceed in getting poſſeſſion of Amſterdam battery in the rear, as well as the Chavonne and Rogge Bay batteries, after which the caſtle would no longer be tenable, and the town would be at the mercy of the attacking party. Perhaps the ſtrongeſt impreſſion might be made by combining the two opinions; though a large force might probably prefer landing on the eaſtern beach of Table Bay, where there is nothing to interrupt them, croſs the Salt River, and carry the lines by a *Coup de Main*, after which, as I have before obſerved, the caſtle muſt immediately fall, and the garriſon ſurrender at diſcretion.

The Dutch garriſon, at the evacuation of the colony by the Engliſh, in March laſt, were certainly not capable of oppoſing any very conſiderable reſiſtance, or to defend the place againſt a ſpirited attack, conducted by an officer of ſkill and local experience. Three or four ſhips of the line, with four thouſand men, would be fully ſufficient to carry their point; provided the Dutch ſhould receive no reinforcements from the French, which, hitherto, there are no grounds for ſuppoſing to be the caſe. The whole garriſon, when complete, was intended to conſiſt of three thouſand men; of theſe were already arrived, at that time, barely two thouſand, conſiſting in a regiment of the Prince of Waldec, about ſix hundred ſtrong; three hundred cavalry; three hundred artillery; two or three companies of grenadiers, and the reſt *jagers* or a light rifle corps, totally undiſciplined, and compoſed of almoſt every nation on the face of the earth, being, for the moſt part, deſerters from the German regiments.

regiments. And, with regard to the artillery, they were ſo miſerably defective that, out of the whole corps, they could not ſelect a ſufficient number of trained men to fire the ſalutes intended to be made on hoiſting the Dutch flag on the firſt of January; but made application to the commanding officer of the Britiſh artillery, for a party to aſſiſt them: yet, when the orders for the ſurrender of the colony were countermanded, and it became a probable event that hoſtilities would enſue, it was induſtriouſly circulated by the Dutch officers, or rather by the French officers nominally in the Dutch ſervice, that their corps of artillery was in the higheſt ſtate of diſcipline and order, the greateſt part of the men having diſtinguiſhed themſelves at the battle of Marengo! They were commanded, however, as well as the cavalry, by active and intelligent officers.

The ſervices of the *Burgher Cavalry* are not likely ever to be again demanded. Were they, indeed, ever ſo well diſpoſed to fight, the number that it would be found practicable to raiſe is far from being great. Thoſe who dwell in the interior parts of the ſettlement would find it extremely inconvenient to quit their homes, on account of their ſlaves and Hottentots, who might be induced to take advantage of their abſence; and the Cape diſtrict, containing only about ſix thouſand ſouls, could not be ſuppoſed to furniſh more than a thouſand men fit to bear arms, and, probably, not one hundred that would dare to uſe them.

The Hottentot corps, conſiſting of about five hundred men, ſo far from feeling any diſpoſition to enter into the ſervice of the

Dutch, actually declined it, and expreſſed the ſtrongeſt wiſhes to return to their connections in the diſtant parts of the colony. What the fate of theſe poor creatures may be is difficult to conjecture. Convinced, as the Dutch Government would ſpeedily be, that they would never be prevailed on to draw a trigger againſt the Engliſh, it will become a very ſerious difficulty in what manner to diſpoſe of them. If they ſhould deſert in a body, which was generally thought would be the event, they would drive in the whole country. But if, before this happens, the coloniſts ſhould be granted the prayer of either of their petitions, the government will be relieved from any apprehenſions with regard to the Hottentot corps: one of theſe humane propoſals was to ſurround and maſſacre the whole corps; the other, to put a chain to the leg of every man, and diſtribute them among the farmers as ſlaves for life.

The only chance they have of eſcaping, reſts upon the good intentions of the Governor and Commander in Chief towards them, from whoſe humane diſpoſition, and honourable character, they will receive every protection and ſupport, as far, at leaſt, as depends upon him; but, in a revolutionary government, the beſt diſpoſed muſt, in ſome degree, ſwim with the torrent of popular opinion.

One ſingle ſhip of war, the Bato of 68 guns, remained in Table Bay, preparing to follow two others of the ſame claſs, the Pluto and the Kortenaar, to Batavia. None of theſe three ſhips had any of their lower-deck guns on board, and were only half

half manned; being intended, though under the command of an Admiral, to take on board, and carry to Europe, cargoes of coffee. Three frigates had ſailed a few months before for the ſame purpoſe, under the command of Commodore Meliſſe, and two others formed part of Rear-Admiral Dekker's ſquadron; ſo that the Dutch had, at that time, in the Eaſtern Seas, three ſhips of the line and five fine frigates, which, however, were in no condition to add much luſtre to the Batavian flag.

The ammunition and ſtores that were found at the capture, together with thoſe that were given over by the Britiſh Government, at the ſurrender, to the amount of about twenty thouſand pounds value, will ſerve for many years, not only as a ſupply of the garriſon, but alſo of the Iſles of France and Bourbon. The great barrack, ſituated between the town and the caſtle, was put into thorough repair, and fitted up with bedding and other neceſſaries for the reception of two thouſand men; and the citadel, capable of containing one thouſand men, with lodgings for the officers, was intended to be put into the ſame condition.

Recent accounts mention the deplorable ſtate of the colony under its new government. The revenues are ſo reduced as to be totally inadequate to meet the expences of the garriſon, and they have no hope of any ſupply from Holland. New taxes were impoſed on the inhabitants, which they refuſed to pay. The troops were in a complete ſtate of inſubordination; ſeveral

were under trial for mutiny, and numbers were daily deſerting with their arms. Univerſal diſcontent and general diſtreſs prevailed. In ſuch a ſtate of things, it is not unreaſonable to conclude that the Cape would fall an eaſy conqueſt to a Britiſh force.

CHAP. IV.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, conſidered as a Naval Station.

Comparative ſmall Space occupied by the Britiſh Iſlands—their Weight among Nations accounted for.—Commerce the Source of Britiſh Wealth.—Precarioufneſs of the mere Carrying-trade.—Colonies improve Navigation.—Character of French Seamen—of Dutch Seamen.—Treatment on board their own Ships.—Mortality.—The Cape neceſſary to the Dutch Trade to India—an intermediate Port deſirable to other Nations—leaſt ſo to England—Reaſons of it.—Incidents to which maritime Tranſactions are liable make friendly Ports always deſirable.—Convenience of the Cape.—Portugueze the firſt Viſitors—then the Engliſh and Dutch—taken Poſſeſſion of by the latter—extend their Territory beyond the original Intention—Impediments thrown by the Company—Willingneſs to part with it.—Advantages as a Naval Station, not confined to the Supply of Refreſhments—Reſort for Ships in Diſtreſs—the Counteſs of Sutherland Indiaman.—Cape proper for aſſembling Convoys—Proviſions to be procured.—Importance as commanding the Entrance of the Indian Seas.—Iſles of France and Bourbon dependent on the Cape.—France unable to diſturb India without a Fleet.—Trade of India ſubject to the Maſters of the Cape—Healthineſs of the Climate for Seamen.—Moderate Expence of ſubſiſting a Fleet—Sailors' Ration of freſh Proviſions—Brandy cheaper than Weſt India Rum—Conſumption of colonial Produce by the Fleet—about one-fourth of the uſual Expence—Wear and Tear of the Ships conſiderable.—Importance of the geographical Poſition of the Cape—commanding a ſpeedy Intercourſe with moſt Parts of the World.—Diſadvantages to Britain in the Hands of an Enemy.—Three Points of Annoyance to our Trade—comparative Danger of the outward and homeward bound Paſſages—that of paſſing the Straits of Sunda—of Manilla—of L'Aguillas Bank—of Saint Helena.—Inefficacy of Convoys.—Difference of Circumſtances between this and the American War.—Preſent Aim of France.—

The

The comparative Eſtimate of the Cape and Ceylon.—French jealous of our Commerce.—Neceſſity of re-poſſeſſing the Cape or deſtroying the Enemy's Shipping there.—Bays of the Cape—Table Bay—Robben Iſland—Loſs of the Sceptre—Simon's Bay—Saldanha Bay—Objections to it—obviated.—Saint Helena Bay.—Concluſion.

WHEN one reflects, for a moment, on the diminutive ſpace that the Britiſh iſlands occupy on the ſurface of the globe, in compariſon with the large portions that ſome nations enjoy, and conſiders their detached and remote ſituation by which their inhabitants were, in the opinion of the ancients,

> "*Toto ab orbe diviſos,*"
> "Cut off from the reſt of mankind;"

when, at the ſame time, one bears in mind the vaſt weight and preponderance theſe little iſlands have long maintained in the hiſtory and tranſactions of moſt of the numerous ſocieties that conſtitute this world of human beings, it is impoſſible to withhold our admiration and aſtoniſhment at a phenomenon which, at firſt ſight, wears the appearance of being ſo much out of the ordinary courſe of things. In vain ſhould we ſearch for a parallel in the hiſtory of the world, becauſe the hiſtory of the world affords no example of a country where property has ſo much weight, affords ſo much enjoyment, and is ſo well ſecured by juſt and equal laws, as in Great Britain.

Exertions to amaſs wealth will, generally, be proportional to the ſtability given to property. Hence, the enterprizing ſpirit of Britons has collected the riches of the world within their fortunate iſlands. Hence, the great and ſtupendous works of convenience,

venience, utility, and magnificence, that embrace the ſhores of the Thames, the Merſey, the Severn, and moſt of the navigable rivers of the empire which, whilſt they facilitate the purpoſes of commerce, add ſplendor and ornament to the country, and ſerve as notable monuments of a powerful and opulent nation. But, although the ſeat of empire, the central point of power and wealth, is fixed in the Britiſh iſlands, yet, if we caſt our eyes on the map of the world, and ſkim along the weſtern ſhores of the Atlantic, thence deſcend to the Southern Pacific, and return eaſterly to the Indian Seas, we ſhall there find that the poſſeſſions of Britain compriſe "a vaſt empire on which the "ſun never ſets, and whoſe bounds nature has not yet aſcer-"tained."

Whatever philoſophers may advance on the ſubject of the wealth of nations depending on the encouragement given to agriculture, none will deny that the wealth and the influence of the Britiſh empire derive their ſource and their main-ſpring from commerce. It is to commerce we owe our colonies, and to our colonies the perfection of navigation. For, after all the objections that have been urged againſt the colonizing ſyſtem, it is pretty evident that, without foreign poſſeſſions, we ſhould have few ſeamen. The mere carrying-trade is precarious, and liable to be affected by every little incident that may involve the nation carrying it on, in its relations with contending powers. So long as the Portugueze maintained their territories and their dominion in the Eaſt, the Portugueze navigators ſtood the firſt in reputation; but no ſooner had the Dutch deprived them of the beſt part of their poſſeſſions, than the whole of the carrying-

trade

trade fell into the hands of the Dutch; and the Dutch flag maintained the ſuperiority in the Eaſt, and was reſpectable in the Weſt.

When the Dutch loſt their colonies, the Americans ſnatched the remains of their carrying-trade, which, to a certain degree, they will preſerve and, perhaps, improve, as long as they can remain in a ſtate of neutrality; but, having no foreign poſſeſſions, the inſtant they go to war with a nation that has, their carrying-trade muſt fall to the ground. Such will be the caſe alſo with the Danes and the Swedes; and ſuch has France found, by experience, to be her fate from the moment ſhe loſt her beſt colonies.

The number of hands required to work the ſhips that are employed in tranſporting to England the produce of our colonies, furniſh for the navy, in time of war, an immediate ſupply of ſkilful and able-bodied ſeamen; giving it, at once, a decided ſuperiority over that of all other nations. The French, the Dutch, and the Spaniards, can conſtruct their ſhips fully as well as, and ſome of them, perhaps, better than, the Engliſh; but none of them can make ſuch good ſeamen. The rough and reſolute character that is neceſſary to form good ſailors, would appear to be incompatible with the frivolous and flexile tempers of Frenchmen. Their natural verſatility diſqualifies them for ſituations that require ſteady perſeverance; and the trifling gaiety of their diſpoſition is ill ſuited to the order and diſcipline that are indiſpenſable on board of a ſhip. In a gale of wind, it is ſaid to be a matter of the greateſt difficulty to prevail on a ſuf-

ficient number of Frenchmen, in a whole ſhip's company, to go aloft for the purpoſe of taking in the ſails; and if the gale comes on ſuddenly, the odds are great that the maſts are carried away, or the ſails blown from the yards.

Both men and officers are averſe to long voyages; and are ſeldom inclined to paſs a friendly port. To poſſeſs the advantage of having ſuch ports, in different parts of the world, is of the firſt importance to their navigation and commerce. They pay little attention to cleanlineſs, either in their perſons or ſhips, and they are generally very much crowded; hence, a long voyage, without refreſhments, is ſeldom unattended with diſeaſe and mortality.

The Dutch ſeamen are ſteady, perſevering, and intrepid; and, of all nations, have maintained the hardeſt ſtruggles with the Engliſh; but they are habitually ſlow and inactive. That they are not phyſically ſo, the crew of the Rattleſnake, a great part of which were Dutchmen, afforded a ſufficient proof, when they engaged, in a gallant and active manner, the La Preneuſe frigate in Algoa Bay. By example and a little practice, they overcome the dull and ſluggiſh motion to which they have been accuſtomed, and ſoon become capable of prompt and vigorous action.

The Dutch ſailors, it ſeems, are always glad of an opportunity to ſerve in Engliſh ſhips, where they have the reputation of being a quiet, orderly, and obedient people. The manner in which they are fed, in their own ſhips, is little calculated to give

them encouragement. The captains of the men of war are, at the ſame time, the purſers; and they feed their men by contract, which, ſtipulating for quantity only, leaves the quality to the diſcretion and the conſcience of the captain. The Dutch ſhips of war that were ſent out, with the governor and troops on board, to take poſſeſſion of the Cape, had a remarkable long paſſage, which occaſioned the Dutch ſailors on board our ſhips, to obſerve, that the captain's muſty peas, rancid pork, and black bread were not conſumed, before which it would not be his intereſt to come into port where better articles were to be had. The ſame ſailors got hold of ſome of their bread, which they carried through the ſtreets of Cape Town, tied to the end of a ſtick, by way of a joke, it being ſo very black as to have more the appearance of animal excrement, baked in the ſun, than of bread.

On the preſent plan of navigating their ſhips, the Dutch would find it impracticable to proceed from Europe to India without breaking the voyage. The unfavourable form of their veſſels for moving quickly through the water, the little ſail they carry, eſpecially by night, the economical plan in which they are fitted out, forbidding the uſe of copper ſheathing, and the bad proviſions laid in for the people, are all againſt a long continued voyage. The mortality that ſometimes prevails on board their Indiamen, even on ſhort paſſages, is almoſt incredible. Mr. Thunberg informs us, and his veracity may be depended on, that the mortality on board the ſhip which carried him to the Cape, after a voyage of three months and a half from the Texel, amounted to one hundred and fifteen; that three other ſhips in the

the ſame fleet ſuffered ſtill more, the *Hoenkoop* having buried one hundred and fifty-eight; the *William Vth* two hundred and thirty; and the *Jonge Samuel* of *Zeeland* one hundred and three men!

It may be conſidered, indeed, as next to a phyſical impoſſibility, for a Dutch ſhip to run from the Texel to Batavia without ſtopping. The poſſeſſion we held of their old half-way houſe, the Cape, was ſo ſevere a blow to their navigation in the Eaſtern Seas, that, after the capture of Lucas's fleet in Saldanha Bay, there was not, in the courſe of five years, a ſingle Dutch ſhip of any deſcription to the ſouthward of the line. The convenience of refreſhing at the Cape is abſolutely neceſſary to, and inſeparably connected with, the Dutch trade to India. The Spaniards and Portugueze are equally averſe to long paſſages, without refreſhing, as the French and Dutch. The Danes, the Swedes, and Americans leſs ſo, becauſe their proviſions, in general, are more wholeſome, and their ſhips more cleanly: yet, to all theſe, an intermediate port is always conſidered as an object worthy of attention.

To the Engliſh the invervention of a port, in the longeſt voyages, is the leaſt important; and many commanders, of late years, have been ſo little ſolicitous on this point, as to prefer making the run at once, rather than ſuffer the delay and impediment occaſioned by calling for refreſhments on the paſſage. The commanders, indeed, of the Britiſh ſhips, in general, are ſo well acquainted with the nature of the fixed and periodical winds (the Trades and Monſoons), and with making the moſt

of thoſe that are variable, that diſtant voyages are now reduced almoſt to a certain duration. The old ſyſtem, ſtill, perhaps, too rigidly adhered to in the navy, of endeavouring to place the ſhip's head in the direction of her intended port, is entirely exploded by the commanders of ſhips in the employ of the Eaſt India Company. It may anſwer the purpoſe in the Britiſh Channel, and near land, but is ill ſuited for a long voyage, through climates where the wind undergoes but little change. The ſquadron of men of war, which brought away the garriſon, on the evacuation of the Cape, were twelve weeks on their paſſage, whilſt the Sir Edward Hughes Indiaman, which left the Cape a week later, was three weeks in England ſooner, than the ſaid ſquadron. A paſſage from China, which formerly was reckoned from ten to twelve months, is now reduced to four months, and has been made in a hundred days.

This rapidity in ſkimming over the ocean, reduced, as nearly as the nature of ſuch a loco-motion will allow, to a certainty, added to the ſuperior quality, as well as abundance, of proviſions that are laid in for the voyage, has rendered it a matter of perfect indifference to Engliſh ſeamen, in point of health, whether the run be made at once, or the voyage be broken for the ſake of obtaining refreſhments at ſome intermediate port. This being the caſe, the former method is uſually preferred, and much delay, as well as expence, is thereby avoided.

Since, however, all maritime expeditions and tranſactions are, in a very peculiar degree, liable to accident and misfortune, it muſt always be conſidered as a deſirable object to have ſome

neighbouring port to reſort to in caſe of urgent neceſſity. In the ſhort voyage to the ports of the Levant and others in the Mediterranean, Malta, and a number of other iſlands, preſent themſelves as places of refuge for ſhips in diſtreſs. The bay of Madeira lies open to the outward bound ſhips in the Weſt India trade, and the Weſtern Iſlands, if neceſſary, may be approached on the return-voyage. And, although the Portugueze ſettlement of Rio de Janeiro in South America is not greatly out of the way of ſhips, in their outward-bound paſſage to the Eaſt Indies and China, nor the iſland of Saint Helena on their return, yet it cannot be denied that the Cape of Good Hope is infinitely preferable to both of theſe places, ſince it not only divides the paſſage more equally, but ſupplies, in general, better refreſhments, and in greater plenty, and is alike convenient for ſhipping to touch at, whether in their outward or homeward-bound voyage.

In the early periods of foreign navigation, the ſhips of every nation, trading to the Eaſt Indies, found it convenient to call at the Cape for water and freſh proviſions, long before it was taken poſſeſſion of, in form, by any European power. The native Hottentots, at that time, were numerous in the Cape peninſula, and rich in cattle, which they ſupplied to paſſing ſhips on eaſy terms.

In the reign of John IId of Portugal, Bartholomew Diaz made the firſt ſucceſsful attempt to reach the ſouthern promontory of Africa, which he effected in the year 1487; but whether he quar-

quarrelled with the natives, and was driven away by them, as ſome hiſtorians have pretended, ſeems to be doubtful. Vaſco-de-Gama, ten years afterwards, touched at the Cape, but made no attempt to form a ſettlement there. Next to Vaſco-de-Gama, was the Portugueze Admiral Rio d'Infanté, who ſtrongly recommended to his Government the eſtabliſhment of a colony on the ſouthern coaſt of Africa; and fixed upon the mouth of a river for that purpoſe, to which was given his own name, and which is now called the Great Fiſh River. Some other attempts, by different Portugueze navigators, were made to colonize the Cape, but they all failed.

After this the Engliſh and the Dutch were frequent viſitors to the bays of the Cape.

The Engliſh, in their outward bound voyage, had a cuſtom of burying their diſpatches for the directors, and to point out where they were to be found by cutting a ſentence, to that effect, on ſome large blue ſtone laid on a particular ſpot. The intelligence, engraven on the ſtone, was uſually limited to the name of the ſhip and captain, the date of her arrival and departure, and it ended with "Look for letters (in ſuch or ſuch direction) from "this ſtone." Two or three ſtones of this kind are built into the caſtle wall, and are ſtill legible. The Dutch uſed to bury, on a certain ſpot on Robben Iſland, a regiſter of the ſtate of their veſſels and Cargoes, outward bound, which the next ſhip, in coming home, took up and carried to Holland for the information of the Directors.

In

In this manner the Engliſh, the Dutch, and the Portugueze, continued, for more than a century, to refreſh at the Cape, without any deſign, on the part of the two former, of appropriating the ſoil; until the year 1620, when, as I have before obſerved, Andrew Shillinge and Humphrey Fitzherbert, two commanders of two fleets of Engliſh ſhips bound for Surat and Bantam, took a formal poſſeſſion of the ſoil for, and in the name of, King James of Great Britain, becauſe they diſcovered that the Dutch intended to eſtabliſh a colony there the following year; and "becauſe they thought it better that the Dutch, or any other "nation whatſoever, ſhould be his Majeſty's ſubjects in this "place, than that his ſubjects ſhould be ſubject to them or any "other." It was not, however, until a period of more than thirty years had expired after this event, that the repreſentations of Van Riebek, ſtating the richneſs of the ſoil, the mildneſs of the climate, the advantage it would give to the Dutch, as a colony, over other nations, whoſe ſhips would all be obliged to touch there, and, above all, the barrier it would afford to their Indian dominions, prevailed on the directors of the Dutch Eaſt India Company to form a regular eſtabliſhment at the Cape.

Their original intention was to limit their poſſeſſions to the Cape peninſula, and the two bays that are divided by the iſthmus; conſidering it only, as it had hitherto been, as a place for refreſhing and refitting their ſhips. But the number of ſettlers that crept in, from time to time, made it neceſſary to croſs the iſthmus, and, by preſents and promiſes, to obtain from the natives the ceſſion of a tract of land to which they gave the name of Hottentot's Holland. The natives, it would ſeem, had no idea

of

of reſigning, for ever, to a foreign nation, the ground that was neceſſary for feeding their own cattle; but conceived it could only be intended for temporary uſe, and that, in time, they would depart from the country as other Europeans had hitherto done for the laſt century and an half; but, when they obſerved them building houſes and fortifications, ſowing and planting the ground, and rearing their own cattle, they began to be jealous of the encroachments of their new neighbours, and commenced hoſtilities with a view to expel them. Theſe hoſtilities terminated, as is uſual in ſuch caſes, in the further extenſion of the Dutch ſettlement, and in an increaſe of troops and coloniſts from Europe.

Still, however, the Dutch Eaſt India Company endeavoured to limit the Cape to the original deſign of a port for refreſhing their ſhips. They threw every obſtacle in the way of its becoming a flouriſhing ſettlement; allowed no trade whatſoever but what paſſed through the hands of their own ſervants, and made it dependent on the Governor-General of Batavia; concluding, that the ſettlers would thus be made equally ſubmiſſive to their orders from Europe, and from the ſeat of their influence and wealth in the Eaſt.

A colony, in ſuch a ſtate, with their declining commerce, became a burden and an expence too heavy for them to bear; and little doubt was entertained of their willingneſs to diſpoſe of it for a moderate ſum of money, juſt before the French revolution and its deſtructive conſequences unſettled the affairs of all Europe. As it never produced any ſurplus revenue, but, on the contrary,

contrary, was attended with conſiderable expence; and, as they never applied it to any other uſe themſelves, but that of refreſhing their ſhips, which they could always continue to do, in time of peace, when in the hands of another power, it could not be ſuppoſed they would be averſe to part with it; and, accordingly, overtures to this effect were intended to be made by England about the time when the above unfortunate event took place.

Having ſhewn the neceſſity that the ſhips of moſt of the maritime powers of Europe find of refreſhing at the Cape, it is obviouſly the intereſt of all theſe powers that it ſhould remain in the hands of that nation which would have the leaſt motive for impoſing reſtrictions on foreign viſitors; and it is ſcarcely neceſſary to obſerve, that, from the general policy of England, and the favourable circumſtances in which her commerce and navigation are now placed, the Cape in her poſſeſſion would always be open to foreign ſhipping, and refreſhments ſupplied to them on equal terms as to her own.

I have ſtated its vaſt importance to England in a military point of view: it now remains to conſider it as a naval ſtation. Firſt, as a port for refreſhing and refitting the ſhips of the Eaſt India Company: ſecondly, as a ſtation for ſhips of war, commanding the entrance into the Indian Seas: thirdly, as affording, by its geographical poſition, a ready communication with every part of the globe. After which, I ſhall endeavour to point out the diſadvantages that may reſult to the Eaſt India Company, in the

preſent war, from the French or Dutch retaining poſſeſſion of the Cape.

If, in the firſt place, the advantages reſulting from the poſſeſſion of this ſettlement were confined to the furniſhing of refreſhments for the ſhipping of the Eaſt India Company, either on their outward or their homeward-bound voyage, I am willing to ſuppoſe the importance of them, however great, might be conſidered as inadequate to counterbalance the expence of keeping up the neceſſary eſtabliſhment, although I have ſhewn that, under a prudent adminiſtration of the revenues, this expence would be reduced to a mere trifle. The directors, indeed, thought they had ſufficiently proved, by the meaſures they adopted with regard to the Cape, that it was by no means neceſſary for their trade as a place of refreſhment. The directors, however, happened to be miſtaken; for they ſoon diſcovered that, although Engliſh ſeamen could bear the run between England and India, the native blacks, which they are under the neceſſity of employing, in time of war, could not do it; and it is to be apprehended they will but too ſoon diſcover that unſeaſoned troops, ſent directly from England, are no more able to bear an uninterrupted voyage, than the Laſcars. It will remain, therefore, for the directors to find out ſome other place, in lieu of the Cape, ſince their excluſion from it, a circumſtance which, indeed, their conduct ſeemed to invite.

But, as I have already obſerved, all maritime affairs are peculiarly liable to caſualties, and, on this conſideration, one would be

be led to conclude that a friendly port muſt always be held as a valuable acquiſition to all who are concerned in ſuch affairs; and more eſpecially to the Eaſt India Company, whoſe concerns are of ſuch vaſt magnitude. The number of ſhips that meet with ſtreſs of weather, and ſuffer from the tremendous ſtorms that are frequent in the winter ſeaſon, on L'Aguillas bank, muſt always ſtamp a value on the Cape, and make its ports and bays particularly deſirable on the homeward-bound voyage.

That inſtances of diſtreſs do happen, and not unfrequently, in ſituations where the only hope of ſafety can be placed on the Cape, or in ſome of its bays, might be proved in a number of caſes that happened while it remained in the hands of Great Britain; but I will content myſelf with mentioning one ſingle inſtance. The Counteſs of Sutherland Indiaman experienced a moſt violent gale of wind between Madagaſcar and the coaſt of Africa, in which, after loſing all her maſts, ſhe became a wreck at the mercy of the winds and waves for ſeveral days; and, at length, was momentarily expected to ſink, when, on the weather clearing up, they deſcried the land of Africa to the ſouthward of the ſpot where the Groſvenor was loſt; and being now in the ſtream of the current, they contrived to fetch into Kromme River's Bay, a ſmall Cove in Camtoos, or Saint Francis, or Content Bay, for it has a variety of names.

Having here procured a ſupply of water and other refreſhments, and rigged up a kind of jury maſts, ſhe endeavoured to proceed to Simon's Bay for the purpoſe of undergoing a more thorough repair; but, unfortunately, ſhe met with a ſecond gale

of wind, juſt as ſhe was approaching the entrance of the bay; and in this gale ſhe muſt inevitably have periſhed, had not Captain Hotham, with his Majeſty's ſhip the Adamant, gone out to her immediate aſſiſtance, and ſucceeded in towing her off the rocky coaſt, towards which ſhe was rapidly drifting. Now this ſingle ſhip and her cargo were ſaid to be eſtimated at the value of three hundred thouſand pounds; a ſum of money equal to the maintenance of the civil, military, and contingent expences of the Cape, for a whole year.

Had the Cape, at this time, been in the hands of the Dutch, the fate of the Counteſs of Sutherland muſt have been inevitable. In war ſhe would have been taken; and in peace ſhe would have been ſuffered to go on ſhore; for the Dutch poſſeſs neither the activity nor the willingneſs to give ſpeedy aſſiſtance to ſhips in caſes of diſtreſs.

There is no place, in the homeward-bound voyage from India, ſo proper or ſo convenient for the valuable fleets of the Eaſt India Company to aſſemble at for convoy, in time of war, as the Cape of Good Hope. Here, at a very reaſonable rate, their crews might be refreſhed with fruits, vegetables, and freſh proviſions. Salt beef, for the reſt of the voyage, might here alſo be laid in, affording, thus, a conſiderable increaſe of tonnage in each ſhip for ſtowing goods.

I took notice, in the former volume of this work, of the ſalt proviſions that might be prepared at Algoa Bay for victualling the fleets of the Eaſt India Company. Since that was written I

have again viſited this bay; and, having paid particular attention to the ſurrounding country, and the ſtate of the cattle, I have no heſitation in ſaying, that when once the diſturbances between the boors and the Kaffers are terminated, which in time of peace would eaſily be effected, large quantities of good ſalt beef might be cured there at a very moderate rate. The cattle that could conveniently be brought down from the valuable diſtricts of the Snowy Mountains and Bruynjes Hoogté, would arrive at the bay in a very different condition from thoſe that are driven from the ſame diſtricts to the Cape, acroſs a deſolate and barren tract of country, ſome hundred miles in extent, on which a blade of graſs is not produced.

We procured, at Algoa Bay, as good beef, in every reſpect, as the markets of London ſupply; and, at the diſtance of a few miles, there is an inexhauſtible fund of ſtrong bay ſalt. The ſheep are alſo good of the kind, being the broad-tailed breed, ſimilar to thoſe of the upper regions of Aſia, which, however, are inferior to any of ours, both in the weight of the carcaſe, the flavour of the meat, and the quality of the wool. Corn might alſo be raiſed, to any amount, in the lower diſtricts of Graaf Reynet, bordering on the ſea-coaſt; and ſalt butter, ſoap, and candles, procured on moderate terms.

An eſtabliſhment at this bay for curing ſalt proviſions would, no doubt, be a prodigious ſaving, as well as convenience, to the Eaſt India Company. The products of the coaſt might eaſily be tranſported to the Cape, in the ſummer ſeaſon, in ſmall coaſting veſſels, and depoſited in their warehouſes there. The ſaving

of

of a third of the expences of bread and ſalt proviſions, which would, at leaſt, by theſe means be effected, muſt certainly be an object in ſo vaſt a concern as theirs, and more than counterbalance the ſuppoſed great expence of ſupporting the ſettlement.

If, in the ſecond place, we conſider the Cape as a naval ſtation, commanding the entrance into the Indian Seas, its importance, in this reſpect, will be no leſs obvious. The preſent ſuperiority of our navy would render a ſmall ſquadron fully adequate to guard the paſſage round the Cape, and effectually to defeat any attempt of an enemy to diſturb the peace of India, as well as to prevent them from giving the leaſt annoyance to our trade in the Indian Seas. If foreign ſhips, in their voyage from Europe to India, find it neceſſary to refreſh their crews at the Cape, how much more urgent would the neceſſity be when the ſame ſhips were crowded with troops. The French, in all their former wars, in the ſhort voyage to the Iſles of France and Bourbon, refreſhed and refitted at the Cape. Theſe iſlands, as I have already obſerved, inſtead of being able to victual a fleet, barely furniſh proviſions ſufficient for the inhabitants and a ſmall garriſon. By the ſupply of proviſions and naval ſtores ſent to them from the Cape, Suffrein was enabled to maintain his ground in the Indian Seas, without which he would very ſoon have been obliged to give up the conteſt. In the late war our cruizers from the Cape kept the Southern Ocean completely clear of the enemy's ſhips, and allowed the Indian ſquadron to make ſuch choice of their cruizing ground, that between the two, not a French frigate eſcaped, nor ſcarcely a ſingle privateer remained

on

on the Mauritius ſtation for ſome time before the cloſe of the war.

It is to be hoped, but by no means certain, that France, without the loſs of an incalculable number of men, a loſs, indeed, to which ſhe would pay little regard, will never be able to make any impreſſion on India but by the aſſiſtance of a fleet; and it will be our own fault if we allow them any ſuch fleet in the Eaſtern Seas; for if the Cape ſhould be in our poſſeſſion, ſhe will find it utterly impracticable to aſſemble, much more to victual, any ſuch fleet. The want of a ſuitable place to refreſh at muſt render every attempt to cope with us in thoſe ſeas abortive. So well were they aware, in the late war, of the futility of any expedition from the Iſles of France and Bourbon, without the aſſiſtance of the Cape of Good Hope, that they preferred the fatal experiment of colonizing Egypt, in the hope, perhaps, of proceeding at ſome future time by the Red Sea to India. They knew that, even if they had ſucceeded in getting out to theſe iſlands a ſufficient number of ſhips and troops, yet without the ſupplies which they have uſually on ſuch occaſions drawn from the Cape, any ſuch expedition muſt neceſſarily here have ended.

By our holding the Cape, the trade of every other nation to India and China may be conſidered as entirely at the mercy of England, an advantage, however, of which ſhe is under no neceſſity of availing herſelf. During the northern confederacy, ſeveral Danes came in to refreſh, although they knew they would be taken, or at leaſt detained. With reſpect to the Americans, who,

who, of late, by their carrying-trade alone, have worked themſelves into the greateſt portion, next to England, of the India and China trade, notwithſtanding the favourable ſituation of their country to an extended commerce with India, they would find it extremely inconvenient to be obliged to relinquiſh the accommodation of refreſhing their crews, and diſpoſing of part of their cargoes, at the Cape of Good Hope; from whence, indeed, in caſe of any rupture, their trade might, at any time, be completely checked, a circumſtance which would operate as a ſecurity for the preſervation of amity and a good underſtanding with that commercial nation. Had we, indeed, been fortunate enough to have retained this ſettlement, there is every reaſon to believe the indulgencies granted to their trade here might have been an important conſideration with them, in the renewal of a commercial treaty with England.

After what has been ſtated with regard to the healthineſs of the climate, exemplified in the ſmall degree of mortality among the troops, and in the vigour and ſtability that their conſtitutions acquired, it is ſcarcely neceſſary to add that the ſame ſalutary effects equally prevailed in the navy on this ſtation. The mortality, indeed, among the ſeamen, was ſtill leſs, probably on account of their being leſs expoſed to the ſummer heats, and to their having fewer opportunities of committing irregularities. There was generally a difference of ſix or eight degrees in the temperature of the bay and the town. When the thermometer, for inſtance, in Cape Town was at 84°, it ſtood no higher than 76° on board the ſhips in Table Bay.

The

The moderate expence at which a fleet can here be maintained is, likewiſe, an advantage not to be overlooked. The ſailor may be ſubſiſted equally cheap with the ſoldier. It has been calculated, after making the uſual allowances for waſte, damage, and intereſt of money, on ſhips proviſions ſent out from England, to ſay nothing of the premium received on bills given in exchange for paper currency, that the ſailor at the Cape can be furniſhed with his ration of freſh beef or mutton, biſcuit, and wine, at one-fourth part of the rate which the ſame ration coſts the government in ſalt proviſions and biſcuit ſent out from England. A pint of wine, as I have already ſtated, coſts no more than threepence, and might be reduced to half that price by aboliſhing the monopoly; and the Cape brandy, though at preſent bad, on account of the defective manner of diſtillation, and the improper ingredients employed, may be had at a much cheaper rate than Weſt India rum, and would, in a little time, under the encouragement of the Britiſh Government, have been made in its quality equally good of its kind.

I am not provided with ſufficient documents to give the annual expenditure of the ſquadron that was ſtationed at the Cape; but I am convinced it muſt have been much more moderate, in the articles of freſh meat, biſcuit, and wine, than for the ſame number of ſhips and men, on any other ſtation whatſoever. In the year 1797 the ſquadron conſumed 1,085,266 pounds of freſh meat, and 1,167,995 pounds of biſcuit, or about 3000 pounds of each a day; beſides 184,358 pounds of ſoft bread, 217,813 pounds of flour, and 1066 buſhels of wheat; it conſumed, moreover, 1,226,738 pints of wine, and 244,904

pints of ſpirits; together with a conſiderable quantity of butter, vinegar, raiſins, peas and beans, all the produce of the colony, and all of them articles which were to be procured at a moderate rate. I conclude, from the quantity expended, that, in this year, the ſquadron, ſuppoſing it to conſiſt of three thouſand men, was ſubſiſted moſtly on Cape produce; and, therefore, that it coſt the Government little more than one-fourth part of what it would have done on moſt other ſtations.

With reſpect to the wear and tear of the tackle and furniture, I have underſtood it to be very conſiderable on this ſtation, owing to the frequent gales of wind, and the expoſed ſituation of the ſhips. Admiral Pringle uſed to ſay, that every ſouth-eaſterly gale, of a week's duration, coſt his Majeſty ſome thouſand pounds. But this expence might, probably, be obviated by forming an eſtabliſhment at Saldanha Bay.

The geographical poſition of the Cape of Good Hope, throws a vaſt weight into the ſcale of its importance to England. Its happy ſituation, with regard to climate, and the productions of the ſoil, ſtamp its value as a depoſitary of troops and ſeamen; and its relative poſition on the globe enhances that value by the ready communication it commands with almoſt every part of the world. We have ſeen with what expedition more than two thouſand troops were thrown from hence into India, to the very walls of Seringapatam; and, on another occaſion, twelve hundred effective men into Egypt. With equal facility and diſpatch could the ſame, or a greater, number have been conveyed to the eaſt coaſt of North America, the Weſt India iſlands, or the weſt

weſt coaſt of South America. At a month's notice, the whole coaſt of Brazil could be lined with cruizers from the Cape. The whole eaſtern coaſt of Africa, and the various iſlands contiguous to it, are at the mercy of the power who holds the Cape; and the large iſland of Madagaſcar may be approached in ten or twelve days, thoſe of France and Bourbon in much leſs than a month, the Red Sea in five or ſix weeks, and the coaſts of Malabar and Coromandel in ſeven or eight weeks. Theſe paſſages will certainly depend much on the ſeaſon of the year in which they are made, but when this is properly choſen, the different places may be arrived at within the periods here mentioned.

If, at any time, troops might be wanted in the Weſt Indies, the homeward-bound Eaſt Indiamen might be employed to tranſport them thither from the Cape without retarding their paſſage more than ſixteen or eighteen days, as the common practice of croſſing the line is now as far to the weſtward as 26° weſt longitude. Detachments of the Hottentot corps would be well calculated for ſervice in the Weſt India iſlands. Should, at any future period, the French reſume their projects on India by the Red Sea (which they will certainly not fail to do whenever an opportunity preſents itſelf), in three months from the time it was firſt known in England, a force from the Cape might be in poſſeſſion of the ſtraits of Babelmandel, and, by thus anticipating, completely fruſtrate their deſigns, which, with the Cape in their poſſeſſion, or in that of the Dutch, they might eaſily accompliſh.

But if the geographical poſition of the Cape gives it the pre-eminence, as a great naval and military ſtation, as the barrier and maſter-key of our Indian poſſeſſions, it ſtill derives other advantages from this very circumſtance, which, though they are to be conſidered as of a ſubordinate nature, are highly deſerving of notice: theſe are the turn it is capable of giving to the commerce of India and China; and the encouragement and protection it might afford to the Southern Whale Fiſhery; but as theſe conſiderations are too important to be ſlightly paſſed over, it may be proper to reſerve the obſervations that occur on them for a ſubſequent chapter; and, in the mean time, proceed to point out the diſadvantages that may reſult to Britain, and particularly to the Eaſt India Company, from the Cape being placed in the poſſeſſion of the Dutch, or, which muſt be conſidered as the ſame thing, of the French, the former being ſo much reduced and degraded by the latter, that they no longer are, and in all probability never can revive as, a ſeparate and an independent nation.

We have already ſeen the vaſt advantages that Great Britain derived to her trade and poſſeſſions in India, during the late war, by holding this barrier in her own hands; let us now conſider what our ſituation is, in theſe reſpects, in the preſent ſtate of things. The Cape of Good Hope is in the poſſeſſion of an enemy; Rio de la Plata belongs to Spain, who, when ſhe has been plundered of all ſhe can give, will, moſt probably, be forced into acts of hoſtility againſt us; and the Iſles of France and Bourbon now derive their uſual ſupplies from the Cape, for the

the uſe of the ſquadron which, we may preſume, is already there. Theſe three important ſtations, all hoſtile to us, form a triangle, within the boundary lines of which every ſhip, bound to or from the Indies, muſt neceſſarily paſs; and the reſpective poſitions of theſe three points are ſo favourable for annoying our trade, that, were the ſkill and activity of the enemies who hold them commenſurate with our own, which, fortunately for us, they certainly are not, it would be almoſt an hopeleſs attempt for a ſhip to eſcape.

It may be urged, perhaps, that the great extent which may be taken in croſſing the equator from eighteen to twenty-ſix degrees of longitude, leaving it to the diſcretion of the commanders of our Eaſt India Company's ſhips to keep the American ſhore cloſe on board, or to paſs it at a diſtance; and the equally great extent that may be choſen in doubling the Cape, from the thirty-fourth to the forty-ſecond degree of latitude, would render the cruizing of the enemy ſo precarious, that the odds of eſcaping them are greatly in our favour. It is granted that it may be ſo; and I am, moreover, perſuaded that neither the French nor the Dutch would attempt to intercept our outward-bound ſhips, for theſe two reaſons; firſt, becauſe their value is ſo much leſs on the outward than on the homeward-bound paſſage; and ſecondly, on account of the uncertainty of falling in with them, as well as in conſideration of the violent ſtorms their cruizers would be almoſt ſure to encounter off the Cape of Good Hope.

But

But theſe circumſtances take a very different turn on the homeward-bound voyage. The danger is then increaſed in a much greater proportion than the value of the ſhips is augmented. If, indeed, we are willing to allow the enemy to employ the ſame means that we ſhould ourſelves do, in a like ſituation, the capture of many of our ſhips may be conſidered as inevitable.

In the firſt place, the danger of the ſtraits of Sunda preſents itſelf to our homeward-bound China ſhips. A ſmall ſquadron from Batavia, ſtationed at Nicholas Point on the north of Java, where there is good anchorage, or at Anjerie Point in the middle of the Strait, at both of which places it may receive a conſtant ſupply of refreſhments, would be able to intercept every ſhip that attempted to paſs the Strait.

Theſe ſtraits, it is true, may be avoided by taking the eaſtern paſſage; but here a new and no leſs danger preſents itſelf from the port of Manilla. As all ſhips, making this paſſage, muſt go within ſight of Luconia, it would be difficult for them to avoid an active ſquadron cruizing off this iſland. Thus,

" Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim;"

by avoiding one danger they fall into a greater.

Admitting, however, that either through the exertions of our cruizers, or the inactivity of the enemy, the China fleet ſhould eſcape both Scylla and Charibdis; the next dangerous point

point that occurs is the L'Aguilla's Bank, where we can have no cruizers to protect our trade, on account of the heavy ſtorms that prevail there, and the want of a friendly port to refit and refreſh our ſhips. The current, that ſets along the outer margin of this bank, moves at the rate of forty or fifty miles a day, in the winter months, in direct oppoſition to the north-weſterly winds; a circumſtance ſo well known, that all our ſhips ſtrive to keep in the ſtream of the current, which ſweeps them round the Cape againſt the wind. The enemy's cruizers would find no difficulty in running from Falſe Bay, in the winter months, cloſe along ſhore as far as Algoa Bay, which our ſhips have frequently done in three or four days; and, by ſkirting the outer margin of L'Aguilla's Bank, they can, at any time, return by the ſtream of the current, even againſt a gale of wind. Thus might their ſhips of war from the Cape track our homeward-bound Indiamen, and greatly annoy our trade; for, on the return-voyage, they have much leſs ſcope in doubling the Cape than when outward-bound. Indeed, in the winter ſeaſon, it is almoſt impracticable to double the Cape at any great diſtance from it. The attempt to do it has generally failed, and always been attended with the greateſt danger of loſing the ſhips.

Suppoſing them, however, to have eſcaped all theſe dangers; admitting them to have paſſed the iſland of Manilla, the Straits of Sunda, and the Cape of Good Hope; there ſtill remains one point againſt which nothing can protect them but a ſuperior fleet from England. In whatever degree of latitude the Cape of Good Hope may be doubled, in the homeward-bound paſſage, all our ſhips run nearly upon the ſame line to Saint Helena, ſo nearly,

nearly, indeed, that I ſuppoſe they ſcarcely deviate twenty leagues from the ſame track. If then a ſquadron of the enemy's ſhips from the Cape ſhould cruize to windward of this iſland, and within ſight of it, our India fleet muſt neceſſarily fall into their hands. And on this cruizing ground, where the wind is fixed and ſteady, the water ſmooth, and the weather always fine, the enemy's veſſels may remain for any length of time.

The enormous expence, and, indeed, the impracticability, of affording effective convoys to our Indian trade, under ſuch unfavourable circumſtances, muſt be obvious to every one. The expence of one effective convoy to be ſtationed off Saint Helena, as long as the Cape remains in the poſſeſſion of the French, to ſay nothing of the ſerious inconvenience of detaching ſhips of war from more important ſtations, would be much more than ſufficient to maintain the whole eſtabliſhment of the Cape for a twelvemonth; and, in all probability, more than the profits might amount to of the cargoes ſo convoyed. Saint Helena, beſides, is not adequate to furniſh any ſupplies for ſuch a convoy. With the greateſt exertions a few refreſhments are raiſed for the uſe of the iſland, and the ſurplus is diſpoſed of at a moſt extravagant rate for the uſe of the ſhips of the Eaſt India Company. They have few horned cattle, and not one of theſe can there be killed without the conſent of the Governor. Yet this is the only place we now have left where a convoy can be aſſembled. How incalculable then were the advantages of poſſeſſing a middle point between India and Europe, where every neceſſary refreſhment might be had in the greateſt abundance; and which, inſtead of being a point of danger and annoyance as it now

is, was the bulwark of ſecurity to our Indian trade and poſſeſſions.

Thoſe who may feel inclined to conſole themſelves for the loſs of the Cape, by reflecting that nothing of ſerious moment happened to our Indian fleets and poſſeſſions during the American war, ſhould recollect the great change of circumſtances that has taken place ſince that event. Holland, at that time, though an impoveriſhed and declining nation, was independent on France, and had her own poſſeſſions in India to protect; and France, though equally then, as now, zealous to accompliſh the ruin of our wealth and power in India, which ſhe had long in vain endeavoured to emulate, had but juſt the means of giving a feeble protection to her territorial poſſeſſions in that quarter. Armies were not raiſed, nor fleets equipped, with that facility under the monarchy, as under republican tyranny, or conſular deſpotiſm. Mr. Delacroix took great pains to impreſs on the mind of Lord Malmeſbury the acceſſion of ſtrength that France had acquired by her republican form of government. "Nous ne ſommes plus dans la dècrèpitude de la France mo-"narchique, mais dans toute la force d'une republique ado-"leſcente."

France having now no ſuch poſſeſſions in India to protect, her grand object will be, in co-operation with the Dutch, to endeavour to hold in their hands, by rendering it impregnable, the barrier of all India. When this is once effected, ſhe will find little difficulty in aſſembling, at her own iſlands of

France and Bourbon, a ſufficient number of troops and tranſports to diſturb the peace of our Indian ſettlements. Her aim will not be that of fighting our fleets of war, nor of making a direct attack on our Eaſtern poſſeſſions, but to abet and aſſiſt the native powers againſt us, with a view rather of deſtroying our empire in India, than any hope ſhe can poſſibly form of eſtabliſhing one of her own. Without funds and without credit ſhe can have little proſpect of amaſſing wealth by fair trade and honeſt induſtry; and will therefore attempt, by every means ſhe can think of employing, to effect the ruin of ours; by diſturbing the peace of our ſettlements through her intriguing agents; by forming alliances with thoſe who are diſpoſed to be hoſtile towards us; and by aſſiſting them with her troops.

It was in this point of view that the French conſidered the Cape of Good Hope to be more important than the Iſle of Ceylon, the ceſſion of which, I have reaſon to believe, they never meant to diſpute vigorouſly in negociation, being rather determined to ſtand a conteſt for the reſtoration of the Cape *nominally* to its ancient poſſeſſors. If, however, in order to obtain a peace, we were reduced to the neceſſity of accepting the alternative of either, as probably was the caſe, it became, no doubt, a very ſerious and intereſting conſideration, to eſtimate their comparative value and importance. The one rated as yielding a revenue of nearly a million a year, with a harbour not ſurpaſſed in the whole world; the key of all India; and a place, in the hands of a powerful enemy, from whence all India might be aſſaulted—the other, a barren promontory (for ſuch it was generally

generally eſteemed) at a great diſtance from our Indian territories, affording little or no revenue, and maintained at a great expence.

" If we give up Ceylon," has obſerved Lord Macartney, " being ſituated at the extremity of the peninſula of India, it " would become an immediate and terrific enemy to us in that " quarter, as commanding the power of invading from thence " both the coaſt of Malabar and Coromandel. To a maritime " power the excellent harbour of Trincomalée is a jewel of in- " eſtimable value; it holds the bay of Bengal at its mercy, and " affords every facility of overawing and controuling the navi- " gation of the Straits of Sunda and Malacca. Our Aſiatic " poſſeſſions, commerce, and marine, would conſequently lie " open to the depredations of the maſters of Ceylon.... Ad- " mitting then that Ceylon ſhould preponderate, if put into " the ſcale againſt the Cape, let it not be forgotten, however, " that *the Cape in an enemy's hands may become a powerful in-* " *ſtrument for their recovering Ceylon.*"

There can be no queſtion that the French were extremely glad we gave up the worſe, under the idea of its being an inſtrument in their hands of taking from us the better. Ceylon to them was of no great value. It furniſhes no ſupplies for an army or a navy, and would always be at the mercy of that power which could bring a ſuperior fleet into the Indian Seas; and we have ſhewn that no ſuch fleet of an enemy could be aſſembled there, nor victualled, nor proviſioned, whilſt the Cape

of Good Hope remained a Britiſh colony. It would have been a deſirable object then to retain poſſeſſion of a ſtation which would effectually have excluded them from the Indian Seas; and which always would have enabled us to confine them to their uſeleſs iſlands of France and Bourbon.

Of one thing England may be well aſſured, that the deſtruction of its commerce, as the ſource from whence its power and affluence are derived, is a ſentiment ſo deeply rooted in the mind of the Corſican that, ſo long as it continues to flouriſh, his iraſcible and vindictive temper will not allow him to keep on any terms of friendſhip with us. He is well aware that our commerce is our great ſupport, that, as Mr. Delacroix obſerved, it enabled us to ſubſidize all Europe againſt them; and that if he could once break up our commerce to India and China, and ſhut us out from the Mediterranean, the grand bulwark that now ſtands between him and univerſal ſovereignty would, in a great degree, be removed.

Should his views, unhappily for the world, ever be accompliſhed, an age of barbariſm would return, ten times darker than that which followed the irruption of the northern hordes. A deadly blow would be ſtruck at once to the liberty of the preſs; nothing would be written, nor printed, nor tolerated, but what the ſovereign deſpot ſhould find conducive to his univerſal ſway. The time would then come when *legit ut clericus*, inſtead of ſaving a man from death would be the ſure means of bringing him to his end.

It

It behoves his Majeſty's Government then to be upon its guard, and to watch the points where we are moſt vulnerable, in this reſpect, with unremitting attention; but above all, after providing for the ſecurity of the empire, to cruſh, in the cradle, the deſigns of the French upon India. The firſt ſtep to this deſirable object will be the recovery of the Cape of Good Hope; or, which would anſwer pretty nearly the ſame purpoſe, the deſtruction of the ſhipping that, from time to time, might be aſſembled there. An expedition for this purpoſe would require no troops; and, having once eſtabliſhed our ſecurity at home, ſo that we can venture to detach a ſquadron ſufficient for ſuch an enterprize, this is an object not unworthy the conſideration of Government. I have already obſerved that Table Bay, in the opinion of naval people, is favourable for putting ſuch a deſign in execution. I ſhould imagine that Simon's Bay is ſtill more ſo, there being no works, or none of any conſequence, to annoy our ſhipping from the ſhore.

There are two ſmall forts only, one on each ſide of the anchorage, both of which would be immediately ſilenced by a ſhip of the line. The wind, in the winter ſeaſon, when ſhipping frequent Simon's Bay, is always favourable for running directly into it, and equally ſo for ſtanding out into the Great Bay Falſe, in every part of which there is good anchorage. A ſuperior fleet will, therefore, at all times, take or deſtroy every ſhip that may be found there; and the ſhipping on the Cape ſtation are under an abſolute neceſſity of going either into Simon's or Saldanha Bay in the winter months, and of remaining there from May to

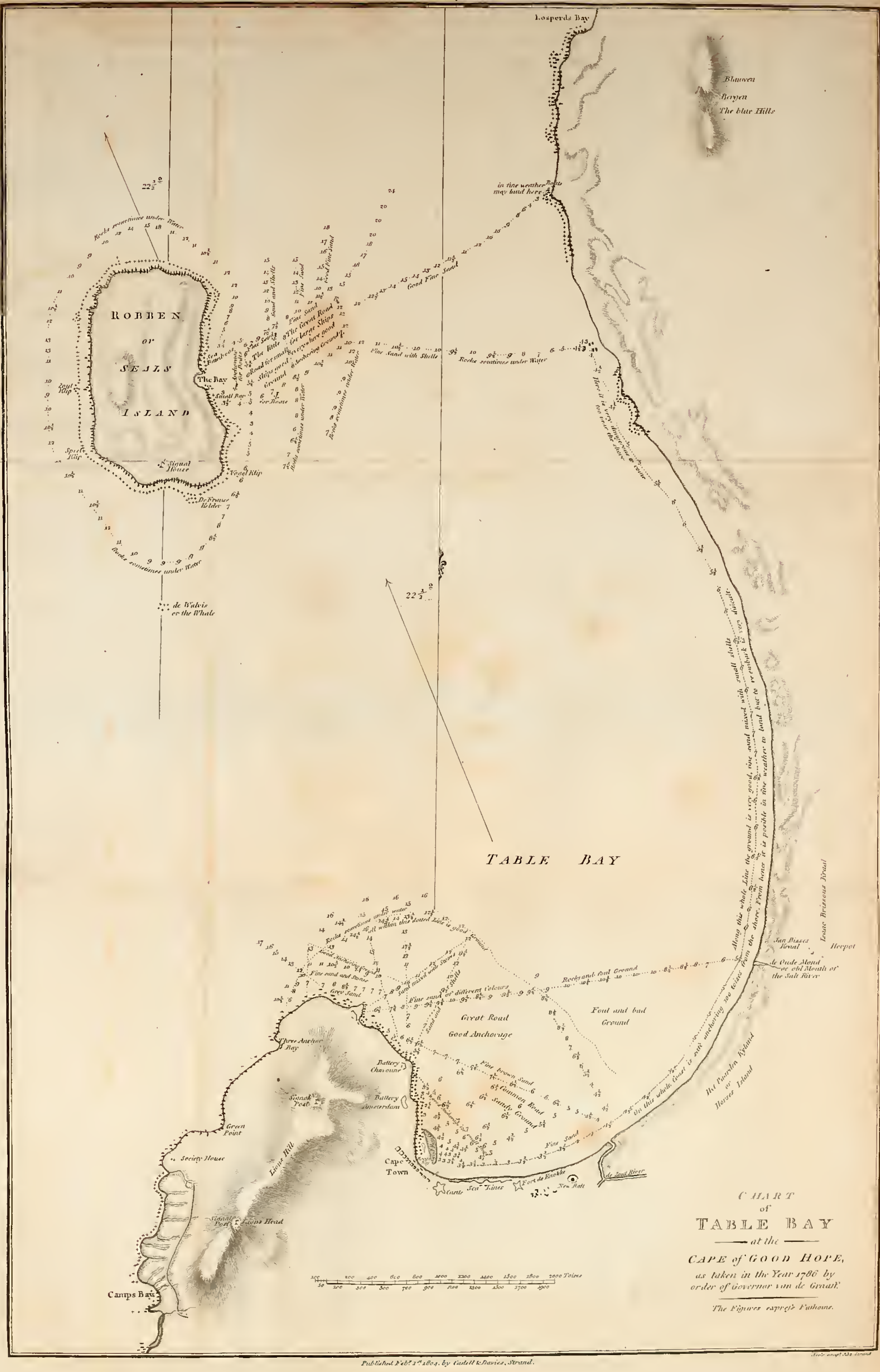
September inclusive. Saldanha Bay has yet no defences whatsoever, but I understand it was the intention of the Dutch Government to fortify the entrance.

Having now pointed out some of the principal conveniences that the Cape possesses as a naval station, it will be right to mention the disadvantages under which it labours in this point of view. The most serious of these, which, indeed, is the only material one that I am acquainted with, is the want of a secure and convenient harbour for refitting, repairing, or building ships. The two principal bays that are resorted to by shipping, one in the summer, the other in the winter months, are entirely open, and exposed to the two prevailing winds, the north-west and the south-east; nor does it appear to be practicable, by any expence, to render them secure and sheltered, nor to construct any kind of dock or harbour for the reception of large ships, and scarcely even of small craft.

If any thing of this kind were to be attempted it could only extend to the accommodation of the latter, and the only place for this purpose would be at Rogge Bay, where nature has laid an excellent foundation of rock, close to which there is a considerable depth of water, where the swell of the sea is broken by the jutting points on which are erected the Amsterdam and the Chavonne batteries. At all events, this would be a much better and more convenient landing place than at the present wooden wharf, which is barely kept up at an enormous annual expence.

In

To face page 255.



Published Feb. 1st 1804, by Cadell & Davies, Strand.

In all other parts of the bay an attempt to make any kind of harbour would be fruitleſs. The tide barely riſes five feet, and the conſtant rolling ſwell in the winter ſeaſon would always choak the entrance of any dock with ſand. Thus the mouth of the Salt River is alternately open and blocked up with ſand.

The annexed chart of Table Bay was conſtructed by order of Governor Van de Graaf in the year 1786, and has been found, by a diligent examination, to be extremely accurate. The anchoring-ground in general is tolerably good, but the ſhifting of the ſand leaves bare ſometimes whole ridges of the ſame kind of hard blue ſchiſtus that appears every where on the weſt ſhore of the bay. Theſe ridges are ſo ſharp, that a cable coming acroſs them is ſure to be cut in pieces. This has happened ſo frequently that the bay is full of anchors, which have never been fiſhed up; and theſe contribute equally with the rocks, to cut and chafe the cables of other ſhips. If ſome pains be not taken to remove the anchors, the number of which increaſe every year, there will not, in time, be a clear anchorage for a ſingle large ſhip. When the Dutch Admiral Dekker's ſquadron was blown out of Table Bay in February laſt they left ſix or eight anchors behind.

Admiral Pringle, I underſtand, was of opinion that the inconvenience ariſing from the rocks and the loſt anchors was in ſome degree remediable, by ſinking mooring-chains for the large ſhips, inſtead of their lying at anchor. In the ſouth-eaſt winds, which blow from September to the end of April, and which is the ſeaſon when all ſhips bound for the Cape reſort to Table Bay, there

there is no other danger than that of being driven out to ſea from the wear and tear of the cables; though the water is not ſmooth, yet the ſea is not high, and it is next to impoſſible for a ſhip to go on ſhore, unleſs on the ſouth point of Robben Iſland, which they have always time enough to avoid, the diſtance being ſeven or eight miles. Within this iſland and the continent there is excellent anchorage, where ſhips ſo driven out uſually bring up. Here, too, ſhips intending to come into Table Bay generally wait the abatement of a ſouth-eaſt wind, if it ſhould happen to blow too ſtrong for their working up againſt it. This iſland is too ſmall, and at too great a diſtance, to afford the leaſt ſhelter to Table Bay in the north-weſt winds that blow in the winter months.

The frequency, the ſtrength, and the long duration of the ſouth-eaſt winds are attended with conſiderable diſadvantage to commerce, it being ſometimes impracticable to ſhip or to land goods for many ſucceſſive days.

Theſe winds are very uncertain in their duration, there being ſcarcely two years in which their periods do not vary. The Dutch uſed to bring their ſhips round about the beginning of September; but as Simon's Bay is ſafe, at all times of the year, for a few ſhips, the Engliſh protracted the time of entering Table Bay to the beginning of October, yet, in the year 1799, his Majeſty's ſhip the Sceptre, with ſeven others, were driven on ſhore on the fifth of November.

The

The loſs of this ſhip was attended with many diſtreſsful circumſtances. At one o'clock ſhe fired a *feu-de joye*, in commemoration of the anniverſary of the popiſh plot; at ten the ſame evening ſcarcely a veſtige was to be ſeen, but the fragments of the wreck ſcattered on the ſtrand, in myriads of pieces, not a ſingle plank remaining whole nor two attached together. Captain Edwards, his ſon, with ten other officers, and near three hundred ſeamen and marines periſhed on this melancholy occaſion. Young Edwards, a fine boy of about fourteen years, was found the next day with a bible in his boſom; the father not till ſeveral days after. The following morning exhibited a diſmal ſcene of diſtreſs. The ſtrand was ſtrewed with dead carcaſes, moſt of them mangled in ſo ſhocking a manner by the ſhattered fragments of the ſhip, that they were obliged to bury them in holes upon the beach; the bodies that could be taken up whole were placed in waggons and carried to the uſual burying-ground.

The Oldenburg, a Daniſh man of war of 64 guns, went on ſhore the ſame day, but having drifted upon a ſmooth ſandy beach, the crew were ſaved, as were thoſe of all the other ſhips. The Sceptre was unfortunately thrown upon a ledge of rocks near the mouth of the Salt River. Captain Edwards, it ſeems, conformably to the cuſtom of the navy, employed every means to bring her up while drifting, and, having loſt their laſt anchor, bent even the forecaſtle guns to the cable. The Dutch, knowing from experience how ineffectual is every attempt when once a ſhip has parted her cables, pay no further attention to her

ſafety but, ſetting ſome of the head ſails, they run her aſhore between the wharf and the centre of the ſea-lines, upon a ſmooth ſandy beach, by which means, though the ſhip be loſt, the crew are ſaved.

Our officers ſeem to be divided in opinion as to the preference of Table Bay or Simon's Bay. They are certainly both defective, but the latter would appear to be the more ſecure, from the circumſtance of few, if any, ſhips having ever been known to drive on ſhore from their anchors, whilſt ſcarcely a ſeaſon paſſes without ſome being loſt in Table Bay. In the winter months, when the wind blows from north to north-weſt, forty or fifty ſhips may lie at anchor perfectly ſecure in Simon's Bay; and eight or ten may be ſufficiently ſheltered in the ſtrongeſt ſouth-eaſters. The Great Bay Falſe, of which this is an indent or cove, was ſo little known at the time of the capture by the Britiſh forces, that Rear-Admiral Pringle, in the year 1797, directed it to be ſurveyed and ſounded, in conſequence of which the exact ſituation was aſcertained of a very dangerous rock, placed directly in the paſſage of ſhips into Simon's Bay; a rock, of the exiſtence of which the Dutch were entirely ignorant. The annexed chart with the ſoundings is a copy of the ſaid ſurvey.

The uſual months in which ſhips reſort to Simon's Bay are from May to September incluſive. The diſtance from Cape Town, being twenty-four miles, and the badneſs of the road, moſtly deep ſand and ſplaſhes of water, render the communica-

FALSE BAY at the *CAPE* of *GOOD HOPE* with the Soundings
as taken in the Year 1797, by order of Rear Adm.l Pringle.

NOTE

The Buoy on Whittles Rock lies in 9 Fathoms at low Water, and bears from the Rock by Compass N.W. by N. about 3.5 Fathoms distant at 2 P.M. On Monday the 19th Dec.r 1796. the least water on the Rock was 11 Feet. it appears about 30 Feet long and 20 broad has irregular Soundings all round about 2 Cables from it.

The Variation in False Bay 23 West Lat. Cape Good Hope Pt. 34° 21' 30".

Published Feb.y 1st 1803, by Cadell & Davies Strand.

Neele sc. 352 Strand.

munication at all times difficult; but more eſpecially ſo in the winter; and few ſupplies are to be had at Simon's Town; a name with which a collection of about a dozen houſes has moſt unworthily been dignified.

The neceſſity of ſhips of war being ſent round into Simon's Bay for five months in the year might be attended with very ſerious conſequences to the ſafety of the colony, as far, at leaſt, as depended on the exertions of the navy belonging to the ſtation. Being a lee port, the chances are greatly againſt their being able to work up to Table Bay, and ſtill leſs to Saldanha Bay, to afford any aſſiſtance in the event of an attack by an enemy's fleet; which, without any interruption or moleſtation, might diſembark troops, and land artillery, ſtores, and ammunition at Robben Iſland, or any of the windward bays.

This being the caſe, it would ſeem more deſirable that the ſhips of war upon the ſtation ſhould winter in Saldanha Bay, being not only a windward port with reſpect to Cape Town, but one of the beſt harbours, perhaps, in the whole world. Here any number of ſhips may lie in perfect ſecurity at all ſeaſons of the year, either to the northward of the entrance in Hoetjes Bay, from whence they can at all times get out in the winter months, or to the ſouthward in ſummer, when, with equal facility, the ſouth-eaſterly winds will at any time carry them out. On the weſt ſide of Hoetjes Bay, nature has erected a granite pier, againſt the ſides of which ſhips may be brought as to the

ſide of a quay; and it terminates to the northward in a fine ſmooth ſandy beach, where boats may always land with ſafety. The poſition of Marcus Iſland, in the entrance, a ſolid block of granite, is peculiarly happy for protecting the bay, to which a battery erected upon it and mounted with heavy cannon would be fully competent. The different points alſo jutting into the bay are well calculated to provide for its defence.

The ſituation of Saldanha Bay is much more convenient than that of the peninſula for receiving the ſupplies afforded by the country. The deep ſandy iſthmus, whoſe heavy roads have been the deſtruction of multitudes of cattle, would be entirely avoided; and its diſtance from the corn diſtricts, which is the moſt material article of conſumption, is much leſs than that of the Cape. Its ſituation, with regard to all the northern parts of the colony, is much more convenient than Cape Town; and equally ſo for thoſe who inhabit the diſtant diſtrict of Graaf Reynet, and who uſually paſs over the Roode Sand Kloof.

It may be aſked, then, how it has happened, at the firſt foundation of the ſettlement, that the preference was given to Table Bay, which poſſeſſes not a ſingle convenience for ſhipping; and is, at the beſt, no better than an open and dangerous road? The anſwer has already been given in the laſt chapter, where it was obſerved, that the clear and copious ſtream of water ruſhing out of the Table Mountain, had determined the ſite of the Town. Unfortunately, no ſuch ſtream of water falls into

Published Feb.y 10 1803, by Cadell & Davies, Strand.

into Saldanha Bay; nor has any ſpring yet been diſcovered in the vicinity of its ſhores, that has been conſidered as ſufficient to ſupply the demands of a ſmall ſquadron for freſh water. I muſt obſerve, however, that the trials hitherto made have been very inſufficient. Indeed, I know of none but that of the late Sir Hugh Chriſtian, whoſe failure in this attempt I have already had occaſion to notice. It may be obſerved, in the annexed chart of the coaſts from Table Bay to Saldanha Bay, that in every part there are abundance of ſprings ſpontaneouſly burſting out of the ground, for not one of theſe have ever been dug for, nor a ſpade put into the ground in order to open the conduits and ſuffer them to run more freely. If, indeed, we conſider for a moment the ſituation of this low ſandy belt of land, ſtretching along the northern coaſt, common ſenſe muſt convince us that there is plenty of water at no great diſtance below the ſurface. It is bounded on the eaſt, at the diſtance only of ſeventy miles by a chain of mountains, whoſe ſummits are from two to nearly five thouſand feet high; and all the waters, from both ſides of theſe mountains, fall upon this narrow plain. A great part of them, it is true, ſink into the Berg River, but the Berg River itſelf is on a level with Saldanha Bay, into which, indeed, the whole body of it might, with great eaſe, be carried, as I mentioned in the firſt volume, where I alſo noticed the objections againſt ſuch a meaſure. The ſpring at *Witte Klip*, the White Rock, about ſix miles to the northward of Hoetjes Bay, ſeems amply ſufficient for the ſupply of a large fleet of ſhips, if collected and brought to the bay in pipes, the expence of which could not exceed a few thou-

ſand pounds. Even ſhould this not be found ſufficient for the purpoſes of the fleet and the neceſſary eſtabliſhment conſequential to its becoming the naval ſtation, a meaſure might be adopted which could not fail of ſecuring a conſtant ſupply of freſh water to any amount. This would be effected by bringing it in pipes from the Berg River, which never fails in the dryeſt weather, and the ſurface of which, contrary to almoſt all the other rivers of the colony, is very little ſunk below the general ſurface of the country. I ſhould think that ten thouſand pounds would go a great way towards accompliſhing this object, ſo important to every nation whoſe ſhipping trade to the eaſtward of the Cape of Good Hope. Were this once effected, the intereſt of the capital expended in the undertaking would be more than defrayed by an additional port duty of ten dollars or two pounds ſterling for each ſhip; a mere trifle, when compared to the eaſe and ſecurity in which ſhips would here ride at anchor, and thus avoid the wear and tear of Table Bay, beſides the conveniency of careening and repairing; and, above all, the perfect ſafety in which they would remain in all winds and at all ſeaſons of the year.

There can be little doubt, if a naval eſtabliſhment was once formed at Saldanha Bay, that many coaſting veſſels and fiſhing ſhips would be conſtructed here, as it affords every convenience that could be required for building ſhips, which would be the means of increaſing the coaſting trade, and eſpecially in the article of timber, the produce of the colony. Whether any of the foreſt trees of South Africa are ſuitable for building ſhips ſeems

ſeems, as yet, a doubtful matter. Hitherto they have not had any trial. With reſpect to ſize and form they are liable to no objections, and there can be little doubt that, by felling them at a proper time, and ſeaſoning them in ſuch a manner as the climate may require, they would be found to anſwer all the purpoſes that might be wanted, not only for the hull of a ſhip but alſo for maſts and yards. So little did they know, in the Cape, of the reſources of the colony, with reſpect to the timber, that of the forty-four diſtinct ſpecies of foreſt trees, of the wood of which I procured ſpecimens, that were delivered to Government by Lord Macartney, not more than ſix or eight were in partial uſe; of the reſt the names even were unknown.

The only bay within the limits of the colony, to the northward, is that of Saint Helena, which, by land from Hoetjes Bay is little more than fifteen miles. In ſhape and ſituation it reſembles Table Bay, but wants the attractions of the latter both in reſpect of the quality of the contiguous land and the quantity of water. Whalers ſometimes anchor in this bay, where, from the remote and undiſturbed ſituation, ſo many whales conſtantly reſort in the winter months, that they ſeldom find any difficulty of making up the deficiency of their cargo. It might be prudent, however, in the power who poſſeſſes the Cape, to have a guard frigate ſtationed in this bay, and another in Algoa Bay. The other parts of the coaſt are of leſs conſequence. They are frequented only by the whale fiſhers of America, and adventurers from London.

With

With all the imperfections of this ſouthern angle of Africa, with regard to its bays and conveniences for ſhipping, its geographical poſition on the globe will always render it a powerful inſtrument in the hands of a maritime nation to direct the commerce of India and China into new channels, to enrich its owners, and to diſtreſs their enemies.

CHAP. V.

Importance of the Cape of Good Hope, conſidered in a commercial Point of View, and as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery.

Intention of the United States in forming the Settlement.—Commerce diſcouraged.—Riſing Proſperity of the Colony checked.—Conſequences of its becoming a Free Port. *—American Trade.—Ships under neutral Flags and Britiſh Capitals.—Situation of Batavian Republic reſpecting the Cape.—Intereſts of the Eaſt India Company.—Cape conſidered as an Emporium of Eaſtern Produce—Objections to it—attended with Loſs to the Crown—and Injury to the London Market.—Remedy.—Trade from the Cape—to the Weſt Indies—to the Brazils—at the Diſcretion of the Company.—America—Holland—France—Advantages of the Cape as furniſhing Exports—Grain and Pulſe—Wine and Brandy—Wool—Hides and Skins—Whale Oil and Bone—dried Fruits—ſalt Proviſions—Soap and Candles—Aloes—Ivory—Tobacco.—Total Value of Exports in four Years.—Imports from England what—from India and China—by foreign Nations.—Table of Imports.—Balance of Imports over Exports. —State of the Colony.—Relapſe into Poverty.—Commercial Advantages not Important to Great Britain—conſidered as a Depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery.—Eſtabliſhment of this Fiſhery—might be excluſively in our Hands through the Cape —Black Whale—Spermaceti.—Bounties.—Seal Fiſhery in the Hands of Americans —Inducement for them to diſpoſe of their Skins.—Concluſion.*

THE original intention of the United Provinces, in forming a ſettlement at the Cape of Good Hope, was that of its being a place of refreſhment for the ſhipping of their Eaſt India Company, beyond which they thought it not prudent to

extend its uſe till very lately, after they had perceived the advantages it poſſeſſed as a military depôt for forming and preparing their troops, which were intended to ſerve in their Indian ſettlements. It was, at the ſame time, permitted to foreign ſhips to refit and refreſh at the Cape, on payment of certain port fees that were by no means extravagant. But as the ſupplying of ſuch ſhips with proviſions was a lucrative monopoly, acquired by favour or purchaſed for a ſum of money, the prices paid by foreigners were never leſs than double, and oftimes treble, of thoſe paid by the inhabitants. Hence little encouragement was held out for foreign ſhips to call at the Cape, beſide that of getting water and a few refreſhments for their crews.

All commerce, except ſuch as was brought in Dutch bottoms, was deemed clandeſtine and contraband; yet, ſuch illicit trade was not only winked at, but encouraged, by the ſervants of the Company, whoſe ſalaries, indeed, were ſo ſmall, that they could not ſubſiſt their families upon them. The ſupplies, alſo, for the Cape, of which the Company reſerved to itſelf the excluſive privilege of furniſhing, both from Europe and India, were ſometimes ſo ſcantily and ſo tardily brought in, that the inhabitants were under the neceſſity of ſmuggling certain articles of daily conſumption out of foreign ſhips for their immediate uſe.

As the Eaſt India Company conſidered the Cape in no other light than as a conveniency to their commerce and their ſettlements in the Eaſt Indies, to which point all their regulations reſpecting it tended, their ſyſtem of policy ſeemed to require that

that every impediment ſhould be thrown in the way of its becoming a flouriſhing ſettlement. The petty traffic they reſerved for themſelves, or allowed their ſervants to carry on, at this place, conſiſted in an exchange of colonial produce for the manufactures of Europe and India. And this traffic was not only a monopoly in the hands of the Company or ſome of its ſervants, but a fixed price or what is uſually called a *maximum* was impoſed both on imports and exports. Other regulations, that were adopted for the government of the colony, were little calculated to promote its proſperity; and, although many of theſe were altered and modified from time to time, on the repreſentations and remonſtrances of that part of the inhabitants, not engaged in the ſervice of the Company, yet few of them were productive of public benefit. The influence of the Company's ſervants was always ſufficient to counteract the operation of any meaſure that promiſed to be more advantageous to the general intereſts of the colony, than to the individual benefit of thoſe entruſted with the government.

There cannot be a ſtronger proof of this being the caſe than the general proſperity that prevailed under the Britiſh Government; when, in the courſe of ſix years, with the adminiſtration of the ſame political ſyſtem reſerved to them by the capitulation, except in ſo far as regarded the aboliſhment of monopolies, which were nearly done away, the public revenues were more than doubled, without an additional tax or increaſe of rents; and property in the town was alſo raiſed to nearly the double of its former value.

The Dutch Eaſt India Company, in fact, were jealous of eſtabliſhing a power at the Cape which, by too great encouragement, might, in time, ſhake off their yoke in Europe, and overawe their ſettlements in India. For, although the whole population of the colony, excluſive of ſlaves and Hottentots, barely amounted to 20,000 ſouls, men, women, and children, which were ſcattered over an extent of country whoſe dimenſions are not leſs than 550 by 230 Engliſh miles, yet, as it was not convenient for the Government to keep up a great force at the Cape, theſe coloniſts, few as they were, felt themſelves ſufficiently ſtrong to give it, at leaſt, a good deal of trouble. Nor, indeed, could it always place a firm dependence on the forces that were ſtationed there, theſe being chiefly hired troops, of which both officers and men entered frequently into family connections with the inhabitants. Thus circumſtanced, it would have been no difficult matter for the coloniſts to cut off, at any time, thoſe refreſhments, without which the ſhips of their Eaſt India Company would be unable to proceed on their voyage to India.

The Dutch ſettlers ſeemed to be fully aware of their advantage in this reſpect in making their late weak attempt at independence, which, though then unſucceſsful, they may again feel themſelves inclined to renew, if, at a peace, their old maſters ſhould be allowed to retain the colony. The preſent weakneſs and exhauſted finances of the Batavian Republic, will not be able to ſupport even the ſame degree of authority over its ſubjects here as before; and the Aſiatic Council, on finding themſelves no longer capable of holding the government of the Cape, as a con-

conveniency to their trade, might, probably, be the leſs ſcrupulous in rendering it a miſchievous agent againſt us. Indeed, excluſive of any vindictive motives, they might, perhaps, be tempted by the brilliant idea of eſtabliſhing a free mart of import and export at the extremity of Africa; which, like another Tyre or Alexandria, ſhould concentrate in itſelf the reſources and ſupplies of every other region of the globe.

The idea of declaring the Cape of Good Hope a free port was ſuggeſted, and, in all probability, might have been carried, at the late negociations at Amiens, had not the interference of the Britiſh cabinet wiſely counteracted a meaſure which, though profitable to ſpeculators and the inferior nations of Europe trading to the Eaſt, muſt infallibly have proved ruinous to the concerns of the Engliſh United Company of merchants trading to the Eaſt Indies. The ſales of Leadenhall-ſtreet would ſuffer beyond calculation, were ſuch a meaſure to be adopted by the Dutch; and of all nations the Engliſh would be the laſt to benefit by it; whilſt the Danes, Swedes, Spaniards, and Portugueze would find their advantage in purchaſing cargoes of India and China goods at the Cape of Good Hope, at a moderate advance and without duties, in preference of applying to the London market, where they are liable to duties or puzzled with drawbacks; or rather than proſecute the long and expenſive voyage through the Eaſtern Seas.

In like manner it is to be apprehended that, at a general peace, the French, having neither credit nor capital of their own, will not only, by means of the Cape, conſolidate a force in the Iſles of

France

France and Bourbon to be ready to act againſt us and to diſturb the tranquillity of our Indian ſettlements, but that they will likewiſe oblige the Dutch to allow an emporium of Eaſtern produce at this extremity of Africa for the ſupply of foreign nations, and particularly of the Spaniards and Portugueze on the Brazil coaſt, to the prejudice of the intereſts of the Britiſh Eaſt India Company.

It was an opinion, at one time, pretty generally entertained, that by reaſon of the long and expenſive voyage to India, and of the moderate profits with which the Company was ſatisfied, the throwing open of the India trade would be leſs injurious to the intereſts of the Company than ruinous to the concerns of the private merchant who might be induced to engage in it. Yet we ſee great numbers of ſhips every year proceeding, even as far as China, under foreign flags, but with Britiſh capitals; and it is certain that the Americans, with very ſmall ſhips and proportionate capitals, find their account in the India and China trade, excluſive of that part which employs them in carrying home the private property of individuals, who have enriched themſelves in India. The Americans, with the returns of their lumber cargo, which they can always diſpoſe of at the Cape, and the produce of their South Sea Fiſhery in oil and ſeal-ſkins, will always be able to purchaſe a cargo of China goods, part of which they may find convenient to diſpoſe of at the Cape on the return-voyage, in exchange for wine and brandy. With the reſt they not only ſupply the Weſt Indian and American poſſeſſions of foreign powers, as well as the markets of their own extenſive country, but it is well known they have, of late years, very

very materially checked the re-exportation of India and China goods from England to our own iſlands in the Atlantic.

It is obvious, then, that the Americans, by trading direct to India and China, can afford to underſell the Engliſh Weſt India merchants in our own iſlands, notwithſtanding the drawbacks allowed on export from Leadenhall-ſtreet; and, conſequently, that they may find their advantage in being allowed to diſpoſe of the whole or part of their cargoes at the Cape of Good Hope; to the prejudice of the Britiſh Eaſt India Company and the encouragement of Engliſh ſmugglers, of which, indeed, the directors were not without their apprehenſions, even whilſt the Cape remained in our hands as a dependency of the crown.

And if the Americans can contrive to make this a beneficial commerce, under all the diſadvantages of working up a capital to trade with in the courſe of a long protracted voyage, how much more ſo will ſhips, under neutral flags and Engliſh capitals, carry on a lucrative trade to and from the ſouthern emporium of Africa; more injurious, in proportion as they are more active, than the ſhips actually employed by foreign merchants?

Here, then, is another cogent reaſon that, one might ſuppoſe, would have had ſome influence on the minds of the directors, and have operated ſo far, at leaſt, as to have compelled them to ſtate to Government the danger to their concerns of relinquiſhing the Cape; whereas the indifference they thought fit to aſ-

ſume, though too affected to be real, unfortunately had the ill effect of diſparaging and undervaluing it in the eyes of the nation. If they ſhould be inclined to plead a want of information with regard to the treaty of peace, let them recollect that, under the adminiſtration of Lord Bute, after the preliminaries of peace had been ſigned by the Duke of Bedford, the latter was inſtructed, at the inſtance of the Court of Directors, to alter an article that related to the Carnatic, or to break off the negociation; and the article was altered accordingly. Thus might it alſo have been with regard to the Cape of Good Hope, had the directors conſulted the real intereſts of the Eaſt India Company. But, as there is reaſon to believe that, though late, they have ſeen their error, and that they are now convinced the Cape muſt either become a Britiſh territory, or their intereſts will very materially ſuffer; it is to be hoped they will ſhew themſelves as ſolicitous to remove the evil as they were before indifferent in preventing it; for ſhould the preſent opportunity be allowed to ſlip, *Tempus erit magno cum optaverit emptum.*

What the Dutch meant to have done with it, had not the preſent war broken out, is uncertain. I was told, from good authority, that their intention was to give it a fair trial of ten or twelve years, unclogged and unfettered; to endeavour to raiſe it, by every encouragement, to its greateſt poſſible value as a territorial poſſeſſion; to admit the commerce of all nations on equal terms with their own, and to allow an influx of ſettlers from Europe; if, at the end of that time, the revenues were not ſo far improved as not only to meet the ordinary and contingent

tingent expences of the eſtabliſhment and the garriſon, but to produce a ſurplus for the uſe of the State, that they ſhould then conſider how to diſpoſe of it to the beſt advantage.

All ſhips were, accordingly, admitted to an entry of European, American, or Indian produce and manufactures, on payment of a duty of 10 per cent. on the invoice prices; and all Indian goods, teas and ſpices excepted, were ſuffered to be again exported on a drawback of the ſame amount as the duty. How far ſuch a regulation may interfere, in time of peace, with the intereſts of our Eaſt India Company, I am not ſufficiently acquainted with the ſubject to determine; but it would ſeem to open a wide door for ſmuggling Indian commodities into Europe, under Engliſh capitals, to an amount that muſt be alarming to the Directors themſelves.

The operation of this meaſure will be checked, to a certain degree, by the preſent war, which, it is to be hoped, may ultimately be the means of once more annexing the ſouthern extremity of Africa to the dominions of Great Britain. In ſuch an event, the determination of ſecuring it, at a peace, will be a more important object than the conſideration how its government is to be adminiſtered; whether as a dependency of the crown, or as a territorial poſſeſſion of the Eaſt India Company. The intereſts, indeed, of the two, are ſo intimately connected, that any queſtion of privilege, in a matter of ſuch national importance, is a mere ſecondary conſideration, and ought, therefore, to bend to circumſtances. The intereſts of the Company, during our late tenure, were, as I have ſhewn, ſecured and

promoted in every reſpect. They had their agent eſtabliſhed at the Cape, and not the ſmalleſt article of Eaſtern produce, not even the moſt trifling preſent, was allowed on any conſideration to be landed, without a poſitive declaration, in writing, from their ſaid agent, that the landing of ſuch article did not interfere with, nor was in any ſhape injurious to, the concerns of his employers. It was, indeed, one of the firſt objects of the crown, after taking poſſeſſion, to conſult the intereſts of the Eaſt India Company in every point of view; not only in providing for their conveniency and ſecurity, by its happy poſition and local aſcendancy, but by opening a new market and intermediate depoſitary for their trade and commodities. It was even propoſed to place the cuſtom-houſe under their ſole direction, in order to preclude any grounds of complaint. In a word, in every point of view, except that of appointing the civil eſtabliſhment, the Cape might have actually been conſidered as a ſettlement of the Eaſt India Company.

Leaving, however, the queſtion of privilege to be diſcuſſed by thoſe who are better informed, and more intereſted in its deciſion than myſelf, I proceed to enquire,

To what extent the Cape of Good Hope might have been rendered advantageous to the intereſts of the Britiſh empire, as an emporium of Eaſtern produce?—as furniſhing articles of export for conſumption in Europe and the Weſt Indies?—as taking, in exchange for colonial produce, articles of Britiſh growth and manufacture?

And,

And, laſtly, to conſider the important advantages that might be derived from it, as a central depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery.

It is a point of too intricate and nice a nature for me to decide, how far it might be adviſeable for Great Britain to eſtabliſh at the Cape an entrepôt for Indian produce, in the hands, and under the direction, of the Eaſt India Company, and ſhall, therefore, content myſelf with barely ſuggeſting ſome of the probable conſequences that might reſult from ſuch a meaſure.

The grand objection againſt making the Cape an emporium between Europe and the Eaſt Indies, and between the Weſt Indies, America, and Aſia, is the prejudice it would neceſſarily occaſion to the ſales of Leadenhall-ſtreet, and the conſequent diminution of his Majeſty's cuſtoms; for, though the Eaſt India Company might be made reſponſible to the crown for the duties on the amount of its ſales at the Cape, yet the intention of the emporium would entirely be defeated, if the duties demanded there ſo far enhanced the value of the Indian commodities, as to make it equally eligible for foreign ſhipping to proceed to India, or to reſort to the London market. And if theſe duties were reduced, it would obviouſly be attended with a loſs to the revenues of the crown; unleſs, indeed, the augmentation of the ſales, in conſequence of the meaſure, ſhould be found to be adequate to the reduction of the duties.

It is liable alſo to another objection, grounded on the detriment that would enſue to the London market in general. It is certain that foreign merchants, purchaſing goods at Leadenhall-ſtreet, find their advantage by laying in, at the ſame time and ſending in the ſame ſhip, an aſſorted cargo, the produce of our colonies and the manufactures of Britain. Now if theſe merchants could contrive to purchaſe Indian articles at a cheaper market than that of London, they might alſo be induced to make up their cargo with other articles at the ſame place, to the prejudice of the London trader.

Theſe objections may, perhaps, loſe much of their weight by the following conſiderations. The Eaſt India Company's trade, according to the Directors' own account, is fully competent to the whole ſupply of the Eaſt India and China markets, in commodities of European growth and manufacture: and they are ſatisfied in ſupplying the demands of thoſe markets merely without a loſs, in order to monopolize the trade and cut out foreign nations, who are thus obliged to purchaſe cargoes chiefly in exchange for ſpecie. Even the privilege of 3000 tons allowed to the private merchant, by the terms of the Company's late charter, is ſaid never to be filled up; to ſuch a low rate have they reduced the prices of European articles in India and China, that the private trader finds no advantage in ſending goods on his own account, on a moderate freight, to the eaſtward of the Cape of Good Hope. The Americans are the only nation who, by their fiſheries, are enabled to work themſelves into a cargo to exchange for India and China goods; with which they

ſupply

ſupply their own colonies and the Weſt India iſlands, to the prejudice of the ſales of the Britiſh Eaſt India Company.

It will reſult, from theſe conſiderations, that the Eaſt India Company, upon the ſame plan, could ſupply their emporium at the Cape with the produce and manufactures of Great Britain to any amount, and at ſo cheap a rate as to underſell any other nation. That the Americans, finding no longer a market at the Cape for their lumber cargoes, would confine their export trade to articles of peltry and ginſeng, which they might be induced to bring to the emporium in exchange for teas, nankeen cloth, and muſlins, at a moderate advance price, ſuch as would not make it worth their while to proceed to India and China. That other foreign nations, trading to this emporium, might be accommodated there with Britiſh goods and manufactures, nearly on the ſame terms as in London, to make up an aſſorted cargo. That a very extenſive trade might be opened with the coaſt of Brazil and the ports of South America, both in Indian commodities and articles of the growth and manufacture of Great Britain; thoſe ports, on that continent, belonging to Portugal being now ſupplied through Liſbon at an enormous high rate; and thoſe of Spain, frequently without any ſupply at all, but what they receive from Engliſh whalers and others in a clandeſtine manner.

The amount of European and Indian goods (the latter chiefly prize articles) exported from the Cape in the laſt four years, generally in Portugueze ſhips by Engliſh adventurers, or in Engliſh whalers, for the coaſt of Brazil, the Weſt India iſlands, and Mozambique,

zambique, was about 850,000 rix dollars, or 170,000 pounds currency. On the articles of European growth and manufacture, whoſe value might amount to about half of the above ſum, there muſt have been a very conſiderable profit to the private merchant at the Cape, beyond what would be required by the Eaſt India Company, and conſequently they muſt have been ſold at a high rate. Yet, under theſe diſadvantages, the trade to the coaſt of Brazil might have been extended to many times the amount.

As in the caſe of the Cape becoming a commercial depôt in the hands of the Eaſt India Company, the conſumption, in Spaniſh and Portugueze America, of Eaſtern produce, would increaſe to a very great extent, for all which they would pay in ſpecie; and as the Company feel the greateſt want of ſpecie for their China trade, and ſtill more for the neceſſary uſes of their Indian empire, the ſupply of hard money they would thus obtain, would conſiderably leſſen, if not entirely put an end to, the difficulties under which they now labour on that account. And the additional quantities of Indian produce and manufactures that would be required for this new channel of trade might prove, in ſome degree, an indemnity to the natives of India for what the Company draw from them in the ſhape of revenue to be ſent to Europe.

The quantity of European and Indian produce conſumed in South America is by no means trifling. I obſerved in Rio de Janeiro a whole ſtreet, conſiſting of ſhops, and every ſhop filled with Indian muſlins and Mancheſter goods, which, having

come through Liſbon, were offered, of courſe, at enormous high prices. The trade, it is true, that ſubſiſts between England and Portugal, might render it prudent not materially to interfere with the Portugueze ſettlements; but the caſe is very different with regard to thoſe of Spain. The Mother Country, more intent upon drawing ſpecie from the mine than in promoting the happineſs of its ſubjects in this part of the world, by encouraging trade and honeſt induſtry, ſuffers them to remain frequently without any ſupply of European produce and manufacture. It is no uncommon thing, I underſtand, to ſee the inhabitants of Spaniſh America with ſilver buckles, claſps and buttons, ſilver ſtirrups and bits to their bridles, whilſt the whole of their clothing are not worth a ſingle ſhilling. The whalers, who intend to make the coaſts of Lima and Peru, are well acquainted with this circumſtance, and generally carry out with them a quantity of ready made ſecond-hand clothing, which they diſpoſe of at a high rate in exchange for Spaniſh dollars. All this branch of trade might, with great advantage to both parties, be carried on from the Cape of Good Hope.

The emporium, therefore, being ſupplied by the Eaſt India Company with European goods, as well as with India and China commodities, the firſt to be ſold at a very ſmall advance on the London market price, and the latter exempt, or nearly ſo, from all duties, might be the means of putting a ſtop to the clandeſtine traders upon Britiſh capitals, but navigating under neutral colours, which has long been a ſubject of unavailing complaint. The Directors of the Eaſt India Company would, no doubt, be able to decide as to the rate at which it would be worth

worth the while of theſe adventurers to make their purchaſes at the Cape, rather than continue their voyage to India or China.

Such an entrepôt might likewiſe be the means of opening a lucrative branch of trade with the Weſt Indies; a trade that would not only put a ſtop to that which, of late years, the Americans have ſo ſucceſsfully carried on, but might open a new ſource for colonial produce, eſpecially for its wines, which, with a little more attention and management in the manufacture, might be made to ſuperſede thoſe of Madeira, that are now conſumed there to a very conſiderable amount, notwithſtanding their enormous prices, which limit their conſumption to the higher ranks of the iſlanders. Good Cape Madeira might be delivered, at any of the Weſt India iſlands, at leſs than one-fourth of the expence of real Madeira.

A new branch of trade might alſo be opened between the Cape and New South Wales, the latter ſupplying the former with coals, of which they have lately diſcovered abundant mines, in exchange for wine, cattle, butter, and articles of clothing.

If, however, the Eaſt India Company, after making the experiment, ſhould find it injurious to its intereſts to continue the Cape as an emporium for Indian produce; it will always be in its power to reduce it to the ſame ſtate in which it remained whilſt in the hands of the Dutch; to clog it as much as poſſible with duties and difficulties, ſufficient to deter all ſhips, except their

their own, from trading to it; and, in ſhort, to allow them no other commerce than the purchaſe of proviſions in exchange for bills or hard money. It will always be at their diſcretion to admit or to ſend away all foreign adventurers. By the exiſting laws of the colony, no perſon can reſide there, but by ſpecial licence; and the Governor is authorized to ſend away whomſoever he may be inclined to conſider as an improper perſon to remain in the ſettlement.

If the experiment ſhould ſucceed, the obvious reſult would be an excluſive trade to India and China veſted in the Engliſh Eaſt India Company. The commerce carried on by the Americans, their only dangerous rivals at preſent, would be diverted into another channel, or, at all events, would ſuffer a conſiderable reduction. Should the Dutch ever riſe again as an independent nation, they would find it expedient to court the friendſhip and alliance of Great Britain in the Eaſt; and, in the preſent low ſtate of their finances, would be well ſatisfied with the excluſive privilege of the ſpice-trade, and with any portion of the carrying-trade that Great Britain might think proper to aſſign to them. Any encroachment on the part of this nation might eaſily be checked by a refuſal of the uſual accommodations at the Cape, without which their trade and navigation to the Eaſtern Seas muſt totally be ſuperſeded. If, at a peace, they are to become a dependency of France, directly or indirectly, the Cape in our hands will always enable us to cramp their commerce to the eaſtward. As to France, having neither credit nor capital, without ſhipping and without manufactures,

its trade to the Eaſt will, in the nature of things, be inconſiderable for a long time. Her firſt object will be to ſend out troops and ſtores to endeavour to deſtroy, at ſome future period, our trade and poſſeſſions in India, which ſhe has long regarded with envy and jealouſy—and we have already ſhewn how far the Cape may be inſtrumental in checking or in forwarding, according to the power who holds it, her projects in this part of the world.

I now proceed to inquire to what extent the Cape of Good Hope may be conſidered as advantageous to the intereſts of the Britiſh nation, by furniſhing articles of export for general conſumption in Europe and the Weſt Indies. Its importance, in this point of view, will readily be decided from the ſtatement of a few ſimple facts collected from the cuſtom-houſe books, together with the ſupplies that were conſumed by the army, the navy, and the inhabitants during our poſſeſſion. It may be obſerved, however, that no true eſtimate can be formed from ſuch ſtatement of what the colony is capable of producing, cramped as it always has been by reſtrictive regulations, which the indolent diſpoſitions of the ſettlers tended but too much to cheriſh; and, therefore, that the following account of colonial produce actually conſumed and exported, is not to be taken as the ſtandard meaſure of its worth, as a territorial poſſeſſion, nor conſidered as any comparative quantity of what it might ſupply, when governed by a ſyſtem of ſalutary laws, and inhabited by an induſtrious and intelligent race of men.

The

The chief articles of colonial growth and produce, conſumed upon the ſpot and exported to the Eaſt Indies, Europe, and America, may be comprized under the following heads:

Grain and Pulſe	*Salt Proviſions*
Wine and Brandy	*Soap and Candles*
Wool	*Aloes*
Hides and Skins	*Ivory*
Whale Oil and Bone	*Tobacco*
Dried Fruits	

I ſhall take a ſhort view of each of theſe articles ſeparately.

Grain and Pulse.

The wheat produced at the Cape is ſaid to be as good and heavy as that of moſt other parts of the world. A load of this grain conſiſts of ten *muids* or ſacks, equal to 31 Wincheſter buſhels: and a muid, or $3\frac{1}{10}$ Wincheſter buſhels, uſually weighs 180 Dutch pounds, which is equal to $191\frac{1}{4}$ pounds Engliſh. The returns are from 10 to 70, according to the nature of the ſoil, and the ſupply of water. Mr. Duckitt, the Engliſh farmer, informed me that he obtained ſeventy for one from a new ſort of wheat, of a ſmall hard grain, at the farm of Klapmutz, near the Cape, where the returns of the ordinary kind, ſown under ſimilar circumſtances, were only eighteen and twenty. A ſmall quantity of wheat only is raiſed on ſuch farms as are within the diſtance of one day's journey from the Cape, the beſt part of the ground in thoſe contiguous to the peninſula

being chiefly employed in extenſive vineyards; and ſtill leſs grain is cultivated beyond the diſtance of a three days' journey from the town, where the inhabitants are all graziers. The quantity of grain that might be raiſed may be conſidered as indefinite; but the great diſtance from any market, the badneſs of the roads, and the weak ſtate of the cattle, will always operate againſt an extended cultivation. In addition to theſe obſtacles, the farmer had no encouragement given to him to raiſe more than a limited quantity, as the prices were always fixed by the Government, and bore a proportion to the ſtate of the harveſt. If, therefore, the harveſt happened to fail, it was an advantageous circumſtance to the farmer; as he received the ſame money for a ſmaller quantity, and had leſs trouble and leſs expence in bringing it up to town.

The ſurplus, purchaſed by Government, in fruitful years, was laid up in magazines againſt a ſeaſon of ſcarcity. At the time of the capture there was found in ſtore near 40,000 muids, part of which was ſent to England; but the following year not affording a productive crop, the ſcarcity was ſo great, that Government found it neceſſary to prohibit the uſe of white bread; nor, ſince that period, has it been able to lay up in ſtore a ſingle buſhel of wheat; nor to allow any exportation, beyond what was neceſſary for the conſumption of the crews of the ſeveral ſhips during their voyage; and this was generally ſent on board in biſcuit and flour.

The Dutch ſeldom paid more than from 20 to 40 rix dollars the load; the Engliſh never leſs than from 40 to 60 rix dollars,

five of which make a pound currency, which, being paper money, was generally 20 per cent. under a pound ſterling. The bakers of the Cape were required to take out a licence annually, and their number was limited; ſo that, by the regulations of the police, which, in this reſpect, were excellent, the inhabitants had always bread at a reaſonable price.

Barley is a productive grain at the Cape of Good Hope. If the rains happen to fall early, in the month of April for inſtance, there is no ſoil, however impoveriſhed by a continual ſucceſſion of crops, none, however ſhallow and poor, that will not yield a tolerable crop of barley; or, to ſpeak more correctly, of *beer* or *big;* for the only trial of flat-eared barley I ever ſaw in the colony, was at the Governor's ſeat of *Ronde-boſch*, and it did not ſeem to promiſe much ſucceſs. The former is juſt as good as the latter at this place; for the Cape boor, having always plenty of animal food, would diſdain to eat bread mixed with barley-meal. The only uſe that is made of it is to feed their horſes. For this purpoſe a great part of that which is grown in the vicinity of the Cape is cut down when green, juſt as the ear begins to ſhoot; the dry barley and the chaff is brought from the oppoſite ſide of the iſthmus. The number of horſes kept by the Engliſh, and the ſuperior manner in which they were fed, encouraged the cultivation of barley to the prejudice of that of wheat. At the capture of the colony, the market price of barley was 1½ rix dollar the muid, but General Sir James Craig, ſeeing the neceſſity of keeping up a certain number of cavalry as part of the garriſon, and knowing that this grain would neceſſarily riſe in conſequence of it, made a voluntary offer of 2½ rix

rix dollars the muid in order to ſecure a certain portion from each farmer for the uſe of the garriſon, which they inſtantly accepted. The following year barley roſe to five dollars the muid, and, at one time, was not to be had for leſs than ten. A brewer of the name of Van Reenen, employs a ſmall quantity, but the beer he makes is ſo execrable, that none drink it but ſuch as cannot afford to purchaſe European beer.

Rye is a thriving grain at the Cape, but is little uſed except for cattle, and then only while it is green; and oats run ſo much into ſtraw, that they are fit only for horſes as green fodder.

Peas, beans, and kidney beans are abundantly productive, and might be ſupplied to any amount; but they are in little demand except by ſhips that touch at the Cape. Indian corn or maize grows here fully as well as in any part of the world, and might be cultivated to any extent; the plant for cattle, and the prolific heads for hogs and poultry. The ſame may be obſerved with regard to the various kinds of millet, three of which I cultivated here with the greateſt ſucceſs, but neither one nor the other are much known beyond the Cape peninſula.

The different kinds of grain and pulſe that are brought up to Cape Town, except oats, are ſubject to a certain toll at the barrier, which, at the prices they bore under the Dutch Government, amounted to about the tythe or one-tenth of their value. The following table ſhews the quantity of each that paſſed the barrier, and which, of courſe, includes the conſumption

tion of the Town, the garriſon, and the navy, as well as the exportation, in four ſucceſſive years.

	Years.	Muids of Wheat.	Muids of Barley.	Muids of Rye.	Muids of Peas.	Muids of Beans.
	1799	34,951	17,130	184	435	344½
	1800	35,685	25,641½	444	366	326½
	1801	32,322¾	21,054	835½	808½	471
	1802	28,402½	21,084	441½	168	216
Total of 4 years		131,361¼	84,909½	1905	1777½	1358

Of the above quantity of wheat were annually required,

For the uſe of the inhabitants	-	18,000
Army	-	8,000
Navy	-	4,000
Total	Muids	30,000

So that in none of the above years could a greater quantity be ſpared, for ſhips calling for refreſhments, than four or five thouſand muids; and in the laſt year the inhabitants and the garriſon were reduced to an allowance. It may, therefore, be fairly concluded that the Cape, in its preſent ſtate, is not capable of exporting any grain.

Wine and Brandy.

Theſe two articles, with thoſe above mentioned, may be conſidered as the ſtaple commodities of the Cape of Good Hope. Grapes grow with the greateſt luxuriancy in every part of this extenſive colony; but the cultivation of the vine is little underſtood, or, to ſpeak more properly, is not attended to with that diligence which in other countries is beſtowed upon it. Hence the wines are ſuſceptible of great improvement, and the quantity of being increaſed indefinitely.

Ten or twelve diſtinct kinds of wine are manufactured at the Cape, and each of thoſe have a different flavour and quality at the different farms on which they are produced. From difference of ſoil, from ſituation, and management, ſcarcely any two vineyards, of the ſame kind of grape, give the ſame wine. By throwing under the preſs the ripe and unripe grapes, together with the ſtalk, moſt of the wines have either a thinneſs and a ſlight acidity, or, for want of a proper degree of fermentation, and from being preſſed when over ripe, acquire a ſickly ſaccharine taſte. An inſtance of the former is perceptible in that called *Steen*, which reſembles the Rheniſh wines; and of the latter, in that which is known by the name of *Conſtantia*. It is generally ſuppoſed that this wine is the produce of two farms only, of that name; whereas, the ſame grape, the muſcadel, grows at every farm; and at ſome of them in Drakenſtein the wine preſſed from it is equally good, if not ſuperior, to the Con-

Conſtantia, though ſold at one-ſixth part of the price; of ſuch importance is a name.

This wine ſells at the Cape for 70 or 80 rix dollars the *half-aum*, a caſk which ought to contain 20 gallons; but the avaricious propenſity of the proprietors, increaſing with the demands for their wine, has led them to fabricate falſe caſks, few of them that come to England being found to meaſure more than ſeventeen or eighteen gallons; many not above ſixteen. And if they find out that the wine applied for is to be ſent abroad, they are ſure to adulterate it with ſome other thin wine. For, according to their own returns, the quantity exported and conſumed in Cape Town, as in the caſe of Madeira wine, greatly exceeds the quantity manufactured.

By a ſettlement made between the Dutch Commiſſaries General, in the year 1793, and the owners of the two farms of Great and Little Conſtantia, the latter were bound to furniſh, for the uſe of Government, 30 aums each, every year, at the rate of 50 rix dollars the aum; which was regularly taken, after being taſted and ſealed up in preſence of perſons appointed for that purpoſe, by the Engliſh Government, to the no little annoyance of the Great Lord of Conſtantia, who is the ſon and ſucceſſor to the man of whom Mr. Le Vaillant has drawn a very entertaining portrait. The wine was paid for out of the Colonial Treaſury, and the whole of it, under Lord Macartney's government, ſent home to the Secretary of State, for the diſpoſal of his Majeſty.

The quantity of Conſtantia wine exported in four ſucceſſive years was,

	Years.	Half Aums.	Value.
In	1799	157	11,752
	1800	188	14,070
	1801	173	13,007
	1802	210	15,745
In four years		728	54,504 R. D.

The beſt bodied wine, that is made at the Cape, is the Madeira, conſiderable quantities of which were uſually ſent to Holland and to the Dutch ſettlements in India. The Americans, alſo, have taken ſmall quantities, of late years, in exchange for ſtaves, a trade that ſeems ſuſceptible of very conſiderable augmentation. The Engliſh merchants at the Cape have made up cargoes of the different ſorts of wines, both to the Eaſt and the Weſt Indies, and they have been tried in the northern nations of Europe. But they univerſally complain that the wines ſeldom agree with the ſamples, and that they frequently turn ſour; ſo little regard for reputation have the *Koopmen* of the Cape. Confined to this ſpot from their birth, they have had little opportunity of improvement from education and none from travel, and are conſequently ignorant of the nature of foreign trade. If their wines are once on board ſhip, they conclude there is an end of the tranſaction, and, if previouſly ſold, whether they arrive in good or bad condition, is no concern of theirs.

The

The country boor, having no ſurplus ſtock of caſks, is under the neceſſity of ſelling to the merchant in the town his new wine; and here it is mixed and adulterated in a variety of ways. The pipe is called a *legger*, and contains 8 *half-aums* or 160 gallons, and each legger pays to Government a duty, on entering the town, of three rix dollars. The price paid to the farmer is generally from 20 to 30 rix dollars the *legger*, which, after adulteration, is ſold again from 40 to 60 rix dollars, and frequently at the rate of 80 to 100 rix dollars.

The article of brandy might become a very important commodity in the export trade of this ſettlement, provided the cultivators of the vine were inſtructed in, and would take the trouble of, carrying the manufacture of it to that ſtate of improvement of which it is ſuſceptible. At preſent they have no proper diſtillatory apparatus, nor knowledge to conduct thoſe which they have. The filth that is uſually thrown into the ſtill with the refuſe of the wines, is diſguſting; and the imperfect proceſs is not ſufficient to deſtroy the extraneous and diſagreeable taſte communicated by the loathſome materials. This ſpirit has been tried in the Eaſt Indies, but it ſeems they give the preference to arrack. If diſtilled with proper care, and under proper management, it might become a valuable article for the navy; and would, no doubt, find a market in both North and South America. Brandy is exported at 80 to 160 rix dollars the *legger*, and is ſubject to the ſame toll, on entering the town, as wines. And both wine and brandy are liable to a further duty of 5 rix dollars the legger on exportation. The following table ſhews the quantity of wines and brandy that paſſed the

barrier, and which, of courſe, includes the conſumption of the town, of the army, and navy, as well as the exportation in four ſucceſſive years.

Years.	Leggers of Wine.	Leggers of Brandy.
1799	6953 5/8	598 1/2
1800	5199 7/8	472 3/4
1801	5463 7/8	320 1/8
1802	4031 7/8	273 7/8
In four years	21,649 1/4	1665 1/4

Of the above quantity have been exported from 400 to 800 *leggers* of wine, and from 30 to 100 of brandy, annually, beſide the Conſtantia; the reſt has been conſumed in the town. So that the whole export value of wines, including the Conſtantia, and the brandy, may amount, one year with another, to about 50,000 rix dollars, or 10,000 *l.* currency.

The gradual reduction of the quantity brought up to town, as appears in the table, is no proof of the diminution of the quantity manufactured, but ſhews rather that the wine farmer, by being in a condition to increaſe his ſtock of caſks, is enabled to keep his wine at home, and not obliged, as he uſually was, to deliver it to the wine merchants in the Cape at their own price. This circumſtance has contributed not a little to the melioration of the colonial wines.

Wool.

This article is likely to become a ſource of colonial revenue, which, till of late years, was never thought of; and certainly never turned to any account, before the Deputy Paymaſter's bills on his Majeſty's Paymaſters-General became ſo ſcarce, and bore ſuch high premiums, that the private merchant was glad to make his remittances in any kind of merchandize rather than paper. The wool of the common broad-tailed ſheep of the Cape is little better than hair, and is conſidered of no value whatſoever; but there is a mixed breed in the colony, of Spaniſh and Engliſh, introduced by the late colonel Gordon, the wool of which is extremely beautiful, and ſeems to improve by every croſs. A family of the name of Van Reenen has paid ſome attention to this ſubject, and by procuring European ſheep, from time to time, out of ſhips that called for refreſhments, has ſucceeded in improving their ſtock beyond their expectations.

No trouble whatſoever is beſtowed upon the ſheep; they neither waſh nor ſalve them, nor, till they were inſtructed by the Engliſh agriculturiſt, did they know how to ſhear them. Yet, the wool taken off in this rough condition has ſold, as I have been informed, in the London market at 3*s.* to 3*s.* 6*d.* the pound. By a proper degree of attention being paid to the ſheep, and by obviating any degeneracy in the breed from a croſs with the common Cape ſheep, this article bids fair to become, in the courſe of a few years, one of the moſt valuable and productive exports that the ſettlement is capable of furniſhing.

niſhing. The mutton of the Cape ſheep is alſo of a very inferior quality, being coarſe and void of flavour; and they have little inteſtine or net fat, nor, indeed, any other except what is accumulated on the tail, which is of too oleaginous a nature to be employed alone as tallow. In every reſpect, therefore, the mixed Spaniſh breed is preferable to that which, at preſent, conſtitutes the numerous flocks of the greater part of the farmers.

Hides and Skins.

The exportation of theſe articles, both dried and ſalted raw, has been increaſed to a very conſiderable degree under the Britiſh Government, and the price has conſequently augmented in proportion to the demand for them. Ox hides, which formerly might be purchaſed at half a dollar a piece, roſe to two dollars. They are ſubject, on exportation, to a duty of threepence-halfpenny a piece. The quantity exported may amount to between 2000 and 3000 annually. Thoſe that are taken off the cattle, killed in the country, are employed by the farmers in various uſes, but principally as harneſs for their waggons, and as thongs to ſupply the place of cordage. The ſkins of ſheep, that are killed in the country, are converted into ſmall ſacks and other articles of houſehold uſe, and employed as clothing for the ſlaves and Hottentots, and are ſtill worn by the farmers themſelves, after a rude kind of dreſſing, as pantaloons. In the Cape they are ſomewhat better prepared, and are uſed for clothing of ſlaves, for gloves and other purpoſes. Few of them are exported. Skins of the wild antelopes and of the leopard are brought occaſionally to the Cape market, but the quantity

tity is ſo ſmall as ſcarcely to deſerve mentioning as articles of export.

The ſame may be obſerved with regard to oſtrich feathers, the value of which, exported annually, amounts to a mere trifle. The boors, very imprudently, rob every neſt of this bird that falls in their way; preferring the immediate benefit of the eggs to the encouragement of a future ſource of profit. The boors, indeed, derive little advantage from oſtrich feathers, being preſents generally expected by the butchers' ſervants, who go round the country to purchaſe cattle and ſheep for the Cape market. The whole value of one year's exportation of this article does not exceed 1000 rix dollars; of hides and ſkins of every denomination not more than 5000 or 6000 rix dollars.

Whale Oil and Bone.

The vaſt number of black whales that conſtantly frequented Table Bay induced a company of merchants at the Cape to eſtabliſh a whale fiſhery, to be confined ſolely to Table Bay, in order to avoid the great expence of purchaſing any other kind of craft than a few common whale boats. With theſe alone they caught as many whales as they could wiſh for; filling, in a ſhort ſpace of time, all their caſks and ciſterns with oil. Having gone thus far they perceived that, although whale-oil was to be procured to almoſt any amount at a ſmall expence, they were ſtill likely to be conſiderable loſers by the concern. The conſumption of the colony in this article was trifling; they had no ſhips of their own to ſend it to Europe, nor caſks to

put on board others on freight. Their oil, therefore, continued to lie as a dead ſtock in their ciſterns, till the high premium of bills on England induced ſome of the Britiſh merchants to purchaſe and make their remittances in this article. The price at the Cape was about 40 rix dollars the *legger*, or tenpence ſterling per gallon. Sometimes, indeed, ſhips from the Southern Whale Fiſhery took a few caſks to complete their cargoes, but, in general, they preferred to be at the trouble of taking the fiſh themſelves, in or near ſome of the bays within the limits of the colony, where they are ſo plentiful and ſo eaſily caught, as to enſure their ſucceſs. It is remarked that all the whales which have been caught in the bays are females; of a ſmall ſize, generally from 30 to 50 feet in length, and yielding from ſix to ten tons of oil each. The bone is very ſmall, and, on that account, of no great value.

The Whale Fiſhing Company, finding there was little probability of their diſpoſing of the oil without a loſs, thought of the experiment of converting it into ſoap. The great quantity of ſea-weed, the *fucus maximus*, or *buccinalis*, ſo called from its reſemblance to a trumpet, which grows on the weſtern ſhore of Table Bay, ſuggeſted itſelf as an abundant ſource for ſupplying them with kelp or barilla; and from the ſpecification of a patent obtained in London, for freeing animal oils of their impurities, and the ſtrong and offenſive ſmell that train-oil in particular acquires, they endeavoured to reduce to practice this important diſcovery. The experiment, however, failed; for though they ſucceeded in making ſoap, whoſe quality, in the moſt eſſential points might, perhaps, be fully as good as was deſired,

deſired, yet the ſmell was ſo diſguſting that nobody would purchaſe it. Unluckily for them there came in, alſo, juſt at that time, a cargo of prize ſoap, which was not only more agreeable to the ſmell, but was ſold at a rate lower than the Company could afford to manufacture theirs of train-oil. Being thus thwarted in all their views, they ſold the whole concern to an Engliſh merchant, who was ſuppoſed to be turning it to a tolerable good account, when it was ſignified to him, by the preſent Dutch Government, that the excluſive privilege of fiſhing on the coaſts of Africa, within the limits of the colony, was granted to a company of merchants reſiding in Amſterdam; and, therefore, that he could not be allowed to continue the concern.

Dried Fruits.

Under this head the moſt important articles are almonds and raiſins; of which a quantity might be raiſed ſufficient for the conſumption of all Europe. I have already obſerved that many thouſand acres of land, now lying waſte, might be planted with vineyards, within ſight of Table Mountain. In like manner might the whole ſea-coaſt, on both ſides of Africa, be planted with vines. In no part of the world are better grapes produced than at the Cape of Good Hope; and it is unneceſſary to obſerve that good grapes, under proper management, cannot fail to make good raiſins; but with reſpect to this, as well as moſt other articles, little care and leſs labour are beſtowed in the preparation. As in the making of wine the whole bunch is thrown under the preſs, ſo, in the proceſs for converting grapes

into raiſins, neither the rotten nor the unripe fruit is removed; the conſequence of which is, that the bad raiſins ſoon ſpoil thoſe that otherwiſe would have been good.

The almonds are, in general, ſmall, but of a good quality. The trees thrive well in the very drieſt and worſt of ſoils; in no ſituation better than among the rocks on the ſides of mountains, where nothing elſe would grow; and they will bear fruit the fifth year from the ſeed. The quantity, therefore, of theſe nuts might be produced to an indefinite amount. The conſumption in the Cape of both theſe articles is very conſiderable, as furniſhing part of the deſert, without which, after ſupper as well as dinner, few houſeholders would be contented; the omiſſion might be conſidered as a criterion of poverty, a condition which the weakneſs of human nature leads men generally to diſſemble rather than avow. Ships alſo take conſiderable quantities of almonds and raiſins as ſea-ſtock; but few have hitherto been ſent to India or to Europe as articles of trade. Before the capture the prices might have admitted of it, almonds being then not more than from a ſhilling to eighteenpence ſterling the thouſand, and raiſins from twopence to threepence a pound; but the increaſed demand, in conſequence of the increaſed number of ſhipping, as well as of inhabitants, raiſed the price of the former from two ſhillings to two ſhillings and ſixpence the thouſand, and of the latter from fourpence to ſixpence a pound.

Walnuts and Cheſnuts are neither plentiful nor good; and the latter will barely keep a month without decaying, ſo that theſe

theſe are never likely to become articles of general conſumption or of exportation.

But dried peaches, apricots, pears, and apples, are not only plentiful, but good of their kind. The peaches and pears are uſed in the deſert, but apricots and apples are intended for tarts; the latter, indeed, are nearly as good as when freſh from the tree. All the others are ſqueezed together and dried whole, but the apples are ſliced thin and dried in the ſun, till they take the conſiſtence and appearance of ſlips of leather, of that kind and colour uſually called the York tan. Theſe, when ſoaked in water, ſwell out and make very excellent tarts; and are ſold chiefly as an article of ſea ſtock. The whole value of dried fruit, ſhipped in the year 1802, amounted only to 2542 rix dollars, as appears by the Cuſtom-houſe books, on which every pound is entered, being ſubject to a duty on exportation of 5 per cent.

Salt Provisions.

This is an article, as I have already taken occaſion to obſerve, that is ſuſceptible of great improvement; not, however, to be prepared in Cape Town, after the cattle have been haraſſed and famiſhed for two months in travelling over a barren deſert, but cured at Algoa Bay, and brought down in ſmall coaſting veſſels to the Cape. Salted mutton, and mutton hams, might, however, be, and are, indeed, to a certain degree, prepared at the Cape, but not to that extent of which they are capable.

It is remarkable that the Dutch, being ſo fond of fat, ſhould not pay more attention to increaſe the breed of hogs. Except a few, that are ſhamefully ſuffered to wallow about the ſhores of Table Bay, where, indeed, they are ſo far uſeful as to pick up dead fiſh and butchers' offals, that are ſcattered along the ſtrand, the hog is an animal that is ſcarcely known as food in the colony. Yet, from the vaſt quantities of fruit, the productive crops of barley, of peas, beans, and other vegetables, they might be reared at a ſmall expence; whereas, from the manner in which they are at preſent fed in Cape Town, no one thinks of eating pork.

Salt, in the greateſt abundance, is ſpontaneouſly produced within a few miles of Cape Town, by the evaporation of the water in the ſalt lakes that abound along the weſt coaſt of the colony. Two kinds of fiſh, the *Hottentot* and the *Snook*, are ſplit open, ſalted, and dried in the ſun in large quantities, principally for the uſe of the ſlaves who are employed in agriculture, to correct the bilious effects of bullocks' livers and other offals that conſtitute a great part of their food. They are eaten alſo by the inhabitants of the town, when boiſterous weather prevents the fiſhing-boats from going out; for a Dutchman ſeldom makes a meal without fiſh. Small quantities are ſometimes taken as ſea-ſtock, but ſo inconſiderable as hardly to deſerve mentioning.

Salt butter is a very material article both for the conſumption of the town, the garriſon, and the navy, as alſo for exportation. The quality greatly depends on the degree of cleanlineſs that has

been employed in the dairy, and more particularly on the pains that have been taken in working the butter well, to free it from the milky particles, which, if ſuffered to remain, very ſoon communicate a ſtrong rancid taſte that is highly offenſive. That which comes from the Snowy Mountains is accounted the beſt; but, to ſay the truth, very little deſerves the appellation of good. Under the Dutch Government it was uſually ſold from fourpence to ſixpence a pound, but, of late years, it was ſeldom to be purchaſed under a ſhilling a pound.

Soap and Candles.

The firſt of theſe articles is manufactured by almoſt every farmer in the country, and, in ſome of the diſtricts, furniſhes a conſiderable part of their ſurplus revenue, which is appropriated to the purchaſe of clothing and other neceſſaries at their annual viſit to Cape Town. The unctuous part is chiefly derived from the fat of ſheeps' tails, and the potaſh or barilla is the lixiviated aſhes procured from a ſpecies of *Salſola* or ſalt wort that grows abundantly on thoſe parts of the *Karroo*, or deſerts, that are interſected by periodical ſtreams of water. The plant is known in the colony by the Hottentot name of *Canna*. With this alkaline lye and the fat of ſheep, boiled together over a ſlow fire for four or five days, they make a very excellent ſoap, which generally bears the ſame price as ſalt butter. Being moſtly brought from the diſtant diſtrict of Graaf Reynet at the ſame time with the butter, they roſe and fell together according to the quantity in the market, and the demand there might happen to be for them.

them. The great diſtance from the market limited the quantity that was manufactured, and not the ſcantineſs of the materials.

This diſtance is a ſerious inconvenience to the farmer, and a great encouragement to his natural propenſity to idleneſs. If he can contrive to get together a waggon load or two of butter or ſoap, to carry with him to Cape Town once a year, or once in two years, in exchange for clothing, brandy, coffee, a little tea and ſugar, and a few other luxuries, which his own diſtrict has not yet produced, he is perfectly ſatisfied. The conſideration of profit is out of the queſtion. A man who goes to Cape Town with a ſingle waggon from the Sneuwberg muſt conſume, at leaſt, ſixty days out and home. He muſt have a double team, or 24 oxen, and two people, at the leaſt, beſides himſelf to look after, to drive, and to lead the oxen and the ſheep or goats, which it is neceſſary to take with them for their ſubſiſtence on the journey. His load, if a great one, may conſiſt of fifteen hundred weight of butter and ſoap, for which he is glad to get from the retail dealers at the Cape, whom he calls *Semaus* or Jews, ſixpence a pound, or juſt half what they ſell the article for again. So that the value of his whole load is not above 37*l.* 10*s.* But as he has no other way of proceeding to the Cape, except with his waggon, it makes little difference in point of time whether it be laden or empty. And the more of theſe looſe articles he can bring to market, the fewer cattle he has occaſion to diſpoſe of to the butcher. Theſe conſtitute his wealth, and with theſe he portions off his children.

Candles

Candles being an unſafe article to tranſport by land carriage are ſeldom brought out of the country; but a vegetable wax, collected from the berries of a ſhrubby plant, the *myrica cerifera*, plentiful on the dry marſhy grounds near the ſea-ſhore, is ſometimes ſent up to the Cape in large green cakes, where it may be had from a ſhilling to fifteenpence a pound. The tallow to be purchaſed at the Cape is barely ſufficient for the conſumption of the town and the garriſon, and the candles made from it are ſeldom lower than fifteenpence a pound.

Aloes.

This drug is extracted from the common ſpecies of aloe known by the ſpecific name of *perfoliata*, and is that variety which, perhaps on account of the abundant quantity of juice it contains, botaniſts have diſtinguiſhed by the name of *ſuccotrina*, though vulgarly ſuppoſed to have taken the name from the iſland of Socotra, where this drug is ſaid to be produced of the beſt quality, in which caſe, at all events, it ought to be *ſocotrina*.

Large tracts of ground, many miles in extent, are covered with ſpontaneous plantations of this kind of aloe, and eſpecially in the diſtrict of Zwellendam, at no great diſtance from Moſſel Bay. In this part of the country the farmers rear few cattle or ſheep, their ſtock conſiſting chiefly of horſes; and they formerly cultivated a certain quantity of corn, which they delivered at a ſmall fixed price, for the uſe of the Dutch Eaſt India Company,

at

at Moſſel Bay; but ſince this practice has been diſcontinued, they find it more advantageous to bring to Cape Town a load of aloes than a load of corn; the former being worth from 18 *l.* to 20 *l.*, the latter only from 8 *l.* to 10 *l.* The labour employed in collecting and inſpiſſating the juice is ill repaid by the price it bears in Cape Town, which is ſeldom more than threepence a pound; but it is uſually performed at a time of the year when the ſlaves have little elſe to do; and the whole ſtrength of the family, ſlaves, Hottentots, and children, are employed in picking off, and carrying together, the leaves of the aloes. Three or four pounds, I underſtand, are as much as each perſon can collect and prepare in a day.

This drug, it ſeems, has of late years been much employed in the porter breweries of London, which occaſioned an increaſed demand, and which may one day be extended almoſt to an indefinite amount, if the partial experiments of the ingenious Sigr. Fabroni on the juice of this plant can be realized on the great ſcale; experiments that promiſe a no leſs valuable acquiſition to the arts than a colouring ſubſtance which may be uſed, with advantage, as a ſubſtitute for cochineal. The quantity of inſpiſſated juice brought to the Cape market was eagerly bought up by the Engliſh merchants, and ſent to London as a remittance. The amount of this article entered on the Cuſtom-houſe books, in the courſe of four years, was as follows:

Years.

	Years.	Lbs. Weight.	Value R. D
	1799	126,684	9361 1
	1800	71,843	5217 0
	1801	52,181	4258 3
	1802	91,219	6829 0
Total of 4 years		lbs. 341,927	R. D. 25,665 4

It is ſubject to a ſmall exportation duty of ſixteen-pence for every hundred pounds.

Ivory.

However abundant this article might once have been in the ſouthern part of Africa, it is now become very ſcarce, and, in the nature of things, as population is extended, muſt progreſſively diſappear. Except in the foreſts of Sitſikamma and the thickets in the neighbourhood of the Sunday River, no elephants are now to be found within the limits of the colony. Of thoſe few which the Kaffers deſtroy, the large tuſks are always cut up into circular rings and worn on the arms as trophies of the chace. The ſmall quantity of ivory that is brought to the Cape market is collected chiefly by two or three families of *baſtaard* Hottentots (as the coloniſts call them) who dwell to the northward, not far from the banks of the Orange River. The whole quantity exported, in the courſe of four years, as appears by the Cuſtom-houſe books, amounted only to 5981 pounds, value 6340 rix dollars.

The Hippopotamus or ſea-cow is now no longer within the limits of the colony; and, though the teeth of this animal are conſidered as the beſt ivory, yet the quantity of it procured was always comparatively ſmall with that of the elephant. We may ſafely conclude then, that ivory is not to be reckoned among the valuable exports which the Cape can ſupply for the markets of Europe.

Tobacco.

I mention this article not ſo much on account of the quantity exported, which, indeed, is very trifling, as of the great abundance the colony is capable of producing. It is impoſſible the plant can thrive better in any part of the world than in this climate, or require leſs attention; and I have underſtood from perſons, qualified to give an opinion on the ſubject, that the Cape tobacco, with a little art in the preparation, is as good in every reſpect as that of Virginia. As all male perſons, old and young, ſmoke in the Cape, from the higheſt to the loweſt, and as American tobacco generally bears a high price, the conſumption of that of native growth is conſiderable. The inferior ſort is uſed by ſlaves and Hottentots.

I have now enumerated the moſt material articles of export which the Cape either does, or eaſily might, furniſh for foreign markets. There ſtill remain a few trifling things, as preſerved fruits, garden ſeeds, ſalt, vinegar, &c., which, though valuable as refreſhments for ſhips calling there, are of no conſequence as exports. The total value of every kind of colonial produce collectively,

lectively, that has actually been exported from the ports of the Cape in four years, is as follows:

		Value.	
In 1799	—	R.D. 108,160	0
1800	—	85,049	2
1801	—	50,519	6
1802	—	57,196	0
In four years		R. D. 300,925	0
		or £. 60,185	0 Currency.

The obvious concluſion to be drawn from the view now taken of the amount of exports in colonial produce is, that the Cape of Good Hope, in its preſent condition, is of very little importance to any nation, conſidered as to the articles of commerce it ſupplies for exportation to foreign markets. The ſurplus produce, beyond the ſupply of its own inhabitants, a garriſon, and navy of eight or ten thouſand men, and the refreſhments furniſhed to ſhips trading and caſually calling there, is ſo trifling as to merit no conſideration. But that, by a new ſyſtem of things, it is ſuſceptible of great improvement; and the ſupply of the moſt important articles of being extended to an almoſt indefinite amount.

The next point that comes under conſideration is the advantages that may reſult to the Britiſh Empire by the increaſed conſumption of goods, the growth and produce of Great Britain

and her colonies, from the acquiſition of the Cape of Good Hope. The commodities imported from England into this ſettlement conſiſted in,

Woollen cloths, from the firſt ſort down to woollen blankets.
Mancheſter goods of almoſt every deſcription.
Hoſiery, haberdaſhery, and millinery.
Boots, ſhoes, and hats.
Cutlery, iron tools, ſtationary.
Bar and hoop iron.
Smiths' coals.
Houſehold furniture.
Paint and oils.
Earthenware.
Naval ſtores.
Tongues, hams, cheeſe, and pickles.

From India and China were imported,

Bengal, Madras, and Surat piece goods; the coarſe ones for the ſlaves.
Tea, coffee, ſugar, pepper, and ſpices.
Rice.

In addition to theſe the Americans were in the habit of bringing lumber-cargoes, of deal plank, ſtaves, balk, ſalt fiſh, pitch, turpentine, &c.; and the Danes, Swedes, and Hamburgh ſhips aſſorted cargoes of iron, plank, French wines, beer, gin, Seltzer water, coffee, preſerves, pickles, &c. in exchange for refreſh-

ments, to defray the charges of repairs and other neceſſaries, or for hard money to carry to India or China.

As it is not material to ſtate the exact amount of each kind of goods imported, I ſhall ſubjoin an abſtract account of the whole importation into the Cape by Britiſh or foreign bottoms, from Europe, Aſia, and America, in the courſe of four years, including the value of the prize goods brought in, and of the ſlaves imported within the ſame period.

Years.	Britiſh goods on Britiſh bottoms, duty free.	India goods on Britiſh bottoms, 5 per cent. duty.	European prize goods, 5 per cent. duty.	Indian prize goods, 10 per cent. duty.	Prize ſlaves and others imported by Britiſh merchants.	Total produce imported in Britiſh bottoms.	European and American goods on foreign bottoms, 10 per cent. duty.	Indian goods on foreign bottoms, 10 per cent.	Total produce imported in foreign bottoms.
	Rd. ſk.	*Rd. ſk.*	*Rd. ſk.*	*Rd. ſk.*	*Rd.*	*Rd. ſk.*	*Rd. ſk.*	*Rd. ſk.*	*Rd. ſk.*
1799	674,009 0	104,124 0	20,623 5	100,487 0	245,600	1,144,844 3	118,244 0	64,219 6	182,463 6
1800	474,706 0	212,446 0	17,797 0	45,335 0	184,000	934,284 0	51,258 0	109,490 0	160,748 0
1801	587,023 4	290,117 0	568,425 0	129,642 6	271,200	1,846,408 2	136,394 5	3,337 2	139,731 7
1802	532,366 4	455,397 4	93,788 2	130,720 6	198,205	1,410,478 0	142,684 6	15,892 7	158,577 5
In 4 years	2,268,105 6	1,062,084 4	700,633 7	406,185 4	899,005	5,336,014 5	448,581 3	192,939 7	641,521 2

Total importation, Rix dollars 5,977,535 7 Sk.

or £. 1,195,507 3 6 Currency.

It will naturally be demanded how, or in what manner, has the colony contrived to pay this apparent enormous balance of imports over the produce exported, eſpecially when it is known that moſt of the European articles were ſold at an advance of from 50 to 100 per cent. on the invoice prices, which, indeed, could not well be otherwiſe, conſidering the high premium on bills, and the ſmall quantity of colonial produce to be had for remit-

remittances. The following rough ſtatement will ſerve to explain this matter:

The army, independent of the clothing and ſtores, &c. ſent from home and money remitted by the officers, could not expend leſs, in European and Indian goods, and in colonial produce, than 180,000 *l.* per annum, which in four years is —	£.	720,000	0	0
The navy expenditure might, perhaps, amount to half that ſum —		360,000	0	0
The re-exportation of India prize goods, and of European goods to the Weſt India iſlands, the coaſt of Brazil, and Mozambique, in four years, about —		170,000	0	0
Surplus colonial produce exported as above		60,185	0	0
Making in the whole	£.	1,310,185	0	0
Value of the imports as above		1,195,507	3	6
Balance in favour of the colony and the merchants reſiding there —	£.	114,677	16	6

Beſides this balance, which may be conſidered as the joint profit of the coloniſts and Engliſh merchants on that part of colonial produce and imported goods, which have been diſpoſed of, the ſhops and warehouſes at the evacuation of the colony were ſo full, that it was calculated there were then European and Indian articles ſufficient for three years' conſumption, and the

the capital of ſlaves imported was augmented nearly to the amount of 180,000 *l.*

It appears, then, that five-ſixths of the trade of the Cape of Good Hope has been occaſioned by the conſumption of the garriſon and the navy. And, conſequently, that unleſs a very conſiderable garriſon be conſtantly ſtationed there, or ſome other channel be opened for the export of their produce, the coloniſts, by having increaſed their capitals in the days of proſperity, and eſpecially of ſlaves, which is a conſuming capital, will rapidly ſink into a ſtate of poverty much greater than they were at the capture of the colony. The preſent garriſon are only about one-third of the garriſon and navy kept there by Great Britain; and they will, moſt aſſuredly, not conſume one-fifth of the quantity of colonial produce and imports; ſo that ſome new vent muſt be diſcovered for the remaining four-fifths, or the colony will be impoveriſhed. What then muſt be the condition of this place if the garriſon, ſmall as it is, ſhould be ſupported at the expence of the inhabitants? It muſt, obviouſly, very ſpeedily conſume itſelf, and the majority of the inhabitants will be reduced to the neceſſity of clothing themſelves with ſheep-ſkins. It is, therefore, the intereſt of the coloniſts that the Cape ſhould remain in the hands of the Engliſh; the truth of which, indeed, they felt and loudly expreſſed, before the Dutch flag had been flying two months. A total ſtagnation to all trade immediately followed the ſurrender of the place. The merchant of the town was clogged with a heavy capital of foreign goods, for which there was no vent; and the farmer had little demands for his produce. Every one was deſirous to ſell, and, of courſe, there were

were no buyers. The limited amount, for which the Government was authorized to draw on the Aſiatic Council of the Batavian Republic, had long been expended; and the arrears of pay and allowances, ſtill due to the garriſon, inflamed it to mutiny. The great depreciation of the paper currency held out no encouragement for the Government to try its credit by extending the capital already in circulation. All hard money had totally diſappeared, except Engliſh copper penny pieces, to the amount of about four thouſand pounds. The addition of a French garriſon, under the preſent circumſtances, would, in all probability, haſten the deſtruction of the colony, in ſo far as regarded a ſupply of foreign articles in exchange for colonial produce. For, it is not to be ſuppoſed, after their treatment of the Dutch at home, they would be inclined to ſhew more conſideration for their colonies.

As a dependency on the Crown of Great Britain, in the natural courſe of things, it became a flouriſhing ſettlement; but the commercial advantages derived to Britain, in conſequence of the poſſeſſion of it, are not of that magnitude as, conſidered in this point of view only, to make the retention of it a *ſine qua non* to a treaty of peace; not even when carried to the higheſt poſſible degree of which they are ſuſceptible. Taken in this point of view only, England might very well diſpenſe with the poſſeſſion of the Cape.

It now remains to conſider, in the laſt place, the important advantages that might reſult to England, by eſtabliſhing at the Cape a kind of central depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery.

It

It is an univerſally acknowledged truth that, with the promotion of navigation, are promoted the ſtrength and ſecurity of the Britiſh empire; that the ſea is one great ſource of its wealth and power; and that its very exiſtence, as an independent nation, is owing to the preponderancy of its navy; yet, it would ſeem that the advantages offered by this element have hitherto been employed only in a very partial manner. Surrounded as we are, on all ſides by the ſea, every ſquare mile of which is, perhaps, not much leſs valuable than a ſquare mile of land in its produce of food for the ſuſtenance of man, how long have we allowed another nation to reap the benefit of this wealthy mine, and to ſupport from it, almoſt excluſively, a population which, in proportion to its territory, was double to that of our own; a nation which, by this very ſource of induſtry and wealth, was once enabled to diſpute with us the ſovereignty of the ſeas? A nation of fiſhermen neceſſarily implies a nation of ſeamen, a race of bold and hardy warriors. The navy of England has deſervedly been long regarded as the great bulwark of the empire, whilſt the moſt certain ſource of ſupplying that navy with the beſt ſeamen has been unaccountably neglected. Our colonies and our commerce have been hitherto conſidered as the great nurſery of our ſeamen, but in times like the preſent, when civilized ſociety is convulſed in every part of the world, our colonies may fail and our commerce may be checked. From what ſource, then, is our navy to be manned? The glorious feats that have been performed in our ſhips of war, from the firſt-rate down to the pinnace, were not by men taken from the plough. Courage alone is not ſufficient for the accompliſhment of ſuch actions; there muſt be activity, ſkill, and management,

ſuch as can be acquired only by conſtant habit from early youth. The cultivation of the fiſheries would afford a never failing ſupply of men ſo inſtructed; would furniſh the markets with a wholeſome and nutricious food; and would increaſe our conveniency, extend our manufactures, and promote our commerce.

For, independent of the important conſideration of reducing the preſent high price of butchers' meat, by a more ample ſupply of fiſh to the ſeveral markets of England, whale oil is now become ſo valuable an article of conſumption in Great Britain, not only for the ſafety and conveniency it affords by lighting the ſtreets of our cities and great towns at a moderate expence, but as a ſubſtitute for tallow and greaſe in various manufactures, that it may be conſidered as an indiſpenſable commodity, whoſe demand is likely to increaſe in proportion as arts and manufactures are extended, and new applications of its uſe diſcovered. We ought, then, to conſider both the home fiſhery for ſupplying the markets with food, and the whale fiſhery for furniſhing our warehouſes with oil, as two ſtanding nurſeries for the education of ſeamen.

One would ſcarcely infer, from the ſtate of the fiſheries at the preſent day, that our legiſlature has ever regarded them in this point of view. They have hitherto been carried on in a very limited and partial manner, with encouragement juſt ſufficient (and but barely ſo) for the ſupply of our own markets; when common policy ſhould induce us to open foreign markets to take off the ſurplus of our depôts. Hence it happens, and eſpecially in

in time of war, that oil ſo frequently experiences a fluctuation in its price, which, however favourable it may be to certain individuals who can command large capitals, to whom this limited policy confines the adventure, is diſcouraging to thoſe who look only for a fair and reaſonable, but certain, profit on their induſtry. If beyond the demands of the market, there was always a redundancy of oil on hand, the price would find its level, and the profits of the adventure be reduced more to a certainty; and, in ſuch caſe, there is no reaſon for ſuppoſing to the contrary, that England might not ſupply a conſiderable part of the continent of Europe with whale oil. The advantage of extending the markets would be an increaſe of native fiſhermen without reſorting to foreign fiſhermen.

For many years our fiſheries of Greenland were carried on by means of captains, harpooners, and other officers from Holland or the Hans Towns; even for near a century, after the bounties allowed by Government held out a ſufficient degree of encouragement to bring up our own ſeamen to the trade, who are now in ſkill inferior to none who frequent the Northern Seas. In like manner the Americans, ſettled at Nantucket, almoſt excluſively carried on the South Sea Fiſhery, before the American war; and after the peace, which ceded Nantucket to the United States, they continued to ſupply our ſouthern adventurers, as the Dutch had done the Northern Fiſhery, with captains, harpooners, and other officers.

In one out-port of this kingdom, the obvious policy of eſtabliſhing a nurſery of ſouthern fiſhermen has been ſucceſsfully

attempted. Seven families wiſhing to remain Britiſh ſubjects, and to derive the benefit of the Engliſh markets, had migrated to Nova Scotia, where they were diſcouraged from extending their colony, and were invited by the Right Honourable Charles Greville to ſettle at Milford in Milford Haven. They fitted out their ſhip and had a ſucceſsful voyage, and the reſpectable family of Starbucks have extended the concern to four ſhips.

Parliament wiſely continued the limited invitation to foreign fiſhermen to ſettle at Milford, and the acceſſion of Mr. Rotch has increaſed the Milford Fiſhery to eight ſhips. And the very extenſive connexion of that gentleman in America, is likely to make the port of Milford important to the mutual benefit of commerce between Great Britain and America, for which its ſituation is ſo eminently ſuited. The Southern Whale Fiſhery, from this place, has not a leſs capital afloat at this time than 80,000 *l.* nor has any whaling ſhip from the port of Milford the leaſt concern whatſoever with any adventure except the fiſhing for whales.

It is ſingular enough that one of the nobleſt ports in England, whether it be conſidered in point of ſituation, commanding, at all times, a free and ſpeedy communication with Ireland and the Weſtern Ocean, and favourable for diſtribution of merchandize, or regarded as to the conveniencies it poſſeſſes as a port and harbour, ſhould ſo totally have been neglected by the Britiſh legiſlature, that when the families above mentioned firſt ſettled there, the place did not afford them a ſingle houſe for their

their reception. At this moment, by the removal of artificial obſtructions and the unremitting attention of Mr. Greville, there is a town, with ſuitable protections of batteries, and two volunteer companies; a dock-yard in which three King's ſhips are now building, a quay, and eſtabliſhments of the different tradeſmen and artificers, which a ſea-port neceſſarily requires. Having proceeded thus far, there can be little doubt that, in the courſe of half a century, it may claſs among the greateſt of the out-ports.

I mention this circumſtance as a ſtriking inſtance, to ſhew the importance of the South Sea Fiſhery, and as a proof that, contrary to the generally received opinion, it may be carried on by ſkill and management, and without the adventitious aid of trading, ſo as fully to anſwer the purpoſe of thoſe who are properly qualified to embark in the undertaking. For where men, by induſtry in their profeſſion, riſe from ſmall beginnings into affluence, ſuch profeſſion may be followed with a greater certainty of ſucceſs than many others which appear to hold out more ſeducing proſpects. The American fiſhermen never ſet out with a capital, but invariably work themſelves into one; and the South Sea Fiſhery from England may ſucceed on the ſame principle, as the above example clearly ſhews, under every diſadvantage, when properly conducted.

It is difficult to point out the grounds of juſtice or policy in giving tonage bounties to the Greenland Fiſhery, and only premiums to ſucceſsful adventurers in the Southern Fiſhery.

A voyage

A voyage to Greenland is four months, the outfit of which is covered by the tonage bounty and, if wholly unſucceſsful, the ſame ſhip can make a ſecond voyage the ſame year to ſome of the ports of the Baltic. A voyage to the South Sea is from twelve to eighteen months, and muſt depend ſolely on the ſucceſs in fiſhing. A Greenland ſhip ſets out on a ſmall capital, and builds on a quick return; but a South Sea whaler muſt expend a very conſiderable capital in making his outfit, for which he can reckon on no returns for at leaſt eighteen months. Hence the uſual practice of ſending them out in the double capacity of fiſhers and contraband traders, in order that the loſſes they may ſuſtain by ill ſucceſs in fiſhing may be made good by ſmuggling.

If by extending the fiſhery we ſhould be enabled to ſupply the continent of Europe, two objects ſhould never be out of the view of the Legiſlature—the exemption from duty of all the produce of the fiſheries, and particularly ſparmaceti, which, if manufactured into candles, and ſubject only to the ſame duty as tallow candles, would produce much more to the revenue than when taxed as it now is, as wax.—I have heard it aſſerted that the extenſion of the premium ſyſtem, by doubling its preſent amount, which never could exceed 30,000*l.* a year, would be adequate encouragement to ſupply the home market with ſpermaceti and black whale oil, and that the bonding of foreign oil in Great Britain would throw the whole agency of American fiſhery on England with greater advantage to both countries than by any other ſyſtem.

But

But when we conſider that the home market is neceſſarily ſecured to Britiſh ſubjects by high duties on foreign oil, we ſhould alſo conſider that every means to leſſen the charges of outfit ſhould ſtrengthen our adventure in this lucrative branch of trade. Among others that would ſeem to have this tendency, are the facilities that might be afforded by the happy poſition of the Cape of Good Hope. If at this ſtation was eſtabliſhed a kind of central depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery, it might, in time, be the means of throwing into our hands excluſively the ſupplying of Europe with ſpermaceti oil. To the protection of the fiſheries on the eaſt and weſt coaſts of Southern Africa, the Cape is fully competent, and the fiſheries on theſe coaſts would be equally undiſturbed in war as in peace. From hence they would, at all times, have an opportunity of acquiring a ſupply of refreſhments for their crews, and of laying in a ſtock of ſalt proviſions at one-fourth part of the expence of carrying them out from England.

In the wide range which, of late years, they have been accuſtomed to take, from the eaſt, round Cape Horn, to the weſt coaſt of America, partly for the ſake of carrying on a contraband trade with the Spaniſh colonies, and partly for fiſhing, they are deſtitute, in time of war, of all protection. Hitherto they have ſuffered little inconvenience from this circumſtance, becauſe the Cape of Good Hope gave us the complete and undiſturbed poſſeſſion of the Southern Ocean; but will this be the caſe in the preſent war, when the French and Dutch are in poſſeſſion of the bays and harbours of the Cape? Whilſt, from

Europe

Europe to the Indian Ocean, if we except the Portugueze iſlands and Rio de Janeiro, whoſe admiſſion to us is extremely precarious, we have not a creek that will afford us a butt of water, a biſcuit, or a bullock.

It is by no means neceſſary to reſort to the coaſts of South America to ſucceed in the Southern Whale Fiſhery. The whales on the eaſt and weſt coaſts of Africa are of the ſame kind, of as large a ſize, and as eaſily taken, as thoſe on the ſhores of the oppoſite continent. The black whales, indeed, are caught with much greater eaſe, as they reſort in innumerable quantities into all the bays on the coaſts of South Africa, where there is no riſk in encountering them, and leſs expence as well as more certainty in taking them, than in the open ocean. The ſpermaceti whale, whoſe oil is more valuable, and of which one half of the cargo at leaſt ſhould be compoſed, in order to meet the expences of a long voyage, is equally abundant on the coaſts of Southern Africa as on thoſe of America. No objection can therefore lie on the ground of taking the fiſh.

If policy requires the encouragement of all our fiſheries by bounties, and that with a view of increaſing the nurſery of ſeamen to Great Britain and Ireland; it may, perhaps, be expedient to extend that encouragement to the inhabitants of the Cape of Good Hope, a meaſure which could not fail to bring together the South Sea fiſhers to its ports to complete their cargoes, giving, by their means, an increaſed energy and activity to the trade and induſtry of the ſettlement.

The ſituation, the ſecurity, and the conveniences of the *Knyſna*, are admirably adapted for carrying into execution a fiſhery on ſuch a plan. Every material either is, or might be, produced upon the ſpot for equipping their ſhips. The land is here the very beſt that the colony affords, and it ſo happens, that the ſix months in which it might be dangerous to fiſh on this coaſt, are the ſuitable ſeaſon for cultivating the land. Such ſmall craft might alſo find their advantage in running down to the iſlands in the South Seas and picking up a cargo of ſeals, and thus anticipate the Americans, who, by means of their fiſhery and ginſeng, and the produce of their lumber cargoes, have worked themſelves, as we have already had occaſion to notice, into a valuable portion of the China trade. Whereas if oil taken on the coaſt by the ſmall craft of the inhabitants of the Cape, which might alſo include oil taken by foreign fiſhermen and exchanged by them for India or China goods, were admitted to entry in Britiſh bottoms into Great Britain at a low colonial duty, the foreign fiſhermen, who never can be excluded from fiſhing on the coaſts of Africa, might find a market for their oil there. And the Americans would, probably, under ſuch regulations, find it their advantage to ſupply themſelves with Indian produce at the Cape, and extend their fiſhery only when they could not obtain a vent for their native produce of ſkins, drugs, and lumber. The ſituation of the Cape, properly ſtocked, might thus be an important depôt for Britiſh trade with America, and, perhaps, ſuperſede expenſive voyages to China in their ſmall ſhips. This, however, is mere mattter of opinion and not of fact. That the

plan they now purſue does anſwer their expectations, may be inferred from the number of their ſhips, progreſſively increaſing, which navigate the Indian Seas.

Some few of their ſhips reſort to the bays within the limits of the Cape colony to take the black whale; but as thoſe bays are acceſſible only at certain ſeaſons of the year, it would be no difficult matter, if an excluſive fiſhery could be deemed politic, with a ſingle frigate, to clear the coaſt of all fiſhers except our own. They ſometimes, alſo, run into Saint Helena Bay to the northward, or into Algoa Bay to the eaſtward, to complete their cargoes, a privilege that policy would require to be allowed only with moderation even to our own ſhips; for it has been obſerved that conſtant fiſhing in any one place, never fails to chace the fiſh entirely away.

There can be little doubt, therefore, that the Cape of Good Hope might be rendered eſſentially uſeful to the Southern Whale Fiſhery, ſo important to the commerce and navigation of Great Britain; but that during the war, the ſame place in the poſſeſſion of an enemy, may be the means of obſtructing this valuable branch of trade, and muſt, at all events, render it forced and precarious.

Having thus endeavoured to ſtate the different points of view in which the Cape of Good Hope may be conſidered of importance to the Britiſh nation, as a military and naval ſtation, as a ſeat of commerce, and a depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery,

Fiſhery, it remains only to inquire how far it is, or may become, value as a colony, or territorial acquiſition, intrinſically, and independent of other conſiderations. This point will beſt be aſcertained by a topographical deſcription and a ſtatiſtical ſketch of the ſettlement, which will be the ſubject of the following chapter, and with which I ſhall cloſe the preſent volume.

CHAP. VI.

Topographical Deſcription and Statiſtical Sketch of the Cape Settlement.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.—*Dimenſions.—Extent.—Soil.—Climate.—Winds.—Scarcity of Water.—Permanent Rivers enumerated and deſcribed.—Mountains.—Diviſions, Population, and Produce.—Provincial Judicature.*—DISTRICT OF THE CAPE—*Extent of and Quantity of Land under Cultivation.—Cape Town.—Stock, Produce, and Population aſcertained by the* Opgaaff.—*Births and Mortality.—Criminals.—Natural Products of the Cape Diſtrict.*—DISTRICT OF STELLENBOSCH AND DRAKENSTEIN—*Extent and Diviſions of.—The Droſdy or Village—Situation and Produce of the other Diviſions of this Diſtrict—Stock and Population of, according to the* Opgaaff.—DISTRICT OF ZWELLENDAM—*Dimenſions, Extent, and Diviſions of—the Droſdy or Village of—Situation and Produce of the other Diviſions—Stock and Population according to the* Opgaaff.—DISTRICT OF GRAAF REYNET—*Dimenſions, Extent, and Diviſions of—Droſdy or Village of—Situation and Produce of the other Diviſions of this Diſtrict—Stock and Population according to the* Opgaaff.—TENURES OF LANDS.—*Loan Farms, Nature and Number of.—Gratuity Lands.—Quit Rents.—Freeholds.—Reaſons againſt Improvement of Eſtates in the Cape.—Property frequently changes Hands.*—CONDITION OF THE INHABITANTS.—*Neceſſaries of Life obtained without Exertion.—Four Claſſes of Coloniſts*—Thoſe of the Town, *Condition of.—Taxes and Aſſeſſments moderate.—Tythes or Church Rates none—no Poor Rates.—Police conducted by a College of Burghers—their Functions—Neglect and Abuſes of.—Improvement ſuggeſted.—Indifference of the Coloniſts for rational Amuſements.*—The Wine Growers, *Condition and Reſources of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.—Eaſy Terms of purchaſing Eſtates.*—Corn Boors, *Condition of—State of their Outgoings and Returns.*—Graziers, *indolent and helpleſs Condition of—their bad Character—ſubject to no Taxes—State of*

of Outgoings and Returns.—REVENUES OF GOVERNMENT - *Nature of the thirteen Heads of, and Table of their Amount for four ſucceſſive Years.*—JURISPRUDENCE. —*Nature and Conſtitution of the Court - its Members.—Civil Cauſes.—Attornies. —Office of Fiſcal.—Court of Commiſſaries for petty Suits, and matrimonial Affairs. —The Weeſkammer, or Chamber for managing the Effects of Minors and Orphans —its Functions.*—RELIGION, *that of the Reformed Church.—Lutherans and others barely tolerated.—Condition of the Clergy—Duties of—direct the Funds raiſed for the Relief of the Poor—are* Curators *of the public School.—Amount of Church Funds.*—IMPROVEMENTS SUGGESTED, *by the Introduction of Chineſe—eaſily effected by the Britiſh Government—by Moravian Eſtabliſhments of Hottentots in the diſtant Parts—by encloſing the Farms - leading their Vines up Props or Eſpaliers. —New Syſtem in the Tillage of Corn Lands.—Eſtabliſhment of Fairs or Markets, and erecting of Villages - Conſequences of theſe.*—Concluſion.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION.

IF from the ſouthern point of the Cape peninſula, which, however, is not the ſouthernmoſt point of Africa, a ſtraight line be drawn in the direction of eaſt by north, it will cut the mouth of the Great Fiſh River, the *Rio d'Infanté* of the Portugueſe, which is now conſidered as the eaſtern boundary of the colony. The length of this line is about five hundred and eighty miles.

If from the ſame point a ſtraight line be drawn in the direction of north, with a little inclination weſterly, it will fall in with the mouth of the River *Kouſſie*, the northern boundary of the colony, at the diſtance of about three hundred and fifteen miles.

And, if from the mouth of the Great Fiſh River a line, drawn in the direction of north-north-weſt, be continued to the diſtance of

of two hundred and twenty-five miles, to a point behind the Snowy Mountains called *Plettenberg's Landmark*, and from thence be continued in a circular ſweep inwards to the mouth of the River *Kouſſie*, upwards of five hundred miles; theſe lines will circumſcribe the tract of country which conſtitutes the colony of the Cape of Good Hope.

By reducing this irregular figure to a parallelogram, it will be found to comprehend an area of at leaſt one hundred and twenty thouſand ſquare miles. And as it appears that the whole population of whites, blacks, and Hottentots, within this area, amounts only to about ſixty thouſand ſouls, though it cannot boaſt that

"Every rood of ground maintains its man,"

yet every two ſquare miles may be ſaid to have at leaſt *one* human creature allotted to it. If, therefore, the Dutch at home occupy one of the moſt populous countries in Europe, they poſſeſs abroad the moſt deſert colony that is certainly to be met with upon the face of the globe. But as this is leſs owing to the natural defects of the country, than to the regulations under which it has been governed, the comparative population with the extent of ſurface ought not be taken as the teſt of the intrinſic value of the ſettlement, as the population of any country, under a moderate climate, will, in the natural courſe of things, always riſe to a level with the means of ſubſiſtence.

As the beſt ſoil for vegetable growth is unqueſtionably produced from a decompoſition of vegetable matter, it amounts to

to a pleonaſm to ſay, that the richeſt ſoil will invariably be found where vegetation is moſt abundant and moſt luxuriant; the ſoil and the plant acting reciprocally as cauſe and effect. Hence, if climate were entirely out of the queſtion, we ſhould have an infallible criterion for determining the quality of ſoil in any country by the abundance or ſcarcity, the luxuriance or poverty, of the native plants. Meaſuring the ſoil of the Cape ſettlement by this ſcale, it would be pronounced among the pooreſt in the known world; for I may ſafely venture to ſay, that ſeven parts in ten of the above mentioned ſurface are, for a great part of the year, and ſome of them at all times, deſtitute of the leaſt appearance of verdure. The upper regions of all the chains of mountains are naked maſſes of ſandſtone; the valleys at their feet are clothed with graſs, with thickets, and ſometimes with impenetrable foreſts. The inferior hills or knolls, whoſe ſurfaces are generally compoſed of looſe fragments of ſandſtone, as well as the wide ſandy plains that connect them, are thinly ſtrewed over with heaths and other ſhrubby plants, exhibiting to the eye an uniform and dreary appearance. In the loweſt parts of theſe plains, where the waters ſubſide and, filtering through the ſand, break out in ſprings upon the ſurface, vegetation is ſomewhat more luxuriant. In ſuch ſituations the farm-houſes are generally placed; and the patches of cultivated ground contiguous to them, like the *Oaſes* in the ſandy deſerts, may be conſidered as ſo many verdant iſlands in the midſt of a boundleſs waſte; ſerving to make the ſurrounding wilderneſs more dreary by compariſon. Of ſuch plains and knolls is the belt of land compoſed that lies between the firſt chain of mountains and the ſea-coaſts.

The

The ſoils, in general, on this tract of country, are either of ſtiff clay, into which there is no poſſibility of entering with a plough till well ſoaked by heavy rains, or of a light and ſandy nature, commonly of a reddiſh tinge, and abounding with ſmall round quartzoſe pebbles. Seldom any free black vegetable mould appears except in the ſmall patches of garden ground, vineyards, and orchards that ſurround the habitations, where, by long culture, manure, and the fertilizing influence of ſprings or a permanent rill of water, the ſoil is ſo far mellowed as to admit the ſpade at all ſeaſons of the year.

But thoſe vaſt plains, which are known in the colony by the Hottentot name of *Karroo*, and which are interpoſed between the great chains of mountains, wear a ſtill more diſmal appearance than the lower plains that are chequered with patches of cultivated ground. Out of their impenetrable ſurfaces of clay, gliſtering with ſmall chryſtals of quartz, and condemned to perpetual drought and aridity, not a blade of graſs, and ſcarcely a verdant twig, occurs to break the barren uniformity. The hills, by which the ſurface of theſe plains are ſometimes broken, are chiefly compoſed of fragments of blue ſlate, or maſſes of felt-ſpar, and argillaceous ironſtone; and the ſurfaces of theſe are equally denuded of plants as thoſe of the plains.

Yet, as I have already had occaſion to obſerve, wherever the Karroo plains are tinged with iron, and water can be brought upon them, the ſoil is found to be extremely productive. The ſame effect is obſervable in the neighbourhood of the Cape, where the ſoil is coloured with iron; or where maſſes of a

brown ochraceous ſtone (the oxyd of iron combined with clay) lie juſt below the ſurface, where they are ſometimes found in extenſive ſtrata. In ſuch ſituations they have the beſt grapes and the beſt of every ſort of fruit, which may be owing, probably, to the manganeſe that this kind of dark brown iron-ſtone generally contains, and which modern diſcoveries in chemiſtry have aſcertained to be particularly favourable to the growth of plants.

There is neither a volcano nor a volcanic product in the ſouthern extremity of Africa, at leaſt in any of thoſe parts where I have been, nor any ſubſtances that ſeem to have undergone the action of fire, except maſſes of iron-ſtone found generally among the boggy earth in the neighbourhood of ſome of the hot ſprings, and which appear like the ſcoriæ of furnaces. Pieces of pumice-ſtone have been picked up on the ſhore of Robben Iſland, and on the coaſt near Algoa Bay, which muſt have been wafted thither by the waves, as the whole baſis of this iſland is a hard and compact blue ſchiſtus, with veins of quartz running through it, and of the eaſtern coaſt iron-ſtone and granite.

The climate of the Cape may be conſidered as not unfriendly to vegetation; but by reaſon of its ſituation, within the influence of a kind of Monſoon or periodical winds, the rains are very unequal, deſcending in torrents during the cold ſeaſon, whilſt ſcarcely a ſhower falls to refreſh the earth in the hot ſummer months, when the dry ſouth-eaſt winds prevail. Theſe winds blaſt the foliage, bloſſom, and fruit of all thoſe trees that

are not well ſheltered from their baneful guſts, which, for about ſix months, almoſt conſtantly blow from that quarter. Nor is the human conſtitution more proof againſt the painful ſenſation of the ſouth-eaſt winds of the Cape than the plants. Like the ſouth-eaſt Sirocco of Naples they relax and fatigue both the body and mind, rendering them utterly incapable of activity or energy. During their continuance the town appears to be deſerted. Every door and window is cloſed to keep out the duſt and the heat, both of which diminiſh with the continuance of the gale; the air gradually cools, and every ſmall pebble and particle of duſt in the courſe of four-and-twenty hours is carried into the ſea.

The neceſſity of protecting the fruit groves, vineyards, and gardens from theſe winds, has led thoſe coloniſts who dwell on the nearer ſide of the firſt chain of mountains, for they are not much felt beyond them, to divide that portion of their grounds, ſo employed, by oak ſkreens, a plant that grows here much more rapidly than in Europe; but their corn-lands are entirely open. A Cape boor beſtows no more labour on his farm than is unavoidable; and as grain is moſtly reaped before the ſouth-eaſt winds are fairly ſet in, the encloſure of the arable land did not appear to be neceſſary, and was conſequently omitted.

The climate of the Cape is remarkably affected by local circumſtances. In the ſummer months there is at leaſt from 6 to 10 degrees of Fahrenheit's ſcale in the difference of temperature between Cape Town and Wynberg, whoſe diſtance is only about ſeven or eight miles, owing to the latter being on the windward

ward ſide of the Table Mountain, and the former to leeward of it; from whence, alſo, the rays of the meridian ſun are thrown back upon the town, as from the ſurface of a concave mirror. The variation of climate, to which the Table Valley is ſubject, led one of the Britiſh officers to obſerve that thoſe who lived in it were either in an oven, or at the funnel of a pair of bellows, or under a water-ſpout. On the Cape ſide of the mountains the thermometer rarely deſcends below 40°; but on the elevated Karroo plains, within the mountains, it is generally, in the winter months, below the freezing point by night, and from 70 to 80 in the middle of the day.

I think this intenſe cold of the Karroo plains, beyond what might be expected from their parallel of latitude or elevation, may ſatisfactorily be accounted for from the ingenious experiments of Mr. Von Humboldt, on the chemical decompoſition of the atmoſpherical air. He proves that fat and clayey earths are ſtrongly diſpoſed to attract the oxygen from the atmoſphere, by which the azotic gas is let looſe; and this gas, entering again into combination with freſh oxygen, of the ſuperincumbent ſtratum, in an increaſed proportion, forms nitric acid, from which ſaltpetre is generated. That ſaltpetre is abundantly formed on thoſe plains is an indiſputable fact, as I have fully ſhewn in the ſecond chapter of the firſt volume; and the conſequence of ſuch formation muſt neceſſarily be a great diminution of temperature in thoſe places where the operation is moſt powerfully carrying on. Hence may be explained thoſe columns of cold air through which one frequently paſſes upon the Karroo plains.

The north-weſt winds of winter have a moiſt and cold feel even in Cape Town, where, though thermometer ſeldom deſcends below 40°, and then only about an hour before ſun-riſe, all the Engliſh inhabitants were glad to keep conſtant fires during the months of July, Auguſt, and September. Even in October it is not unuſual to obſerve the ſummits of the mountains to the eaſtward of the Cape iſthmus buried in ſnow.

But as I have taken particular notice of the remarkable changes of temperature in different ſeaſons and ſituations in the former volume, I muſt beg leave to refer the reader to it for further information on this ſubject.

The great ſcarcity of water in ſummer, the reaſon of which I have endeavoured to account for in the ſecond chapter, is much more unfavourable to an extended cultivation than either the ſoil or climate. The torrents of rain that deſcend for about four months in the year, deluging the whole country, diſappear ſuddenly, for the reaſons therein ſtated, leaving the deep ſunken beds of the rivers nearly dry, or ſo far exhauſted as to be rendered incapable of ſupplying the purpoſes of irrigation. The periodical rivulets, and the ſtreams that iſſue from the mountain ſprings, are either abſorbed or evaporated before they arrive at any great diſtance from their ſources. In the whole compaſs of this extenſive colony, one can ſcarcely ſay that there is a ſingle navigable river.

The two principal rivers, on the weſtern coaſt, are the *Berg* or Mountain River, which takes its riſe in the mountains that

encloſe the Vale of Drakenſtein, and falls into Saint Helena Bay; and the *Oliphant* or Elephant's River, which, after collecting the ſtreamlets of the firſt chain of mountains in its northerly courſe along their feet, empties itſelf into the Southern Atlantic in 31° 30′ ſouth. Though both theſe rivers have permanent ſtreams of water, ſufficiently deep to be navigable by ſmall craft, to the diſtance of about twenty miles up the country, yet the mouth of the former is choaked up with a bed of ſand, and acroſs the latter is a reef of rocks.

On the ſouth coaſt of the colony the permanent rivers of any magnitude are, the *Broad* River, the *Gauritz* River, the *Knyſna*, the *Keurboom* River, the *Camtoos* River, the *Zwartkops* River, the *Sunday* River, and the *Great Fiſh* River; the laſt of which terminates the colony to the eaſtward.

The Broad River is diſcharged into Saint Sebaſtian's Bay, which the Dutch conſider as a dangerous navigation, though there have been inſtances of their ſhips taking ſhelter there in the north-weſt monſoon at no great diſtance from the mouth of the river, which is here a ſheet of water more than a mile in width; but, like every other river on this coaſt, except the Knyſna, it is croſſed by a bar of ſand. Within this bar it might be navigated by ſmall craft about thirty miles up the country, an extent, however, in which there are ſcarcely half a dozen farm-houſes.

The Gauritz River is a collection of water from the Great Karroo plains, the Black Mountains, and the chain that runs parallel,

parallel, and neareſt, to the ſea-coaſt. The branches to the northward of this chain are periodical, but it flows, to the ſouthward, throughout the year, though, in the ſummer months, with a very weak current. In the rainy ſeaſon it is conſidered as the moſt rapid and dangerous river in the whole colony. Its mouth opens into the ſea, where the coaſt is ſtraight, and it is croſſed by a bar of ſand which, in ſummer, is generally dry.

The Knyſna, being altogether different from the other rivers in the colony, is particularly noticed, and a ſketch of it given, in the ſecond chapter, to which I muſt beg leave to refer the reader.

The Keurboom River, like the Knyſna, runs up into the midſt of tall foreſts, and might be navigated by boats to a conſiderable diſtance, but its mouth, in Plettenberg's Bay, is completely ſanded up by the almoſt perpetual rolling ſwell of the ſea, from the ſouth-eaſtward upon the ſandy beach.

The Camtoos River is a collection of waters from the ſame parts of the country as, but more eaſterly than, the Gauritz River. It falls into a wide bay of the ſame name, in which the only ſecure anchorage is oppoſite the mouth of a ſmall ſtream called the *Kromme* or Crooked River. Though Camtoos River, juſt within the mouth, is a wide baſon deep enough to float a ſhip of the line, yet the bar of ſand acroſs the mouth is fordable upon the beach at high water, and frequently dry at low water.

The

The Zwart Kops River is a clear permanent ſtream of water flowing down one of the moſt beautiful and fertile valleys in the colony; and is among the very few of thoſe that, by damming, may be turned upon the contiguous grounds. Mr. Rice, whom I have had occaſion to mention, ſucceeded by a great deal of perſeverance in getting a boat over the bar, and ſailed about eight miles up this valley, to which diſtance only the tide flows. The whole country in the vicinity of the river and the bay of the ſame name, into which it falls, is among the moſt fertile parts of the colony.

The Sunday River, likewiſe, falls into Algoa or Zwart Kop's Bay, oppoſite to the iſlands of Saint Croix. It riſes in the midſt of the Snowy Mountains, and continues a permanently flowing ſtream, broad and ſhallow in the middle part of its courſe, and narrow and deep towards the mouth, which, like the reſt, is choaked with a bed of ſand.

The Great Fiſh River takes its riſe beyond the Snowy Mountains, and, in its long courſe, collects a multitude of ſtreamlets, moſt of which are conſtantly ſupplied with water. On each ſide of its mouth is a wild, rocky, and open ſhore, but the projecting cheeks form a ſmall cove or creek, which, it ſeems, was frequented by the Portugueze ſhortly after their diſcovery of the Cape; though, from the boiſterous appearance of the ſea, upon the bar that evidently croſſes the entrance of the river, it is difficult to conceive how they dared to truſt their ſhips in ſuch an expoſed ſituation, unleſs, indeed, they were ſo ſmall as to

to be able, at high water, to croſs the bar, in which caſe they might lie, at all ſeaſons, in perfect ſecurity.

All theſe rivers are well ſtocked with perch, eels, and ſmall turtle, and, to a certain diſtance from the ſea-coaſt, they abound with almoſt every kind of ſea-fiſh peculiar to this part of the world.

Beſide the rivers here enumerated, the whole ſlip of land, ſtretching along the ſea-coaſt, between the entrance of Falſe Bay and the Great Fiſh River, is interſected by ſtreamlets whoſe waters are neither abſorbed nor evaporated; but they generally run in ſuch deep chaſms as to be of little uſe towards the promotion of agriculture by the aid of irrigation.

The mountains, as I have before obſerved, generally run in chains, parallel to each other, and moſt commonly in the direction of eaſt and weſt. At a diſtance they poſſeſs neither the ſublime nor the beautiful, but the approach to their baſes and the paſſages of the kloofs are awfully grand and terrific; ſometimes their naked points of ſolid rock riſe almoſt perpendicularly, like a wall of maſonry, to the height of three, four, and even five thouſand feet, reſembling the Table Mountain on the Cape peninſula; ſometimes the inclination of the ſtrata is ſo great, that the whole maſs of mountain appears to have its centre of gravity falling without the baſe, and as if it momentarily threatened to ſtrew the plain with its venerable ruins; in other places, where the looſer fragments have given way, they are irregu-

irregularly peaked and broken into a variety of fantaſtic ſhapes. In ſhort, all the chains of mountains in the ſouthern part of South Africa, may be conſidered to be made up of a repetition of parts ſimilar to thoſe of the Devil's Hill, the Table Mountain, and the Lion's Head, and of the ſame materials, but generally of a more gigantic ſize; and all their ſummits are entirely deſtitute of verdure.

Division, Population, and Produce.

When the Dutch Eaſt India Company perceived their ſettlement extending far beyond the bounds they had originally preſcribed, they found it expedient to divide the country into diſtricts, and to place over each a civil magiſtrate with the title of *Landroſt*, who, with his council called *Hemraaden*, was authorized to ſettle petty diſputes among the farmers, or between them and the native Hottentots, levy fines within a certain ſum, collect and apply the parochial aſſeſſments, and enforce the orders and regulations of Government. His diſtrict was diſtributed into a number of ſubdiviſions, over each of which was appointed a *Feldtwagtmeeſter* or country overſeer, whoſe duty was to take cognizance of any abuſes committed within his diviſion, and report the ſame to the Landroſt, to adjuſt diſputes about ſprings or water-courſes, and to forward the orders of Government.

Little as the authority was which Government had thus delegated to the Landroſt and his aſſiſtants, that little was ſubject

ſometimes to abuſe, ſometimes to neglect, and very often to contempt.

In fact, all ſyſtems of provincial judicature ſeem liable to the ſame objections. If too much power be confided in the hands of the magiſtrates, the temptation to corruption is proportionally great, and to attempt to execute the law without the power would ſeem a mockery of juſtice. The latter was very much the caſe in the diſtant parts of the Cape colony.

For want of ſuch a power the laws have certainly, in moſt caſes, proved unavailing. The Landroſt had only the ſhadow of authority. The council and the country overſeers were compoſed of farmers, and were always more ready to ſkreen and protect their brother boors, accuſed of crimes, than to aſſiſt in bringing them to juſtice. The poor Hottentot had little chance of obtaining redreſs for the wrongs he ſuffered from the boors. However willing the Landroſt might be to receive his complaints, he poſſeſſed not the means of removing the grievance. To eſpouſe the cauſe of the Hottentot was a ſure way to loſe his popularity. And the diſtance from the capital was a ſufficient obſtacle to the preferring of complaints before the Court of Juſtice at the Cape. Whenever this has happened, the orders of the Court of Juſtice met with as little reſpect, at the diſtance of five or ſix hundred miles, as the orders of the Landroſt and his council. If a man, after being ſummoned, did not chuſe to appear, there was no force in the country to compel him; and they knew it would have been fruitleſs to diſpatch

diſpatch ſuch a force from the Cape. Hence murders and the moſt atrocious crimes were committed with impunity; and the only puniſhment was a ſentence of outlawry for contempt of Court; a ſentence that was attended with little inconvenience to the criminal, who ſtill continued to maintain his ground in ſociety, as if no ſuch ſentence was hanging over him. It debarred him, it is true, from making his uſual viſits to the capital, but he found no difficulty in getting his buſineſs done by commiſſion. Numberleſs inſtances of this kind occurred, yet the ſyſtem remained the ſame. Perhaps, indeed, it would be difficult to ſuggeſt a better, till a greater degree of population ſhall compel the inhabitants to dwell in villages, or the limits of the colony be contracted into a narrower compaſs.

This extenſive ſettlement, whoſe dimenſions have been given above, is divided into four diſtricts, namely,

1. The diſtrict of the Cape.
2. ——— of Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein.
3. ——— of Zwellendam.
4. ——— of Graaf Reynet.

Cape District.

Of theſe the Cape diſtrict is by much the ſmalleſt, but the moſt populous. It may be conſidered as divided into two parts; one conſiſting of the peninſula on which the Town is ſituated, the other of the ſlip of land extending from the ſhore of Table Bay to the mouth of the Berg River in Saint Helena Bay, and

ſeparated from Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein, on the eaſt, by the Little Salt River, Deep River, and Moſſel Bank River, being about eighty miles from north to ſouth, and twenty-five from eaſt to weſt; containing, therefore, about two thouſand ſquare miles. The Cape peninſula is about thirty miles in length and eight in breadth, or two hundred and forty ſquare miles. According to an account of his ſtock, produce, and land under cultivation, which every man is obliged annually to give in to the police officers, and which is called the *Opgaaff* liſt, it appears that, notwithſtanding the comparative ſhort diſtance of every part of the Cape diſtrict from a market, not one fifteenth part of the ſurface is under any kind of tillage.

Cape Town is built with great regularity, the ſtreets being all laid out with a line. The houſes are generally white-waſhed, and the doors and windows painted green; are moſtly two ſtories in height, flat-roofed, with an ornament in the centre of the front, or a kind of pediment; a raiſed platform before the door with a ſeat at each end. It conſiſts of 1145 dwelling-houſes, inhabited by about five thouſand five hundred whites and people of colour, and ten thouſand blacks. The firſt claſs is compoſed of thoſe who fill the ſeveral departments of Government, the clergy, the members of the Court of Juſtice, and of the Police. The next are a ſort of gentry who, having eſtates in the country, retail the produce of them through their ſlaves; then comes a number of petty dealers, who call themſelves merchants, and, laſtly, the tradeſmen, who carry on their ſeveral profeſſions through their blacks. Many of the people of colour are fiſhermen.

Beſides

Beſides the caſtle and the forts, the other public buildings are, a large well-built barrack for 2000 men; a quadrangular building, with an area in the centre, where the Government ſlaves are lodged to the number of four hundred nearly; the Reformed Church, which is a ſpacious and neat ſtructure; the Lutheran Church; the town-houſe; the Court of Juſtice; and a theatre.

Towards the northern extremity of the diſtrict, in that part of it which is called *Zwartland*, there is a ſmall church with a very neat and comfortable parſonage-houſe, garden, vineyard, and corn-land, but no village near it.

The produce of the Cape peninſula is grapes, with all the European and many of the tropical fruits, vegetables of every deſcription, barley for the uſe of horſes, and a ſmall quantity of choice wine. Of the other parts of the Cape diſtrict, wheat, barley, pulſe, and wine.

By a regulation of the Dutch Government, every houſeholder was obliged annually to give in the number of his family, the amount of his live ſtock, and the produce of his farm. As this had been done in a looſe and ſlovenly manner, and as the augmentation of ten thouſand ſouls rendered it important to aſcertain the means afforded by the colony for their ſubſiſtence, Lord Macartney required that, for the future, every man ſhould give in his ſtatement upon oath. When this new regulation was made, the *Opgaaff*, for that year, had already been taken in the uſual way, but, on being repeated, the numbers, in ſome articles,

were

were found to exceed thoſe in the former account in a threefold proportion.

The following is an abſtract of the *Opgaaff* for the Cape diſtrict in the year 1797, when it was firſt required to be given in on oath.

Population.

Men - -	1566	
Women - -	1354	
Sons - -	1451	
Daughters - -	1658	
Servants - -	232	
	——Chriſtians	6261
Men ſlaves - -	6673	
Women ſlaves -	2660	
Slave children -	2558	
	——Slaves	11,891
Total population of the Cape diſtrict		18,152

Of the above number of Chriſtians or free people, 718 are perſons of colour, and one thouſand, nearly, are Europeans.

Stock and Produce.

Horſes (his Majeſty's cavalry not included)	8334
Horned cattle - - -	20,957
Sheep and goats - - -	61,575

Hogs

Hogs - -	758	
Vine plants -	1,560,109	
Leggers of wine made (each 160 gallons) - -	786½	
Muids of wheat ſown in 1796, 3464—reaped -	32,962	
Muids of barley ſown in 1796, 887—reaped -	18,819	
Muids of rye ſown in 1796, 39—reaped - -	529	
Quantity of land employed in vineyards and gardens -	580	morgen
In grain - -	3089	ditto
Total	3669	morgen or 7338 acres.

The quantity of land occupied, as given in, amounts to 8018 morgen, or 16,036 acres; but as land-meaſuring is very little underſtood or attended to, this part of the *Opgaaff* may be conſidered as incorrect.

The conſumption of Cape Town in the ſame year was,

	Head of Cattle.	Head of Sheep.	Leggers of Wine.	Muids of Wheat.	Muids of Barley.
Army	4562	22,812	2000	10,000	19,460
Navy	1810	9044	1000	6,000	
Inhabitants	5000	130,000	3000	16,900	10,000
Total conſumption	11,372	161,856	6000	32,900	29,460

The following table ſhews the number of marriages, chriſtenings, and burials in Cape Town for eight years.

Years.	Marriages.	Chriſtenings.	Burials.
1790	130	350	186
1791	97	354	146
1792	174	360	144
1793	158	288	116
1794	211	308	111
1795	213	308	145
1796	249	257	168
1797	217	364	157
In 8 years	1449	2589	1173

Making 1416 the exceſs of chriſtenings above burials in eight years. As all marriages muſt be performed in Cape Town the column of marriages are thoſe in the whole colony. By comparing the average number of deaths with the population, it will appear that the mortality in the Cape diſtrict is about $2\frac{34}{100}$ in the hundred. Of the ſlaves the mortality is rather more, but leſs, perhaps, than in any other country where ſlavery is tolerated. The number, as we have ſeen, in the Cape diſtrict is 11,891; and the number of deaths, on an average of eight years, was 350, which is after the rate of three in the hundred.

Capital crimes in the Cape diſtrict are leſs frequent than they might be ſuppoſed among ſuch a mixed multitude, where a great majority have no intereſt in the public proſperity or tranquillity.

The

The ſtrength of the garriſon contributed materially to keep the ſlaves in order; and inſtances of capital crimes were leſs numerous under the Britiſh Government than in any former period of the ſame duration for the laſt thirty years. In ſix years 63 were ſentenced to ſuffer death, of which 30 were publicly executed, and the reſt condemned to work at the fortifications in chains for life. The ſentence of ſuch as eſcaped execution was not changed on account of any palliative circumſtance or inſufficient teſtimony, but becauſe confeſſion of the crime is indiſpenſably neceſſary to the execution of the ſentence; and this confeſſion being now no longer extorted by the application of the torture, moſt of them perſiſt to deny the crime of which they are accuſed; preferring a life of hard labour, with a diet of bread and water, to an untimely death.

With reſpect to the natural produce of the Cape diſtrict, what has yet been diſcovered is of little or no importance, except its fiſheries. The wax-plant grows abundantly upon the ſandy iſthmus, but the berries are not conſidered to be worth the labour of gathering. The collecting of ſhells to burn into lime, and of heaths and other ſhrubby plants for fuel, furniſh conſtant employment for about one thouſand ſlaves. The great deſtruction of the fruiteſcent plants on the Cape peninſula and the iſthmus will be very ſeverely felt in the courſe of a few years. The plantations of the ſilver-tree on that brow of Table Mountain which is next to the iſthmus, are experiencing the ſame deſtruction for the ſake of a temporary profit, and ſo thoughtleſs, or ſo indolent, are the proprietors of the land, that little

pains are beſtowed to keep up a ſucceſſion of young trees. No further trials have yet been made for coal.

In the firſt chapter of the former volume, I ſuggeſted ſeveral articles that appeared to be ſuitable to the climate of the Cape, and in the laſt chapter mentioned the ſucceſs that had attended the trial of many of them. Since that was written I had an opportunity, among many other Engliſh gentlemen, of giving a fair trial to the common Lucern, the *Medicago ſativa*, and found it to anſwer beyond all expectation, whether thinly ſown in drills or tranſplanted. It was cut down and grew again, to the height of eighteen inches every ſix weeks throughout the year, except in the months of July, Auguſt, and September, when it remained nearly ſtationary. Mr. Duckett, the agriculturiſt, found the common burnet, *Poterium Sanguiſorba*, to ſucceed equally well on dry grounds. The advantages of theſe two plants, as ſummer food for cattle and ſheep, would be incalculable to a people who knew how to avail themſelves of them, and in a country where all verdure diſappears for four months in the year. But it may be obſerved, with regard to the introduction of theſe and other foreign articles, that until a fuller population of white inhabitants ſhall oblige them to habits of induſtry, it would be in vain to expect any encouragement to additional reſources, or improvement of thoſe they have long poſſeſſed.

District of Stellenbosch and Drakenstein.

Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein, though one diſtrict under the juriſdiction of one Landroſt, have diſtinct Hemraaden or Councils. After deducting the ſmall diſtrict of the Cape, Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein include the whole extent of country from Cape L'Aguillas, the ſouthernmoſt point of Africa, to the River Kouſſie, the northern boundary of the colony; a line of 380 miles in length; and the mean breadth from eaſt to weſt is about 150 miles, comprehending an area, after ſubtracting that of the Cape diſtrict, equal to fifty-five thouſand ſquare miles. Twelve hundred families are in poſſeſſion of this extenſive diſtrict, ſo that each family, on an average, has forty-ſix ſquare miles of land, a quantity more than five times that which the Dutch Government thought to be extenſive enough to keep the ſettlers aſunder, and ſufficient to allow the houſes to ſtand at more than twice the regulated diſtance of three miles from each other. The greater part, however, of this extenſive ſurface may be conſidered as of little value, conſiſting of naked mountains, ſandy hills, and Karroo plains. But a portion of the remainder compoſes the moſt valuable poſſeſſions of the whole colony; whether they be conſidered as to the fertily of the ſoil, the temperature of the climate, or their proximity to the Cape, which, at preſent, is the only market in the colony where the farmer has an opportunity to diſpoſe of his produce. The parts of the diſtrict to which I allude, are thoſe diviſions beginning at Falſe Bay and ſtretching along the feet of the great chain of moun-

tains, on the Cape ſide, as far as the mouth of the Olifants River. Theſe diviſions are,

1. *The Droſdy of Stellenboſch.*
2. *Jonker's Hoeck.*
3. *Bange Hoeck.*
4. *Klapmutz.*
5. *Bottelary's Gebergté.*
6. *Saxenberg's Gebergté.*
7. *Eerſte River.*
8. *Hottentot's Holland.*
9. *Moddergat.*
10. *Drakenſtein* and its environs, conſiſting of
    - *a.* Little Drakenſtein.
    - *b.* Franſche Hoeck.
    - *c.* Paarl Village.
    - *d.* Dall Joſephat.
    - *e.* Waagen Maaker's Valley.
    - *f.* Groeneberg.
11. *Pardeberg.*
12. *Riebeek's Caſteel.*
13. *Eaſt Zwartland.*
14. *Four-and-twenty Rivers.*
15. *Piquetberg.*
16. *Olifants' River.*

The tranſmontane diviſions are,

17. *The Biedouw.*
18. *Onder Bokkeveld.*

19. *Han-*

19. *Hantum.*
20. *Khamieſberg.*
21. *Roggeveld,* conſiſting of Upper, Middle, and Little Roggeveld.
22. *Neiuwveld and the Ghowp.*
23. *Bokkeveld,* warm and cold.
24. *Hex River.*
25. *Breede River.*
26. *Ghoudinee* and *Brandt Valley.*
27. *Roode Sand* or *Waveren.*
28. *Bot River.*
29. *Zwarteberg.*
30. *Drooge Ruggens.*
31. *River Zonder End.*
32. *Uyl Kraal.*
33. *Soetendal's Valley.*

1. The *droſdy of Stellenboſch,* or the reſidence of the Landroſt, is a very handſome village, conſiſting of an aſſemblage of about ſeventy habitations, to moſt of which are attached offices, out-houſes, and gardens, ſo that it occupies a very conſiderable ſpace of ground. It is laid out into ſeveral ſtreets or open ſpaces, planted with oaks that have here attained a greater growth than in any other part of the colony, many of them not being inferior in ſize to the largeſt elms in Hyde Park. Yet, a few years ago, the moſt beautiful of theſe trees were rooted out in order to raiſe a paltry ſum of money towards the exigencies of the pariſh; and paltry, indeed, it was, the very fineſt tree being ſold

ſold at the low price of 20 rix dollars, or four pounds currency, and moſt of them for not a fourth part of this ſum. For ſuch a barbarous act the villagers, in ſome countries, would have been apt to have hung both the Landroſt and Hemraaden upon their branches. How far they were ſuffered to proceed I cannot ſay, but I ſaw at leaſt half a hundred of theſe venerable ruins lying in the ſtreets.

The village is delightfully ſituated at the feet of lofty mountains, on the banks of the *Eerſte* or Firſt River, at the diſtance of twenty-ſix miles from Cape Town. In it is a ſmall and neat church, to which is annexed a parſonage houſe with a good garden and very extenſive vineyard. The clergyman has a ſalary from Government of 120 *l.* a year, with this houſe, garden, and vineyard free of all rent and taxes, in lieu of other emoluments received by the clergy of Cape Town. The condition, therefore, of the country clergy is at leaſt equal and perhaps preferable to that of thoſe who reſide in the town. Proviſions of every kind are much cheaper; they have the advantage of keeping their own cattle; ſowing their own grain; planting vineyards and making their own wine; and, in a word, they poſſeſs the means of raiſing within themſelves almoſt all the neceſſaries of life. In addition to theſe advantages, if the clergyman ſhould have the good fortune to be popular in his diſtrict, which, however, is no eaſy matter to accompliſh, he is ſure to be loaden with preſents from day to day. Nothing, in ſuch caſe, is thought too good for the miniſter. Game of all kinds, fat lambs, fruit, wine, and other "good things of this life," are

are continually pouring in upon him. His outgoings are chiefly confined to the expence of clothing his family and a little tea and ſugar.

The eſtabliſhment of the Landroſt is ſtill more ſumptuous. He has the enjoyment of a ſalary and emoluments that ſeldom fall ſhort of 1500 *l.* a year; a moſt excellent houſe to live in, pleaſantly ſituated on a plain at the head of the village, before which are a couple of venerable oaks, ſcarcely exceeded in England; and an extenſive garden and orchard, well planted with every kind of fruit, and a vineyard.

Moſt of the grounds in or near the village are what they call *Eigendoms* or freeholds, though they are held by a ſmall recognizance to Government, but they are totally different from loan-farms, which are the uſual kind of tenure in the colony, and of which we ſhall have occaſion to ſpeak hereafter.

2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9. *Jonker's Hoeck*, *Bange Hoeck*, *Klapmutz*, *Bottelary's Gebergté*, *Saxenberg's Gebergté*, *Eerſte River*, *Hottentot's Holland*, and *Moddergat*, are ſmall diviſions ſurrounding the droſdy, and lying between it and Falſe Bay. They conſiſt chiefly of freehold eſtates, and produce wine, brandy, fruit, freſh butter, poultry, and a variety of articles for the Cape market, and for the ſupply of ſhipping whilſt they continue to lie in Simon's Bay. They yield, alſo, a ſmall quantity of corn, but this article without manure, or a better ſyſtem of tillage, is ſcarcely worth the labour of cultivating ſo near the Cape, where they can employ the land to better advantage. The beſt farm

at Klapmutz was granted in loan to Mr. Duckett, the Engliſh agriculturiſt, for the purpoſe of making his experiments, for the inſtruction of the African boors.

10. *Drakenſtein* and its environs conſiſt of a fertile tract of country, ſituate at the feet of the great chain of mountains, at the diſtance of 30 to 40 miles from the Cape. The whole extenſive valley of Drakenſtein is well watered by the Berg River and its numerous branches; the ſoil is richer than in moſt parts of the colony, and the ſheltered and warm ſituation is particularly favourable to the growth of the vine and different kinds of fruit.

a. This ſubdiviſion of Little Drakenſtein occupies the middle of the valley, and contains many ſubſtantial farms, moſt of them freehold property; in fact, the two Drakenſteins and the next ſubdiviſion ſupply two-thirds of the wine that is brought to the Cape market.

b. Franſche Hoeck, or the French Corner, is ſituated in the ſouth-eaſt angle of the valley among the mountains, and took its name from the French refugees having ſettled there, when they fled to this country after the revocation of the edict of Nantz. To theſe people the colony is indebted for the introduction of the vine. The eſtates here are moſtly freehold property, and produce little elſe than wine and fruits.

c. The village of the Paarl is ſituated at the foot of a hill that ſhuts in the Valley of Drakenſtein on the weſt ſide. It conſiſts of

of about thirty habitations diſpoſed in a line, but ſo far detached from each other, with intermediate orchards, gardens, and vineyards, as to form a ſtreet from half a mile to a mile in length. About the middle of this ſtreet, on the eaſt ſide, ſtands the church, a neat octagonal building covered with thatch; and at the upper end is a parſonage-houſe, with garden, vineyard, and fruit-groves; and a large tract of very fine land. No attention ſeems to have been omitted by Government in providing comfortably for the country clergy. The blocks of granite, the paarl and the diamond, that overhang this village, are particularly noticed in the ſecond chapter of the firſt volume.

d. e. Dall Joſephat and Waagen-maaker's Valley are two ſmall dales encloſed between the hilly projections that branch out towards the north or upper end of the valley of Drakenſtein; the beſt oranges, as well as the beſt peaches, and other fruit, are ſaid to be produced in theſe dales; and the wines are among the firſt in quality.

f. Groeneberg is the largeſt of theſe projecting hills that run acroſs the northern extremity of the valley, and the ſoil is productive in fruit, wine, and corn.

The whole valley, comprehending the above ſubdiviſions, is comparatively ſo well inhabited, that few animals, in a ſtate of nature, are now to be found upon it. Of hares, however, there is no ſcarcity; and two ſpecies of buſtards, the red-winged and the common partridge, and quails, are in great plenty. The *Klip-ſpringer* antelope, and the *reebok* are plentiful in the

mountains, and *duykers*, *greiſboks*, and *ſteenboks* not very ſcarce among the hills towards the northern extremity of the valley. The inhabitants are alſo annoyed with wolves, hyænas, and jackalls, which deſcend in the nights from the neighbouring mountains.

11. *Paardeberg*, or the Horſe Mountain, ſo called from the number of wild horſes or zebras that formerly frequented it, is a continuation of the Paarl Mountain to the northward. The produce of the farms is chiefly confined to wheat, which, with a ſprinkling of manure, or a couple of years reſt, or by fallowing, will yield from fifteen to twenty fold. They cultivate, alſo, barley and pulſe, but have few horſes or cattle beyond what are neceſſary for the purpoſes of huſbandry.

12. *Riebeck's Caſteel*, or the Caſtle of Van Riebeck, may be conſidered as a prolongation of the Paardeberg, terminating to the northward in a high rocky ſummit. It took its name from the founder of the colony having travelled to this diſtance from the Cape, which is about ſixty miles, and which, in that eatly period of the ſettlement, was as far as it was conſidered ſafe to proceed, on account of the numerous natives, whoſe race has now almoſt diſappeared from the face of the earth. The produce is the ſame as that of the farms of the laſt diviſion, in both of which there are as many loan-farms as freehold eſtates.

13, 14. *Eaſt Zwartland* and *Twenty-four Rivers*. Theſe two diviſions conſiſt of wide extended plains, ſtretching, in width, from

from the Berg River to the great chain of mountains, and to the Picquet Berg, in length, to the northward. They are conſidered as the granaries of the colony. The crops, however, in Zwartland, are as uncertain as the rains, on which, indeed, their ſucceſs almoſt entirely depends. In the Four-and-twenty Rivers the grounds are capable of being irrigated by the numberleſs ſtreamlets that iſſue from the great chain of mountains, in their courſe to the Berg River. Many of theſe, in their progreſs over the plain, form large tracts of ſwampy ground that have been found to produce very fine rice. Wheat, barley, and pulſe are the principal articles that are cultivated in theſe two diviſions, but they have plenty of fruit, and make a little wine for their own family uſe. Should the Bay of Saldanha, at any future period, become the general rendezvous of ſhipping, theſe two diviſions will be more valuable than all the reſt of the colony.

15. The *Picquet Berg* terminates the plains of the Four-and-twenty Rivers to the northward. Here, beſides corn and fruit, the inhabitants rear horſes, horned cattle, and ſheep. And from hence, alſo, is ſent to the Cape market a conſiderable quantity of tobacco, which has the reputation of being of the beſt quality that Southern Africa produces.

16. *Olifant's River* is a fine clear ſtream, flowing through a narrow valley, hemmed in between the great chain of mountains and an inferior ridge called the *Cardouw*. This valley, being interſected by numerous rills of water from the mountains on each ſide, is extremely rich and fertile; but the great

diſtance from the Cape, and the bad roads over the Cardouw, hold out little encouragement for the farmer to extend the cultivation of grain, fruit, or wine, beyond the neceſſary ſupply of his own family. Dried fruit is the principal article they ſend to market, after the ſupplies, which they furniſh, of horſes, horned cattle, and ſheep. The country on each ſide of the lower part of the river is dry and barren, and for many miles from the mouth entirely uninhabited. A chalybeate ſpring of hot water, of the temperature of 108° of Fahrenheit's Scale, flows in a very conſiderable ſtream out of the Cardouw Mountain into the Olifant's River. And a bathing-houſe is erected over the ſpring.

All the ſmaller kinds of antelopes, jackalls, hares, and partridges, are very abundant in the four laſt-mentioned diviſions.

Theſe diviſions of Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein, above enumerated, lie on the weſt or Cape ſide of the great chain of mountains, and comprehend the moſt valuable portion of the colony. The tranſmontane diviſions of Stellenboſch are,

17. The *Biedouw*, which is the ſlanting ſide of the great mountains behind the Olifant's River, a cold, elevated, rugged tract of country, covered with coppice wood, and very thinly inhabited. The ſtock of the farmers conſiſts of ſheep and horned cattle.

18. *Onder Bokkeveld* is the elevated flat ſurface of a Table Mountain, whoſe ſides on the weſt and north are high and almoſt

moſt perpendicular rocks, piled on each other in horizontal ſtrata like thoſe of Table Mountain at the Cape; but it deſcends with a gentle ſlope to the eaſtward, and terminates in Karroo plains. The graſſes on the ſummit are ſhort but ſweet, and the ſmall ſhrubby plants are excellent food for ſheep and goats. The horſes, alſo, of this diviſion, are among the beſt which the colony produces, and the cattle, as is the caſe in all the mountainous ſituations, thrive very well. In ſome of the valleys, where the grounds will admit of irrigation, the common returns of wheat are forty, and of barley ſixty, for one, without any reſt for twenty years, without fallowing, and without manure. In ſuch ſituations the ſoil is deeply tinged with iron, and abounds with maſſes of the ſame kind of iron-ſtone which I have already mentioned.

The *Spring-bok*, or the ſpringing antelope, once ſo abundant in this diviſion, as to have been the cauſe of its name, is now but an occaſional viſitor, and ſeen only in ſmall herds of a few hundreds. *Steenboks* and *orbies* and *grieſboks* are ſtill plentiful and large. The *korhanes* or buſtards, of three ſpecies, and hares are ſo plentiful that they were continually among the horſes feet in riding over the country. On the Karroo plains, cloſe behind the Bokkeveld, are found the two large ſpecies of antelope, the *eland* and the *gemſbok*, but their numbers are rapidly diminiſhing in conſequence of the frequent excurſions of the farmers on purpoſe to ſhoot them; not ſo much for the ſake of their fleſh, which, however, is excellent, but for their ſkins alone.

19. The

19. The *Hantam* is a Table Mountain, riſing from the ſurface of the Bokkeveld Mountain, on its eaſtern extremity, and is ſurrounded by a number of farms that receive a ſupply of water from rills iſſuing out of the baſe of the mountain. Horſes and cattle are the produce of the Hantam, and the former have been found to eſcape a very fatal diſeaſe that is prevalent over the whole colony, by being ſent upon the ſummit of the Hantam Mountain. The inhabitants of this diviſion are liable to the depredations of the Bosjeſman's Hottentots, againſt whom they make regular expeditions in the ſame manner as from the Sneuwberg.

20. The *Khamies Berg* is a cluſter of mountains ſituated in the middle of the country that formerly was inhabited by the Namaaqua Hottentots, at the diſtance of five days' journey north-weſt from the Hantam, over a dry ſandy deſert almoſt deſtitute of water. This cluſter of mountains being the beſt, and, indeed, almoſt the only habitable part of the Namaaqua country, has been taken poſſeſſion of by the wandering peaſantry, who, to the advantage of a good grazing country, had the additional inducement of ſettling there from the eaſy means of increaſing their ſtock of ſheep from the herds of the native Hottentots, who, indeed, are now ſo reduced and ſcattered among the Dutch farms as ſcarcely to be conſidered as a diſtinct tribe of people.

The copper mountains commence where the Khamieſberg ends, the whole ſurface of which is ſaid to be covered with malachite, or the carbonate of copper, and cupreous pyrites.

But the ores of theſe mountains, however abundant, and however rich, are of no great value on account of the total want of every kind of fuel to ſmelt them, as well as of their very great diſtance from the Cape, and from there being neither bay nor river where they could be put on board of coaſting veſſels. In the Khamieſberg is alſo found, in large blocks, that beautiful ſpecies of ſtone to which mineralogiſts have given the name of Prehnite.

21. *Upper*, *Middle*, and *Little Roggevelds*, or rye-graſs countries, are the ſummit of a long extended Table Mountain, whoſe weſtern front riſes out of the Karroo plains behind the Bokkeveld, almoſt perpendicularly, to the height of two or three thouſand feet. Stretching to the eaſtward this ſummit becomes more broken into inequalities of ſurface, and riſes at length into the mountains of Nieuweld, the Camdeboo, and the Sneuwberg, which may be conſidered as one extended chain. The great elevation of the Roggeveld, and its being ſurrounded by Karroo plains, make the temperature in winter ſo cold, that for four months in the year the inhabitants are under the neceſſity of deſcending to the feet of the mountains with their horſes, cattle, and ſheep. The ſtrongeſt and largeſt breed of horſes in the whole colony is that of the Roggeveld.

22. *Nieuweld* and *the Ghoup* are continuations of the Roggeveld Mountain, and join the diviſions bearing the ſame name in the diſtrict of Graaf Reynet. They have lately been deſerted on account of the number of Bosjeſman Hottentots dwelling cloſe behind them.

23, 24.

23, 24. *Warm* and *Cold Bokkeveld* and *Hex River*, are a chain of valleys lying close behind the great mountains, consisting of meadow-land abundantly supplied with water, and appear as if they had once been lakes. They are thinly inhabited, and every kind of cultivation almost totally neglected.

25. *Breede River* is to the southward of the Hex River, and extends to the borders of the Zwellendam district. It is productive in corn, and the part called *Bosjesveld*, or the heathy country, is favourable for sheep and cattle.

26. *Ghoudinie* and *Brandt Valley* are two small valleys close behind the Franschе Hoeck, extremely rich, and well watered. Through the Brandt Valley runs a stream of hot water, whose temperature at the spring is 150° of Fahrenheit's Scale. With this stream several thousand acres of meadow-ground are capable of being flooded.

27. *Roode Sand* or *Waveren* is an extensive division behind the mountains of Drakenstein, and produces abundance of grain, pulse, fruits, and wine. The pass of Roode Sand is the only waggon-road into this division, and is distant from Cape Town about seventy miles. In this division there is a small neat church, and a very comfortable parsonage-house, with extensive vineyards, orchards, garden, and arable land; and contiguous to the church is a row of houses, the number of which has lately increased.

28, 29,

28, 29, 30, 31. *Bott River*, *Zwarte Berg*, *Drooge Ruggens*, and *River Zonder End* are interpoſed between Hottentot Hollands Kloof and the borders of Zwellendam; the chief produce of which is corn and cattle, with a ſmall quantity of wine of an inferior quality, cultivated chiefly for the ſupply of the more diſtant parts of the colony.

32, 33. *Uyl Kraal* and *Soetendal*'s Valley are two diviſions ſtretching along the ſea-coaſt from Hanglip, the eaſt point of Bay Falſe, to the mouth of the Breede River, beyond Cape L'Aguillas, comprehending excellent corn-lands and good grazing ground for horſes. The ſmaller kinds of antelopes are very abundant, as are alſo hares, partridges, and buſtards; and towards the Cape L'Aguillas are a few *Zebras*, *Hartebeeſts*, and *Bonteboks*.

The greater part of this extenſive diſtrict, beyond the mountains, conſiſts of loan-farms, as that on the Cape ſide is chiefly compoſed of freehold eſtates. The population and produce were aſcertained from the Opgaaff liſt being taken on oath in the year 1798, and were as follows:

Population.

Men - -	1970
Women - -	1199
Sons - -	1845
Daughters - -	1818
Servants and people of colour	424
Carried over	Chriſtians 7256

	Brought over	7256
Slave men - -	7211	
Slave women - -	3411	
Slaves and people of colour	81	
	Slaves	10,703
To theſe may be added, Hottentots in the white diſtrict, about - - -		5000
Total population of Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein		22,959

Stock and Produce.

Horſes - - -	22,661
Horned cattle - - -	59,567
Sheep - - -	451,695
Wine plants - - -	11,500,000
Leggers of wine in 1797 - -	7914
Muids of corn - - -	77,063
—— of barley - - -	32,872
—— of rye - - -	2053

Quantity of land under cultivation in vineyards and grain, 19,573 morgen, or 39,146 Engliſh acres.

District of Zwellendam.

The diſtrict of Zwellendam is that tract of country which lies upon the ſea-coaſt between the Breede River on the weſt,

and Camtoos River on the eaſt, and extends northerly to the ſecond chain of mountains called the Zwarte Berg or Black Mountains. Its length is about 380, and breadth 60, miles, comprehending an area of 19,200 ſquare miles, which is occupied by 480 families, ſo that each family, on an average, has forty ſquare miles of land. This is more than four times the quantity aſſigned to each loan-farm by the Government. Except in the droſdy the whole diſtrict is compoſed of loan-lands, and may be conſidered to conſiſt of the following diviſions:

1. The *Droſdy* or *Village of Zwellendam.*
2. The *Country between the Droſdy and Gauritz River*, named according to the rivers that croſs it.
3. *Cango.*
4. *Zwarte Berg.*
5. *Trada.*
6. *Moſſel Bay.*
7. *Autiniequas Land.*
8. *Plettenberg's Bay.*
9. *Olifant's River.*
10. *Kamnaaſie.*
11. *Lange Kloof.*
12. *Sitſikamma.*

1. The *Droſdy of Zwellendam* is ſituated at the foot of the firſt chain of mountains that runs eaſt and weſt or parallel to the ſea-coaſt, and is diſtant from Cape Town about one hundred and forty miles. It is compoſed of about thirty houſes, ſcat-

tered irregularly over a ſmall but fertile valley, down the middle of which runs a plentiful ſtream of water. At the head of the valley ſtands the houſe of the Landroſt, to which is annexed a large garden well ſtocked with a variety of fruits, and a ſpacious vineyard; the whole encloſed and planted with oaks and other trees. In the middle of the village a large church has lately been erected, which is the only place of worſhip in the whole diſtrict.

2. This diviſion comprehends the whole tract of country that lies between the Gauritz River and the droſdy, and is well watered by a number of ſtreams iſſuing from the mountains, upon the banks of which the farm-houſes in general are placed. The produce of theſe is corn, wine, and cattle, but few ſheep; the whole diſtrict of Zwellendam being unfavourable to this animal, except the three following diviſions.

3, 4, 5. *Cango*, *Zwarte Berg*, and *Trada*, are Karroo plains, ſituated between the firſt and ſecond chains of mountains, but being well watered by the mountain ſtreams, contain fertile patches of ground. The great diſtance, however, from the Cape, and the exceſſive bad roads, operate againſt an extenſive tillage. On theſe plains are an abundance of oſtriches, herds of *Quachas*, *Zebras*, and *Hartebeeſts*. Behind the firſt chain of mountains, in theſe diviſions, are two hot ſprings of chalybeate water.

6. *Moſſel Bay* diviſion, ſometimes called the *Droogeveldt*, or Dry Country, extends from the Gauritz River to the Great Brakke

Brakke River that falls into Moſſel Bay. The ſurface is hilly and compoſed of a light ſandy ſoil, which, when the rains are favourable, is ſufficiently fertile in corn. The only natural product in the vegetable kingdom, that is uſeful as an article of commerce, is the aloe, but the heathy plants along the ſea-ſhore are more favourable for ſheep than in the other parts of this diviſion. The ſhores of the bay and the ſea-coaſt abound with excellent oyſters; and muſcles are equally plentiful, but they are very large, and of a ſtrong flavour; and the mouths of all the rivers contain plenty of good fiſh. The bay itſelf has already been deſcribed.

7. *Autiniequas Land* is the next diviſion to Moſſel Bay along the ſea-coaſt, and extends as far eaſtward as the Kayman's River. The Dutch Government reſerved to itſelf about twenty thouſand acres, which is nearly half the diviſion, of the fineſt land, without exception, in the whole colony, being a level meadow always covered with graſs. The mountains approaching near the ſea, and being covered with large foreſt trees, attract the vapours and cauſe a conſiderable quantity of rain to fall in the Autiniequas Land in the ſummer months. The overſeer calculated that the land held by Government in this diviſion was fully ſufficient for the maintenance of a thouſand horſes, a thouſand head of cattle, and for raiſing annually ten thouſand muids of corn.

8. *Plettenberg's Bay* diviſion begins at the Kayman's River, and continues to the inacceſſible foreſts of Sitſikamma. The whole

whole of this tract of country is extremely beautiful, agreeably diverſified by hill and dale, and lofty foreſts. Within ſeven miles of the bay are large timber trees, and the ſurface is almoſt as level as a bowling-green, over which the ſeveral roads are carried. The peaſantry, who inhabit this diſtrict, are moſtly wood-cutters, and they earn a very hard ſubſiſtence. The great diſtance from the Cape, being 400 miles of bad road, leaves them little profit on a load of timber, when ſold at the deareſt rate in the Cape market, ſo little, indeed, that they prefer to diſpoſe of it at the bay for a mere trifle. Plank of thirteen or fourteen inches wide, and inch thick, may be purchaſed on the ſpot at the rate of threepence the foot in length.

The bark of ſeveral of the creeping plants in the foreſts might be employed as ſubſtitutes for hemp. The iron ores near the baſe of the mountains might be worked by clearing the wood, of which there is an inexhauſtible ſupply. The timber is, undoubtedly, ſuitable for many purpoſes, notwithſtanding the prejudices that have been entertained againſt it very undeſervedly, and very ignorantly, becauſe about one-eighth part only of the different kinds have ever undergone a trial, and theſe few by no means a deciſive one. The climate is trying for the beſt timber; and Engliſh oak even gives way much ſooner here than in its native country, by the alternate expoſure to wet weather, dry winds, and ſcorching ſun. Where ſuch expoſure has been guarded againſt, one of the ſlighteſt Cape woods, the geel hout or yellow wood, has been known to ſtand a hundred years without ſhewing ſymptoms of decay.

The

The native trees of the Cape are many of them of quick growth, and advance to a large ſize, but they are much twiſted and ſhaken by the wind, and generally hollow at heart. Many, however, are perfectly ſound, and every way ſuitable for baulk, rafters, joiſts, and plank, but, I again repeat it, they have never yet met with a fair trial. The bay has already been noticed, as has alſo the Knyſna, which is in this diſtrict, and cloſer to the foreſts than even the bay itſelf.

9. *Olifant's River* runs at the foot of the ſecond chain of mountains or the Zwarteberg to the weſtward, and falls into the Gauritz River. The ſoil is Karroo, and ſtrongly tinged with iron, and as in ſome places there is plenty of water, vegetation here is remarkably luxuriant. At each extremity of this diviſion are hot ſprings of chalybeate water, the temperature from 98° to 110° of Fahrenheit's ſcale. The inhabitants cultivate the vine for home conſumption, and diſtil from peaches, as well as from grapes, an ardent ſpirit. But the articles brought to the Cape market are chiefly butter and ſoap. The *ſalſola* grows here much more luxuriantly than I have ſeen it in any other part of the colony. The *mimoſa Karroo* grows alſo along the valley, through which the river flows, to a very large ſize, and produces a great quantity of gum-arabic; the bark too is ſuperior to that of oak for tanning leather. Small antelopes and hares are ſufficiently plentiful, and the beautiful *koodoo* is ſometimes ſhot among the groves of mimoſas. Leopards, tyger cats, and different ſpecies of the *viverra* genus, as alſo the river otter, are not uncommon along the wooded banks of the Olifant or Elephants' River.

10. *Kam-*

10. *Kamnaaſie* is a rough hilly tract of country ſurrounding a high mountain ſo called, ſituate between the Olifant's River and the Kange Kloof. The inhabitants are comparatively poor and few.

11. *Lange Kloof* is the long paſs which has been particularly noticed in the ſecond chapter.

12. *Sitſikamma* commences at Plettenberg's Bay, and continues along the ſea-coaſt to the Camtoos River. It is chiefly covered with impenetrable foreſts, on the eaſt of which, however, there are extenſive plains equally good for the cultivation of grain and the grazing of cattle. No direct road has yet been made through the foreſts along the ſea-coaſt, ſo as to be paſſable by waggons, but the inhabitants are obliged to go round by the Lange Kloof. They bring little to the Cape market on their annual viſit, except ſalted butter and ſoap. In the foreſts of Sitſikamma are elephants, buffaloes, and rhinoſceroſes; and on the plains the large *hartebeeſt* and *koodoo* antelopes, beſides an abundance of ſmall game.

The population and produce of Zwellendam, as aſcertained by the Opgaaff, taken on oath in the year 1798, are as follows:

Population.

Population.

Men	1070	
Women	639	
Sons	971	
Daughters	987	
Servants and free people of colour	300	
Chriſtians		3967
Men ſlaves	2196	
Women ſlaves		
Slave children		
Hottentots in the ſervice of the peaſantry, on a calculation	500	
Slaves and Hottentots		2696
Total population of Zwellendam		6663

Stock and Produce.

Horſes	9,049
Horned cattle	52,376
Sheep	154,992
Leggers of wine made	220½
Muids of wheat reaped in 1797	16,720
—— of barley	10,554
—— of rye	

District of Graaf Reynet.

The diſtrict of Graaf Reynet extends to the eaſtern extremity of the colony. The Great Fiſh River, the Tarka, the Bamboſberg, and the Zuureberg divide them from the Kaffers on the eaſt; the Camtoos River, the Gamka or Lions' River, and Nieuwveld Mountains, from the diſtricts of Zwellendam and Stellenboſch on the weſt; Plettenberg Landmark, the Great Table Mountain, and the Karreeberg from the Bosjeſman Hottentots on the north; and it is terminated by the ſea-coaſt on the ſouth. The mean length and breadth of this diſtrict may be about 250 by 160 miles, making an area of 40,000 ſquare miles, which is peopled by about 700 families; conſequently each family may command 57 ſquare miles of ground, which is more than ſix times the quantity regulated by Government. Great part, however, has been occaſionally abandoned on account of incurſions made both by the Kaffers and Bosjeſmans. The inhabitants, indeed, are a ſort of Nomades, and would long before this have penetrated with their flocks and herds far beyond the preſent boundaries of the colony, had they not met with a bold and ſpirited race of people in the Kaffers, who reſiſted and effectually repelled their encroachments on that ſide. Their perſecution of the Hottentots in their employ has at length rouzed this people, alſo, to make an effort for their former independence. Should they ſucceed, and it is their own fault if they do not, for it appears they are ſuperior in point of numbers, and much ſo in courage, the whole or the greateſt part of the diſtrict of Graaf Reynet muſt, in conſequence, be abandoned by the Dutch African peaſantry.

The

The boors of this diſtrict are entirely graziers; few attempting to put a plough or a ſpade into the ground, except in Zwart Kop's Bay, or in ſome parts of the Sneuwberg, preferring a life of complete indolence and a diet of animal food to the comfort of procuring a ſupply of daily bread, and a few vegetables, by a very trifling degree of exertion. In Sneuwberg, indeed, the depredations of the locuſts are diſcouraging to the cultivator, as the odds are great he reaps nothing, while this devouring inſect remains in the country. About the droſdy, alſo, they cultivate a little grain, which they exchange with the grazier for ſheep and cattle.

The diſtrict of Graaf Reynet is entirely compoſed of loan-farms, and it is divided as follows:

1. The *Droſdy.*
2. *Sneuwberg*, conſiſting of three parts.
3. *Swagers Hoeck.*
4. *Bruyntjes Hoogté.*
5. *Camdeboo.*
6. *Zwarte Ruggens.*
7. *Zwarte Kop's River.*
8. *Zuure Veldt.*
9. *Bosjeſman's River.*
10. *Tarka.*
11. *Sea-cow River aud Rhinoſceroſberg.*
12. *Zwarte Berg.*
13. *Nieuwveld* and the *Ghowp.*

1. The *Droſdy*, or reſidence of the Landroſt, is a ſmall village in the centre of the diſtrict, and rather more than 500 miles from Cape Town. It conſiſts in about a dozen mud-houſes covered with thatch. That of the Landroſt is of the ſame deſcription, to which is annexed a garden and vineyard; but the grapes here ſeldom come to perfection, on account of the cold blaſts from the Snowy Mountains, at the feet of which the village is ſituated. The land is red Karroo, and uncommonly fertile where the Sunday River can be brought to flood it. I obſerved here ſeventy diſtinct ſtems from one ſingle grain of corn.

Under the idea of civilizing the rude boors of this diſtrict, Lord Macartney made ſuitable proviſion for a clergyman, and the foundation was laid for a large church. Long, however, before the outer walls were built, they thought fit to expel the clergyman that had been ſent down to them; and the building was only juſt finiſhed when the Engliſh evacuated the place.

2. *Voor*, *Middle*, and *Agter Sneuwberg*, the fore, middle, and poſterior Snowy mountains may be conſidered as the grand nurſery of ſheep and horned cattle, particularly of the former. Of theſe many families are in poſſeſſion of flocks from two to five thouſand. Between the people of theſe diviſions and the Bosjeſman Hottentots there is a perpetual warfare, which is imprudently fomented by the former making priſoners for life of the children they take from the latter.

In

In no part of the colony are ſuch immenſe flocks of the *ſpringbok* as in the diviſions of the Snowy Mountains. Five thouſand in one group are conſidered only as a moderate quantity, ten, twelve, or fifteen thouſand being ſometimes found aſſembled together, eſpecially when they are about to migrate to ſome other part of the country. The *bontebok*, the *eland*, the *hartebeeſt*, and the *gemſbok* are alſo plentiful, and ſmall game in vaſt numbers. On the banks of the Fiſh River are two wells of hepatized water, of the temperature of 88° of Fahrenheit's ſcale. They are conſidered to be efficacious in healing ſprains and bruiſes, and favourable to rheumatic complaints, to which the great changeableneſs of the climate renders the inhabitants ſubject. In ſeveral of the mountains of this diviſion are alſo found, adhering to the ſandſtone rocks, large plates of native nitre, from half an inch to an inch in thickneſs, but not in quantities ſufficient to make it an object of attention as an article of commerce.

3. *Swaager's Hoeck* is a ſmall diviſion within the mountains at the head of Bruyntjes Hoogté, tolerably well watered and fertile in grain, which, however, is very ſparingly cultivated.

4. *Bruyntjes Hoogté* lies upon the banks of the Great Fiſh River, and is conſidered as the beſt diviſion in the whole diſtrict for horſes and horned cattle, and equally ſuitable for the cultivation of grain and fruits; but the enormous diſtance from any market holds out no encouragement to the farmer to ſow more grain than is neceſſary for family uſe, and many of them take

not the trouble of ſowing any. The *boſch bok* and pigmy antelope are common in this diſtrict; and buffaloes and rhinoſceroſes haunt the thickets upon the banks of the Great Fiſh River.

All the diſturbances of Graaf Reynet have originated in this diviſion. Its proximity to the Kaffers held out an irreſiſtible temptation to the boors to wage war againſt them for the ſake of plundering them of their cattle; yet none of the boors are in better circumſtances than thoſe of Bruyntjes Hoogté. The very man who was moſt active in promoting a Kaffer war, according to his *Opgaaff*, had between 800 and 900 head of cattle, and more than 8000 ſheep, all of which, in their late diſturbances with the Kaffers, he very deſervedly loſt.

5. *Camdeboo* extends along the feet of the Snowy Mountains, from the droſdy to Bruyntjes Hoogté, and is chiefly compoſed of Karroo plains, which, however, are extremely fertile in the chaſms down which the ſtreams of the mountains conſtantly flow. The oxen are large and ſtrong, and the ſheep little inferior to thoſe of the Snowy Mountains. The beautiful animal the *gnoo* is frequently ſeen bounding over the plains of Camdeboo, and *ſpringboks* and *hartebeeſts* are very plentiful.

6. *Zwarte Ruggens* is a rough ſtoney tract of country to the ſouthward of Camdeboo, very ſcantily ſupplied with water, and producing little except ſucculent plants, among which are two or three ſpecies of euphorbia. Few families are found in this diviſion,

diviſion, but here and there in the neighbourhood of the Sunday River, which runs through it. The cattle and ſheep are ſmall, but generally in good condition, notwithſtanding the apparent ſcarcity, I might almoſt ſay total abſence, of graſs.

7. *Zwarte Kop's River* is a fertile and extenſive diviſion, lying to the ſouthward of the Zwarte Ruggens, and is capable of producing an abundant ſupply of grain, convenient to be delivered at a trifling expence at the bay, which we have already had occaſion to notice. About fifteen miles to the weſtward of the bay are large foreſts of timber trees, near which there is every appearance of a rich mine of lead, as I particularly noticed in the former volume. I had occaſion alſo to ſpeak of the ſalt lake near the bay, and the plentiful ſupply of that article which it produces. Wax from the *myrica cerifera* and aloes might be furniſhed by this diviſion as articles of commerce.

8. *Zuure Veldt* is an extenſive plain country ſtretching from the Sunday River in Zwart Kop's Bay to the Great Fiſh River, and is the ſame kind of good arable or paſture land as the plains of the *Autiniquas* diviſion in Zwellendam, but it is now excluſively in the poſſeſſion of the Kaffers, from whom, indeed, it was originally taken forcibly by the boors. The great chaſms towards the ſea-coaſt, that are filled with thickets, abound in elephants and buffaloes; and in the Great Fiſh River are occaſionally, at leaſt, a few of the hippopotamus or river horſe.

9. *Bos-*

9. *Bosjeſman's River* joins the Zuure Veld to the northward, and is a dry hilly country without any verdure, except in the hollows. It is thinly inhabited.

10. The *Tarka* is a ſmall diviſion at the north-eaſtern extremity of the colony, almoſt entirely deſerted on account of its proximity to ſeveral hordes of Bosjeſman Hottentots. It was in the mountains that terminate this diviſion that I found the drawing of the unicorn on the caverns. The *bontebok*, the *eland*, and the *gnoo* are common in the *Tarka*.

11. *Sea-cow River* and *Rhinoſceroſberg* lie to the northward of the Snowy Mountains, and conſiſt of detached hills riſing out of extenſive plains, and are well covered with graſs. All kinds of game are particularly abundant in theſe diviſions, and there is ſcarcely a ſpecies of antelope within the limits of the colony that may not be met with here. The inhabitants are in a ſtate of perpetual warfare with the Bosjeſmans, and are frequently obliged to deſert this part of the country.

12. *Zwarte Berg* is a portion of the mountain of the ſame name in the diſtrict of Zwellendam, to which, indeed, this alſo ought properly to belong. Sheep and horned cattle are the chief produce of the farmers.

13. *Nieuwveldt* and the *Ghowp* are alſo portions of the mountains of the ſame names, in the Stellenboſch diſtrict, and extend from thence to the Sneuwberg. They are occaſionally deſerted on account of the incurſions of the Bosjeſman Hottentots.

The

The Opgaaff liſt taken on oath at the droſdy of Graaf Reynet, in the year 1798, was as follows:

Population.

Men - - -	940	
Women - - -	689	
Sons - - -	1170	
Daughters - -	1138	
Servants, ſchool-maſters with their families - -	189	
Perſons of colour and their families	136	
	Chriſtians	4262
Men ſlaves - -	445	
Women ſlaves - -	330	
Slave children - -	189	
	Slaves	964
Hottentots in the whole diſtrict (taken in the Opgaaff) - - -		8947
Total population of Graaf Reynet		14,173

Stock and Produce.

Horſes - - - -	7,392
Horned cattle - - -	118,306
Sheep - - -	780,274

Leggers of wine made - -	187 5/16
Muids of wheat reaped 1797 - -	11,283 1/2
—— of barley - - -	5,193 1/4

TOTAL AMOUNT of the Opgaaff Lists of the four Districts, being the exact State of the *Population*, *Stock*, *and Produce* of the whole Colony (the British Army and Navy, and British Settlers not included) in the Year 1798.

Population.	Cape.	Zwellendam.	Stellenbosch.	Graaf Reynet.	Totals.
hristians	6261	3967	7256	4262	21,746
Slaves	11,891	2196	10,703	964	25,754
Hottentots		500	5000	8947	14,447
Total	18,152	6663	22,959	14,173	61,947
Stock and produce					
Horses	8334	9049	22,661	7392	47,436
Heads of cattle	20,957	52,376	59,567	118,306	251,206
Sheep	61,575	154,992	451,695	780,274	1,448,536
Hogs	758				758
Wine plants	1,560,109		11,500,000		13,060,109
Leggers of wine	786 1/2	220 1/2	7914	187 5/16	9108 5/16
Muids of wheat	32,962	16,720	77,063	11,283 1/2	138,028 1/2
—— of barley	18,819	10,554	32,872	5193 1/4	67,438 1/4
—— of rye	529		2053		2582

TENURES OF LANDS.

The Dutch Government having obtained a tract of country from the Hottentots, at first by purchase and extended afterwards by force, made grants of land to the settlers on the four following tenures:

1. *Loan*

1. *Loan lands.*
2. *Gratuity lands.*
3. *Quit rents.*
4. *Freeholds.*

1. The moſt ancient tenure is that of Loan lands. Theſe were grants, made to the original ſettlers, of certain portions of land to be held on yearly leaſes, on condition of paying to Government an annual rent of twenty-four rix dollars. Every farm was to conſiſt of the ſame quantity, and be ſubject to the ſame rent, without any regard being paid to the quality of the land. And though the leaſe was made out for one year only, yet the payment of the rent was conſidered as a renewal; ſo that the tenure amounted, in fact, to a leaſe held in perpetuity. And the buildings erected on it, together with the vineyards and fruit groves planted, called the *upſtals*, were ſaleable like any other property, and the leaſe continued to the purchaſer.

When application was intended to be made for the grant of a leaſehold farm, the perſon applying ſtuck down a ſtake at the place where the houſe was meant to be erected. The overſeer of the diviſion was then called to examine that it did not encroach on the neighbouring farms, that is to ſay, that no part of any of the ſurrounding farms were within half an hour's walk of the ſtake; or, in other words, that a radius of about a mile and half, with the ſtake as a centre, ſwept a circle which did not interſect any part of the adjoining farms. In ſuch caſe the overſeer certified that the loan farm applied for was tenable, otherwiſe not. And as it generally happened that the ſite of

the houſe was determined by ſome ſpring or water-courſe, the ſtake was ſo placed that the circumference of the circle deſcribed left a ſpace between the new, and ſome adjoining, farm of one, two, or more miles in diameter. This intermediate ſpace, if leſs than three miles in diameter, was conſidered as not tenable, and, conſequently, if any perſon (willing to pay the eſtabliſhed rent for a ſmaller quantity of land than Government allowed) applied for ſuch intermediate piece of ground, his application was ſure to be rejected. Whether the Government had any deſign of diſperſing the people by ſuch an abſurd ſyſtem, under the idea of keeping them more eaſily in ſubjection, I can't pretend to ſay, but it thought proper to encourage the continuance of the ſyſtem, which is in full force to this moment.

The diſputes about theſe ſtakes or *baakens*, as they call them, are endleſs; and partly through accident, but frequently by deſign, the ſtakes are ſo placed that, on an average throughout the whole colony, the farms are at twice the diſtance, and conſequently contain four times the quantity of land allowed by Government.

The number of theſe loan farms regiſtered in the office of the receiver of the land revenue, on cloſing the books in 1798, were,

In the the diſtrict of the Cape -	110
—— Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein -	689
Carried forward	799

	Brought forward	799
In Zwellendam	- -	541
—— Graaf Reynet	- -	492
	Total	1832

Suppoſing each farm to conſiſt only of the uſual allowance, or a ſquare of three miles the ſide, the quantity of land in all the loan farms will amount to 10,552,320 acres; and the annual rent they produce is about 44,000 rix-dollars, which is at the rate of about eight-tenths of a farthing an acre. Yet, moderate as theſe rents are, the Dutch Government could not prevent their running in arrears, the amount of which, at the capture, was upwards of 200,000 rix dollars. From the payment of this arrear they were excuſed by the Britiſh Government. Yet, nevertheleſs, they pay the ſmall rent reſerved ſo unwillingly and irregularly, that new arrears are every day accruing.

2. Gratuity lands are ſuch as were originally granted in loan, but, on petition of the holders, in conſequence of ſome ſuppoſed ſervices done to Government, have been converted into a ſort of cuſtomary copyhold liable to a certain rent, which, like the loan-lands, is continued at 24 rix dollars a-year. Such eſtates, except a few in Zwellendam, are at no great diſtance from the Cape, and, in general, are in a better ſtate of cultivation than the loan farms. Their number, as regiſtered in the Land Revenue Office, are,

In

In the diſtrict of the Cape - -	43
—— Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein -	46
—— Zwellendam - -	18
Total	107

3. The quit-rents ariſe from pieces of waſte ground which, from their contiguity or convenience to an eſtate, have been allowed by Government to be occupied by the owners of ſuch eſtates upon a leaſe of fifteen years, on condition of their paying an annual rent of one ſhilling an acre. Before the expiration of the leaſe a prolongation of the term for another fifteen years is petitioned, and the renewal ſeems now to have become a matter of courſe. Of ſuch grants there are,

In the Cape diſtrict - -	25
—— Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein -	10
Total	35

4. Real eſtates held in fee-ſimple and ſubject to no rent are chiefly ſituated in the Cape diſtrict or its vicinity. Theſe are the choiceſt patches of land, and have originally been ſold or granted to the early ſettlers in parcels of about 60 morgen, or 120 Engliſh acres. It is natural to ſuppoſe that lands held in fee-ſimple ſhould be in a higher ſtate of improvement than thoſe held

held by any other tenure, and ſo, in fact, they are, though by no means brought to that degree which might be expected. A Cape farmer has no idea of beſtowing much labour or employing his capital in the proſpect of a diſtant profit. He is unwilling to plant trees, becauſe he may not live to reap the benefit of them. Yet, in this climate, there is no great interval of time between dropping the ſeed into the ground and the growth of the tree. The oak, the ſtone-pine, the poplar, and the native ſilver tree are all of quick vegetation. One *Van Reenen*, a brewer at the foot of the Table Mountain, on the eaſt ſide, planted a wood of the ſilver tree twelve years ago, on waſte ground, from which he now ſupplies the town and garriſon with fuel; and for which he refuſed the offer of between three and four thouſand pounds as it ſtood on the ſpot.

Eſtates in the Cape remain but a ſhort time in the ſame family. Their deſcent is ſeldom ſettled, as by the laws of the colony all the children are entitled to equal ſhares of the property at the death of the parents. The advantages to which primogeniture in ſome countries entitles, are here entirely unknown. Superior in point of equity, as ſuch a rule muſt be acknowledged, the conſequence of it is an indifference to all improvement of eſtates beyond what will be productive of immediate profit. The proprietor endeavours to enrich himſelf by lending out money, increaſing his ſtock of ſlaves, of cattle, and furniture, or by purchaſing other eſtates, but he rarely thinks of improving them. He is little ambitious of leaving a name behind him, or of ſettling any branch of his family upon the ſame ſpot that raiſed him to independence and affluence. Old

Cloete,

Cloete, the late proprietor of Conſtantia, forms a ſolitary exception from this remark. Having raiſed himſelf from the ſituation of trumpeter to a regiment into affluence, his whole attention was directed to the improvement of his eſtates, which he divided among his children. His favourite Conſtantia he left to the ſon who bore his own name, and it is provided, in his will, that this eſtate ſhall deſcend directly in the male line to him who bears his chriſtian name, or collaterally to the neareſt of kin to his own chriſtian name and a *Cloete*. The conſequence of which is, that Conſtantia is the moſt improving eſtate in the colony.

There are, perhaps, few countries where property ſo frequently changes hands as at the Cape of Good Hope. Not only do eſtates go out of a family at the death of the parents, when they are ſure to be ſold in order to make a diviſion of the property among the children, but there ſeems to be an univerſal propenſity to buy, ſell, and exchange. Of this the Government has taken the advantage, and impoſed a duty of four per cent. on all immovable property that is transferred from one perſon to another. Two-thirds of the property, diſpoſed of at the Cape, is by public auction, on which the vendue maſter charges two per cent., $1\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. for Government, and $\frac{1}{4}$ per cent. for himſelf; ſo that the duty on transferring an eſtate amounts to 6 per cent. upon the value. In fifteen ſales, therefore, by adding the expence of ſtamps and writings, Government runs away with the whole capital; and I have been informed, there are inſtances, within the memory of many perſons, of eſtates being ſold this number of times. I, myſelf, purchaſed a ſmall eſtate that, within the laſt eight years, has changed hands ſix

 times;

times; paying thrice a duty to Government of 6 per cent. and thrice of 4 per cent., making a tax of 30 per cent. on the value of the property. It may be obſerved, that this rage for buying and ſelling makes the transfer and the public vendue duties two of the moſt productive branches of the public revenue.

Condition of the Inhabitants.

If the condition of mankind was to be eſtimated entirely by the means it poſſeſſed of ſupplying an abundance, or preventing a ſcarcity, of the neceſſary articles of life, and it muſt be confeſſed they conſtitute a very eſſential part of its comforts, the European coloniſts of the Cape of Good Hope might be pronounced amongſt the happieſt of men. But as all the pleaſures of this world are attended with evils, like roſes placed on ſtems that are ſurrounded with thorns, ſo theſe people, in the midſt of plenty unknown in other countries, can ſcarcely be conſidered as objects of envy. Debarred from every mental pleaſure ariſing from the peruſal of books or the frequent converſation of friends, each ſucceeding day is a repetition of the paſt, whoſe irkſome ſameneſs is varied only by the accidental call of a traveller, the leſs welcome viſits of the Bosjeſmans, or the terror of being put to death by their own ſlaves, or the Hottentots in their employ. The only counterpoiſe to this weariſome and miſerable ſtate of exiſtence, is a ſuperfluity of the neceſſaries of life, as far as regards the ſupport of the animal functions, which all, of every deſcription among the coloniſts,

have the means of acquiring with little exertion either of body or mind.

A ſhort ſketch of the circumſtances and reſources of the ſeveral claſſes of the coloniſts will be ſufficient to convey a general idea of their reſpective conditions. The 22,000 Chriſtian inhabitants that compoſe the population of this colony may be reduced into four claſſes.

1. *People of the town.*
2. *Vine-growers.*
3. *Grain-farmers.*
4. *Graziers.*

1. The people of the town we have already obſerved to be an idle diſſolute race of men, ſubſiſting chiefly by the labour of their ſlaves. In order to derive a fixed income and to avoid any trouble, they require each ſlave to bring them a certain ſum at the end of every week; all that he can earn above this ſum is for himſelf, and many are induſtrious enough to raiſe as much money in a few years as is ſufficient to purchaſe their freedom, and ſometimes that of their children. The price of proviſions and the price of labour bear no ſort of proportion. Butcher's meat is only about twopence a pound, and good brown bread, ſuch as all the ſlaves eat, one penny a pound. A common labouring ſlave gets from two ſhillings to half a crown a day, and a mechanic or artificer five and ſix ſhillings a day. The people of Cape Town are almoſt all of them petty dealers, and they have a remarkable propenſity for public vendues. Not a day

a day paſſes without ſeveral of theſe being held both before and after dinner. And it is no uncommon thing to ſee the ſame identical articles expoſed at two different ſales the ſame day. In fact, a vendue is a kind of lottery. A man buys a ſet of goods in the morning, which he again expoſes to ſale in the evening, ſometimes gaining and ſometimes loſing. Yet all moveable property, on ſale by public auction, is liable to a duty of 5 per cent., 3½ of which the auctioneer is accountable for to Government; the remainder is for himſelf. I cannot give a ſtronger inſtance of the rage for vendues than by obſerving that in four ſucceſſive months of the year 1801, the amount of property ſold by public auction was 1,500,000 rix dollars, a ſum equal to the whole quantity of paper money in circulation, which, indeed, may be conſidered as the only money, of late years, that has circulated in the country. In what manner, therefore, theſe articles were to be paid for is a ſort of myſtery, which, however, the declining ſtate of the colony may before this have explained.

The better ſort of people are thoſe who are employed in the different departments of Government, but their ſalaries were ſo ſmall that moſt of them were petty merchants. Others have eſtates in the country and derive a revenue from their produce. Others again are a ſort of agents for the country boors, and keep houſes to lodge them when they make their annual viſit to the town. Theſe are a kind of Jew brokers, who live entirely by defrauding the ſimple boors in diſpoſing of their produce, and purchaſing for them neceſſaries in return. A boor in the Cape can do nothing for himſelf. Unaccuſtomed to any

ſociety but thoſe of his family and his Hottentots, he is the moſt awkward and helpleſs being on earth, when he gets into Cape Town, and neither buys nor ſells but through his agent. The emancipated ſlaves and people of colour are generally artificers; many of them ſupport their families by fiſhing. During the whole year there is great plenty and variety of fiſh caught in Table Bay, and cheap enough for the very pooreſt to make a daily uſe of.

Houſe-rent, fuel, and clothing are all dear; yet, I will be bold to ſay, there is no town nor city in all Europe, where the maſs of the people are better lodged or better clothed; and fire is leſs neceſſary here than in moſt parts of Europe. The keep of a horſe in Cape Town was never leſs, under the Engliſh Government, than 25*l.* ſterling a year, yet every butcher, baker, petty ſhopkeeper, and artificer, had his team of four, ſix, or eight horſes and his chaiſe. It is true, his horſes were lent out for hire one day, and drew himſelf and his family another; but ſtill it ſeemed inexplicable how they contrived to keep up an eſtabliſhment ſo much beyond their apparent means. Their creditors, I imagine, long before this, will beſt be able to give a ſatisfactory explanation, ſince Britiſh money has ceaſed to circulate among them.

It is true they are neither burthened with taxes nor aſſeſſments. Except on public vendues and transfer of immoveable property, Government has been remarkably tender in impoſing on them burthens, which, however, they might very well afford to bear. Their parochial aſſeſſments are equally moderate. At

the firſt eſtabliſhment of the colony a kind of capitation tax was levied under the name of *Lion and Tyger money*. The fund ſo raiſed was applied to the encouragement of deſtroying beaſts of prey, of which theſe two were conſidered as the moſt formidable. But as lions and tygers have long been as ſcarce in the neighbourhood of the Cape, as wolves are in England, the name of the aſſeſſment has been changed, though the aſſeſſment itſelf remains, and is applied to the repairs of the roads, ſtreets, watercourſes, and other public works. The ſum to be raiſed is fixed by the police, and the quota aſſigned to each is proportioned to the circumſtances of the individual; the limits of the aſſeſſment being from half a crown to forty ſhillings. The perſons liable muſt be burghers, or ſuch as are above ſixteen years of age, and enrolled among the burgher inhabitants. The ordinary amount is fixed at about 5000 rix dollars a year.

Another aſſeſſment to which heads of families are liable is called *Chimney and Hearth money*. This is, properly ſpeaking, a houſe tax, fixed at the rate of eighteenpence a month, or 4½ rix dollars a year, for every houſe or fire-place. This ſhould ſeem to be an unfair aſſeſſment, as the richeſt and the pooreſt inhabitant, the man with a large houſe and he who poſſeſſes only a cottage, are liable to the ſame contribution; as it is preſumed that every houſe has its kitchen fire-place and no other. The amount of this aſſeſſment is about 5200 rix dollars, which, at the above rate, correſponds very nearly with the number of houſes in the town.

They

They are ſubject to no tythes nor church-rates whatſoever, towards the maintenance of the clergy; theſe being paid in the moſt liberal manner out of the treaſury of Government. Nor is any demand made upon them for the ſupport of the poor. The very few that, through age or infirmities, are unable to maintain themſelves, are ſupported out of the ſuperfluities of the church. Where the mere articles of eating and drinking are ſo reaſonably procured as in the Cape, it is no great degree of charity for the rich to ſupport their poor relations, and, accordingly, it is the common practice of the country. Thoſe who come under the denomination of poor are, for the moſt part, emancipated ſlaves, who may not have the benefit of ſuch relations. Nor does the church provide for ſuch on uncertain grounds. Every perſon manumitting a ſlave muſt pay to the church fifty rix dollars or ten pounds, and at the ſame time give ſecurity that ſuch ſlave ſhall not become burdenſome to the church for a certain number of years.

The police of the Town is committed to the management of a board conſiſting of ſix burghers, called the Burgher Senate. The functions of this board are various and important, but they are performed in that careleſs and ſlovenly manner which is ever the caſe where men are compelled to accept an office to which there is annexed neither pay nor emolument. The only exception that I know of is in the ſituation of an Engliſh juſtice of peace. In every public employment of a permanent nature, like that of the Burgher Senate, if the emoluments are not ſuch as to make it worth a man's while to keep his place, the odds are

are great that the duties of it will be neglected. This was the rock upon which the Dutch, in all their Eaſt India ſettlements, ſplit. The appointments of their ſervants were ſo ſmall, that thoſe who held them could not live without cheating their employers; and this was carried on to ſuch an extent, as to become a common obſervation that, in proportion as the Company's finances were impoveriſhed, their ſervants were enriched.

The buſineſs of the Burgher Senate conſiſts in ſeeing that the ſtreets be kept clean and in proper repair; that no nuiſance be thrown into the public avenues leading to the town; that no encroachments be made on public property; that no diſorderly houſes be ſuffered to remain; no impoſitions practiſed on the public; no falſe weights nor meaſures uſed. They are authorized to regulate the prices of bread; to enquire from time to time into the ſtate of the harveſt; and to take precautions againſt a ſcarcity of corn. They are to deviſe meaſures and ſuggeſt plans to Government that may ſeem proper and effective for keeping up a conſtant ſucceſſion of coppice wood for fuel in the Cape diſtrict. They are directed to take particular care that the tradeſmen of the town, and more eſpecially the ſmiths and cartwrights, impoſe not on the country boors in the prices of utenſils neceſſary for carrying on the buſineſs of agriculture. They are to report ſuch crimes, treſpaſſes, and miſdemeanors, as come within their knowledge, to the Fiſcal, who is the Chief Magiſtrate of the police, and Attorney-General of the colony.

It would be in vain to expect that ſuch various and important duties ſhould be faithfully fulfilled for a number of years without

out any conſideration of profit or hope of reward; or that every advantage would not be taken which the ſituation might offer. Some of the members of the Burgher Senate ſent their old and infirm ſlaves to work at the public roads, and received for them the ſame wages as were paid to able-bodied men; others had teams of horſes and waggons that never wanted employ. Theſe things are trifling in themſelves, but the public buſineſs ſuffered by it. When the Engliſh took the place, the ſtreets were in ſo ruinous a condition as ſcarcely to be paſſable with ſafety. A ſmall additional aſſeſſment was laid upon the inhabitants, and in the courſe of five years they had nearly completed a thorough repair of the ſtreets to the great improvement of the town. If they ſhould be induced to light the ſtreets with lamps, it would not only add greatly to the embelliſhment of the town, but prevent a number of accidents that happen in the night time among the ſlaves. It would alſo tend to the encouragement of the whale fiſhery there. But the greateſt of all improvements, and one eaſily to be accompliſhed, would be to conduct the water into the houſes. The head of the ſpring, where it flows into the pipes which conduct it to the preſent fountains, is higher than the roof of the higheſt houſe in the town; yet, by a ſtrange piece of ignorance or perverſeneſs, they have carried it down to the loweſt point on the plain leading to the caſtle, ſo that thoſe who live at the upper end of the town have half a mile to fetch water, which is done by two ſlaves, who conſume many hours in the day in this employ, and are a great annoyance at the public fountain, where they are quarrelling and fighting from morning till night.

The

The pleaſures of the inhabitants are chiefly of the ſenſual kind, and thoſe of eating, drinking, and ſmoking predominate; principally the two latter, which, without much intermiſſion, occupy the whole day. They have no reliſh for public amuſements. They have no exerciſe but that of dancing. A new theatre was erected, but plays were conſidered to be the moſt ſtupid of all entertainments, whether the performance was Engliſh, French, or German. To liſten three hours to a converſation was of all puniſhments the moſt dreadful. I remember, on one occaſion only, to have obſerved the audience highly entertained; this was at an old German ſoldier ſmoking his pipe; and the encouragement he met with in this part of his character was ſo great, and his exertions proportioned to it, that the whole houſe was preſently in a cloud of tobacco ſmoke.

There is neither a bookſeller's ſhop in the whole town, nor a book ſociety. A club called the *Concordia* has lately aſpired to a collection of books, but the purſuits of the principal part of the members are drinking, ſmoking, and gaming. Under the direction of the church is a library, which was left by an individual for the uſe of the public, but the public ſeldom trouble it. In this collection are ſome excellent books, particularly rare and valuable editions of the claſſics, books of travels and general hiſtory, acts of learned ſocieties, dictionaries, and church hiſtory. Books are rarely found in Cape Town to conſtitute any part of the furniture of a houſe. So little value do they ſet on education, that neither Government nor the church, nor their combined efforts, by perſuaſion or extortion, could raiſe a

ſum ſufficient to eſtabliſh a proper public ſchool in the colony; and few of the natives are in circumſtances to enable them to ſend their children for education to Europe. But thoſe few who have had this advantage generally, on their return, relapſe into the common habits of the coloniſts. I repeat, that if the meaſure of general proſperity was to be eſtimated according to the eaſe of procuring abundance of food, the people of the Cape may be conſidered as the moſt proſperous on earth, for there is not a beggar in the whole colony, and no example of any perſon ſuffering for want of the common neceſſaries of life.

2. The wine growers, or as they are uſually called at the Cape the wine boors, are a claſs of people who, to the bleſſings of plenty, add a ſort of comfort which is unknown to the reſt of the peaſantry. They have not only the beſt houſes and the moſt valuable eſtates, but, in general, their domeſtic economy is managed in a more comfortable manner than is uſually found among the country farmers. Moſt of them are deſcendants of the French families who firſt introduced the vine. Their eſtates are moſtly freehold, in extent about 120 Engliſh acres, and the greater part is employed in vineyards and garden grounds. Their corn they uſually purchaſe for money or in exchange for wine. Their ſheep alſo, for family uſe, they muſt purchaſe, though many of them hold loan farms on the other ſide of the mountains. The produce of their farms, however, is ſufficient for keeping as many milk cows as are neceſſary for the family; and they have abundance of poultry. The ſeaſon for bringing their

their wine to market is from September to the new vintage in March, but generally in the four concluding months of the year, after which their draught oxen are ſent away either to their own farms or others in the country till they are again wanted. The deep ſandy roads over the Cape iſthmus require fourteen or ſixteen oxen to draw two leggers of wine, whoſe weight is not $2\frac{1}{2}$ tons.

The tax upon their produce is confined to that part of it which is brought to the Cape market, and is at the rate of three rix dollars for every legger of wine, and the ſame ſum for every legger of brandy that paſſes the barrier. All that is conſumed at home, or ſold in the country, is free of duty. Neither are they ſubject to any parochial taxes or aſſeſſments, except a ſmall capitation tax towards the repair of the ſtreets and avenues leading to the town, and the *Lion and Tyger money* for the exigences of the diſtrict. They are equally exempt, with the people of the town, from church and poor rates; the former being liberally provided for by Government, and the other deſcription of people not being known in the country diſtricts. The wine farmers take their pleaſure to Cape Town, or make frequent exurſions into the country, in their tent waggons drawn by a team of ſix or eight horſes; an equipage from which the boor derives a vaſt conſequence over his neighbour, who may only poſſeſs a waggon drawn by oxen.

The following rough ſketch, which was given to me by one of the moſt reſpectable wine boors, of his outgoings and returns, will ſerve to ſhew the condition of this claſs of coloniſts.

Outgoings.

The firſt coſt of his eſtate was	R. D.	15,000	
15 Slaves *a* 300 Rd. each -		4,500	
80 Wine leggers *a* 12		960	
Implements for preſſing, diſtilling, &c.		500	
3 Team of oxen		500	
2 Waggons -		800	
Horſe-waggon, and team -		900	
Furniture, utenſils, &c.		2000	
Amount		25,160	
Intereſt 6 per cent.	R. D.	1509	5
3 Sheep per week for family uſe, 156 per year, *a* 2½ Rd.		390	0
Clothing 15 ſlaves *a* 15 Rd. each per year -		225	0
Corn for bread 36 muids *a* 3 Rd. - -		108	0
Tea, coffee, and ſugar - - -		150	0
Clothing for the family and contingencies -		350	0
Duty at the barrier on 120 leggers of wine and brandy		360	0
Wear and tear 100 Rd. parochial aſſeſſments 20		120	0
Amount of outgoings carried over		3212	5

Amount

Amount of outgoings brought over		R. D. 3212 5
Returns.		
100 Leggers of wine brought to market *a* 30	3000	
20 Ditto of brandy ditto *a* 50 - -	1000	
The wine and brandy ſold to the country boors, with the fruit and poultry brought to the Cape market, are more than ſufficient to balance every other contingent and extraordinary expence.		
Amount of returns	4000	4000
Balance in favour of the farmer		R. D. 787 3
		or £. 157 8 3

which ſum may be conſidered as a net annual profit, after every charge on the farm and on houſekeeping has been defrayed.

The payment of an eſtate purchaſed is made eaſy to the purchaſer. The cuſtomary conditions are to pay by three inſtalments, one-third ready money, one-third in one year, and the remaining third at the end of the ſecond year; and the latter two-thirds bear no intereſt. And even the firſt inſtalment he can borrow of Government, through the loan bank, by giving the eſtate as a mortgage and two ſufficient ſecurities. So that

very large eſtates may be purchaſed at the Cape with very little money, which is the chief reaſon of the multiplicity of vendues.

3. The corn-boors live chiefly in the Cape diſtrict and thoſe parts of Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein that are not diſtant more than two or three days' journey from the Cape. Their farms are ſome freehold property, ſome gratuity land, but moſt of them loan farms. Many of theſe people are in good circumſtances, and are conſidered in rank next to the wine-boor. The quantity of corn they bring to market is from a hundred to a thouſand muids each, according to the quality of their farm, but more commonly to their ſkill and induſtry. They ſupply, alſo, the wine-boor and the grazier. The grain ſold to theſe in the country is ſubject to no tax nor tythe; but a duty amounting not quite to one-tenth of the value is paid at the barrier for all grain paſſing towards Cape Town. Their parochial aſſeſſments are the ſame as thoſe of the wine-boor.

The coloniſts of the Cape are miſerable agriculturiſts, and may be ſaid to owe their crops more to the native goodneſs of the ſoil and favourable climate, than to any exertions of ſkill or induſtry. Their plough is an unwieldy machine drawn by fourteen or ſixteen oxen, juſt ſkims the ſurface, and, if the ſoil happens to be a little ſtiff, is as frequently out of the ground as in it; hence, in moſt of their corn fields, may be obſerved large patches of ten, fifteen, or twenty ſquare yards without a ſtem of grain upon them. Such grounds, when ſown and harrowed, are infinitely more rough than the rougheſt lea-ploughing in England. They have not the leaſt idea of rolling the ſandy ſoils,

ſoils, which are ſometimes ſo light as to be ſown without ploughing. Sometimes, towards the end of the rainy ſeaſon, they turn the ground and let it lie fallow till the next ſeed-time; but they rarely give themſelves the trouble of manuring, except for barley.

For returns of corn in general they reckon upon fifteen fold; in choice places from twenty to thirty, and even much greater where they have the command of water. The grain is not thraſhed, but trodden out in circular floors by cattle. The chaff and ſhort ſtraw of barley is preſerved as fodder for their horſes, and for ſale; the reſt of the ſtraw is ſcattered about by the winds. They do not even give themſelves the trouble of throwing it into the folds where their cattle are pent up by night, which would be the means of procuring them a very conſiderable ſupply of manure, and, at the ſame time, be of ſervice to their cattle in cold winter nights.

The following rough ſtatement will ſerve to ſhew the circumſtances of an ordinary corn-boor of the Cape.

Outgoings.

The price of the opſtal or buildings on his loan farm -	R.D. 7000
50 Oxen *a* 15 Rd. -	750
50 Cows *a* 8 Rd. - -	400
12 Horſes *a* 40 - -	480
Carried over	8630

Brought over	R. D. 8630			
6 Slaves at 300 Rd. -	1800			
2 Waggons - -	800			
Furniture - -	1000			
Implements of huſbandry -	500			
	12,730	Intereſt	763	6
Clothing for ſlaves - - -			90	0
Ditto for the family - - -			150	0
Tea and ſugar - - -			100	0
Duty on corn brought to market 150. Pariſh taxes 20			170	0
Contingencies, wear and tear, &c. -			150	0
Corn ſold to the wine-boors and graziers more than ſufficient to defray all other expences				
Amount of outgoings			1423	6

Returns.

300 Muids of corn *a* 4 Rd.	R. D. 1200		
100 Ditto of barley *a* 3 Rd. -	300		
6 Loads of chaff *a* 32 Rd. -	192		
1000 lbs. butter *a* 1½ Sk. -	250		
5 Horſes ſold annually *a* 40 Rd.	200		
Amount of returns		2142	0
Balance in favour of the farmer		R. D. 718	2
		or £. 143	13

4. The

4. The graziers, properly ſo called, are thoſe of Graaf Reynet and other diſtant parts of the colony. Theſe are a claſs of men, of all the reſt, the leaſt advanced in civilization. Many of them, towards the borders of the ſettlement, are perfect Nomades, wander about from place to place without any fixed habitation, and live in ſtraw-huts ſimilar to thoſe of the Hottentots. Thoſe who are fixed to one or two places are little better with regard to the hovels in which they live. Theſe have ſeldom more than two apartments, and frequently only one, in which the parents with ſix or eight children and the houſe Hottentots all ſleep; their bedding conſiſts generally of ſkins. Their hovels are variouſly conſtructed, ſometimes the walls being mud or clay baked in the ſun, ſometimes ſods and poles, and frequently a ſort of wattling plaiſtered over with a mixture of earth and cow-dung, both within and without; and they are rudely covered with a thatch of reeds that is rarely waterproof.

Their clothing is very ſlight; the men wear generally a broad brimmed hat, a blue ſhirt, and leather pantaloons, no ſtockings, but a pair of dried ſkin ſhoes. The women have a thick quilted cap that ties with two broad flaps under the chin, and falls behind acroſs the ſhoulders; and this is conſtantly worn in the hotteſt weather; a ſhort jacket and a petticoat, no ſtockings, and frequently without ſhoes. The bed for the maſter and miſtreſs of the family is an oblong frame of wood, ſupported on four feet, and reticulated with thongs of a bullock's hide, ſo as to ſupport a kind of mattreſs made of ſkins ſewed together, and ſometimes ſtuffed with wool. In winter they uſe woollen

blankets. If they have a table it is generally of the boor's own making, but very often the large cheſt that is fitted acroſs the end of their ox-waggon ſerves for this purpoſe. The bottoms of their chairs or ſtools are net-work of leather thongs. A large iron pot ſerves both to boil and to broil their meat. They uſe no linen for the table; no knives, forks, nor ſpoons. The boor carries in the pocket of his leather breeches a large knife, with which he carves for the reſt of the family, and which ſtands him in as many and various ſervices as the little dagger of Hudibras.

Their huts and their perſons are equally dirty, and their whole appearance betrays an indolence of body, and a low groveling mind. Their moſt urgent wants are ſatisfied in the eaſieſt poſſible manner; and for this end they employ means nearly as groſs as the original natives, whom they affect ſo much to deſpiſe. If neceſſity did not ſometimes ſet the invention to work, the Cape boor would feel no ſpur to aſſiſt himſelf in any thing; if the ſurface of the country was not covered with ſharp pebbles, he would not even make for himſelf his ſkin-ſhoes. The women, as invariably happens in ſocieties that are little advanced in civilization, are much greater drudges than the men, yet are far from being induſtrious; they make ſoap and candles, the former to ſend to Cape Town in exchange for tea and ſugar, and the latter for home-conſumption. But all the little trifling things, that a ſtate of refinement ſo ſenſibly feels the want of, are readily diſpenſed with by the Cape boor. Thongs cut from ſkins ſerve, on all occaſions, as a ſuccedaneum for rope; and the tendons of wild animals divided into fibres

are

are a ſubſtitute for thread. When I wanted ink, equal quantities of brown ſugar and ſoot, moiſtened with a little water, were brought to me, and ſoot was ſubſtituted for a wafer.

To add to the uncleanlineſs of their huts, the folds or *kraals* in which their cattle remain at nights are immediately fronting the door, and, except in the Sneuwberg, where the total want of wood obliges them to burn dung cut out like peat, theſe kraals are never on any occaſion cleaned out; ſo that in old eſtabliſhed places they form mounds from ten to twenty feet high. The lambing ſeaſon commences before the rains finiſh; and it ſometimes happens that half a dozen or more of theſe little creatures, that have been lambed over night, are found ſmothered in the wet dung. The ſame thing happens to the young calves; yet, ſo indolent and helpleſs is the boor, that rather than yoke his team to his waggon and go to a little diſtance for wood to build a ſhed, he ſees his ſtock deſtroyed from day to day and from year to year, without applying the remedy which common ſenſe ſo clearly points out, and which requires neither much expence nor great exertions to accompliſh.

If the Arcadian ſhepherds, who were certainly not ſo rich, were as uncomfortable in their cottages as the Cape boors, their poets muſt have been woefully led aſtray by the muſe. But Pegaſus was always fond of playing his gambols in the flowery regions of fancy. Without a fiction, the people of the Cape conſider Graaf Reynet as the Arcadia of the colony.

Few of the diſtant boors have more than one ſlave, and many none; but the number of Hottentots amounts, on an average in Graaf Reynet, to thirteen to each family. The inhumanity with which they treat this nation I have already had occaſion to notice *. The boor has few good traits in his character, but this

* In the ſecond chapter of this work I have given an account of fifteen innocent Hottentots that were inhumanly butchered by the boors. A pamphlet has juſt been put into my hands which was publiſhed in the Cape by Baron de P., private Secretary to the Governor, and in which the ſame fact is noticed in the following words:—" Le Capitaine des Hottentots, nommé *Kouwinnoub* revetu des marques " diſtinctives de ſon grade militaire, par un baton orné d'une pomme d'airain où " les armes du Gouvernement etoient gravés deſſus, muni de plus d'un paſport " ſigné par un des membres du Gouvernement, cherchoit avec quinze Hottentots " des feuilles de tabac dans les plaines de Sneuwberg; les payſans ſe rappelloient " peutêtre que trois années paſſées, ces fidèles ſoldats avoient ſervis le Gouverne- " ment, pour les contraindre à l'obeïſſance, et que le moment etoit favourable " pour ſe venger de ſes malheureux. Conduits par un *Veld-cornet*, nommé *Burgers*, " ils ſe ſaiſirent de la troupe qui ne ſuſpectoit aucun mal, et non obſtant toutes les " preuves qui parloient pour eux on convint qu'ils etoient criminels, et qu'ils " falloit les traîter en conſequence; anſi *la Cour de Juſtice ruſtique* reſolut de les " attacher à un arbre, et les forcer par la torture à une confeſſion de crimes, qu'ils " n'avoient eu aucune intention de commettre; les coups redoublés et les ſouf- " frances inhumaines auquels ils oppoſoient les promeſſes s'ils vouloient avouer ce " qu'on leur demandoit, fit qu'on leur arracha la declaration malheureuſe, qu'ils " etoient venus dans l'intention de piller les campagnes avoiſines des colons; *la cour* " n'eut de plus grand empreſſement que de coucher par ecrit un aveu que la " torture, et l'eſpoir de regagner la liberté avoit arraché à ces victimes innocentes; " ils ajouterent leurs ſignatures à cette declaration pour atteſter la verité du fait, " la cour paſſa à la concluſion, et les membres voterent generalement pour la " mort; l'execution de la ſentence ſuivit le moment après, et les Hottentots " furent fuſillés.————Une demi année s'ecoule depuis cet événement, et la " juſtice ne s'en eſt point melée juſqu'ici je n'oſerois en dire les raiſons."

" A Hot-

this is the worſt. Not ſatisfied with defrauding them of the little earnings of their induſtry, and inflicting the moſt cruel and

---

"A Hottentot captain, of the name of *Kouwinnoub*, bearing the diſtinguiſhing "mark of his rank (a ſtick, on the braſs head of which were engraven the arms "of his Majeſty), and furniſhed, moreover, with a paſſport ſigned by one of the "members of Government, went, accompanied by fifteen Hottentots, to procure a "few leaves of tobacco in the plains of Sneuwberg. The boors, recollecting, "perhaps, that three years ago theſe faithful ſoldiers had ſerved the Government "by keeping them in order, thought it a favourable opportunity to revenge them-"ſelves on theſe unhappy creatures. Led on by a *Veld cornet*, of the name of "*Burgers*, they ſeized the whole company, who ſuſpected no ill; and, notwith-"ſtanding all the proofs in their favour, it was agreed that they were criminals, "and that they muſt be treated accordingly. The *Booriſh Court of Juſtice* reſolved, "therefore, to bind them to a tree, and to draw from them by torture a con-"feſſion of crimes, of which a thought had never entered into their heads; to "reiterated blows and inhuman tortures they held out promiſes of forgiveneſs, "if they would confeſs all that was required of them; and by theſe means they "forced from them the unfortunate declaration that they came with an intention "to plunder the neighbourhood. The only concern of *the Court* was to write down "a confeſſion, which the application of the torture and the hope of being ſet at "liberty had wrung from theſe innocent victims. The boors put their names to "this declaration, as an atteſtation of the truth, and made an end of the buſineſs "by voting for their death. The ſentence was inſtantly put in execution, "and the poor Hottentots were ſhot.——A whole half year has paſſed away "ſince this event, and juſtice hitherto has not interfered, I ſhould not dare to ſay "wherefore."

I ſhall extract another inſtance of the ſavage brutality of an African boor, recorded in this pamphlet, which, if poſſible, exceeds all that have yet been given. "Des que les Anglois avoient quittés le fort un colon nommée Ferreira, de "famille Portugaiſe s'en rendit le maître, et en prit poſſeſſion pour lors, ce qui "durà juſqu'au l'arrivée du detachement que le Gouvernement y a envoyé ſous "les ordres du Major Von Gilten, et qui y commande en ce moment. Les

"Caffres

and brutal punishments for every trifling fault, they have a constant practice of retaining the wife and children and turning

---

" Caffres croiant que la derniere paix avoit finie tout déméle entre eux envoyerent " une bête a tuer au noveau commandant du fort, comme une marque d'amitié " et de reconciliation ; le Caffre le fit conduire par un Hottentot et Ferreira par " reconnoiſſance ſe ſaiſit du Caffre, *le brula tout vif*, attacha le pauvre Hottentot " à un arbre, *lui coupa un morcèau de la chair de ſa cuiſſe, le lui fit manger tout crue*, et " le relacha enſuite."

" As ſoon as the Engliſh had abandoned the fort (at Algoa Bay) a boor named " Ferreira, of a Portugueze family, made himſelf maſter of it, and kept poſſeſſion " till the arrival of a detachment of troops which Government ſent thither, under " the command of Major Von Gilten, who is ſtill there. The Kaffers, fully " perſuaded that the late peace had put an end to all diſturbances between them, " ſent to the new commander of the fort a bullock to be ſlain, as the teſt of re- " conciliation and friendſhip. The Kaffer ſent on the occaſion put himſelf under " the guide of a Hottentot ; and Ferreira, by way of returning the kind inten- " tion, laid hold of the Kaffer and *broiled him alive* ; bound the poor Hottentot to " a tree, *cut a piece of fleſh out of his thigh, made him eat it raw*, and then releaſed " him !"

If any one ſhould be diſpoſed to think that I have exaggerated the cruelties committed by theſe inhuman brutes, I only requeſt of them to read the pamphlet written by the private Secretary to the preſent Governor *Janſens*.

Nothing can be more deplorable than the ſtate of the colony, as deſcribed in this pamphlet, which was written juſt before they had heard of the war ; and nothing can exceed the diſappointment of the Dutch in their expectations with regard to the Cape. The Hottentot corps was diſbanded ; moſt of them fled into the interior to join their oppreſſed countrymen ; the Kaffers were in arms againſt the boors ; the garriſon in a ſtate of complete inſubordination ; the people deteſting the Government and the Government afraid of the troops ; its credit deſtroyed, money diſappeared, commerce ruined, bankruptcies without end, and they wanted only a war to complete their miſery. Under ſuch circumſtances, how cheaply might England regain poſſeſſion of this important ſettlement!

adrift

adrift the husband; thus dissolving the tender ties of social intercourse, and cutting off even the natural resources of wretchedness and sorrow. It is in vain for the Hottentot to complain. To whom, indeed, should he complain? The Landrost is a mere cypher, and must either enter into all the views of the boors, or lead a most uncomfortable life. The last, who was a very honest man, and anxious to fulfil the duties of his office, was turned out of his district, and afterwards threatened to be put to death by these unprincipled people, because he would not give them his permission to make war upon the Kaffers; and because he heard the complaints of the injured Hottentots. The boor, indeed, is above all law. At the distance of five or six hundred miles from the seat of Government he knows he is not to be compelled to do what is right, nor prohibited from putting in practice what is wrong. To be debarred from visiting the Cape is no punishment to him. His wants, as we have seen, are very few, nor is he nice in his choice of substitutes for those which he cannot conveniently obtain. Perhaps the only indispensable articles are gunpowder and lead. Without these a boor would not live one moment alone, and with these he knows himself more than a match for the native Hottentots and for beasts of prey.

The produce of the grazier is subject to no colonial tax whatsoever. The butcher sends his servants round the country to collect sheep and cattle, and gives the boors notes upon his master, which are paid on their coming to the Cape. They are subject only to a small parochial assessment, proportioned to their

their ſtock. For every hundred ſheep he pays a florin, or ſixteen-pence, and for every ox or cow one penny. With the utmoſt difficulty Government has been able to collect about two-thirds annually of the rent of their loan-farms, which is only 24 rix dollars a year. Under the idea that they had been dreadfully oppreſſed by the Dutch Government, and that their poverty was the ſole cauſe of their running in arrears with their rent, the Britiſh Government forgave the diſtrict of Graaf Reynet the ſum of 200,000 rix dollars, the amount to which their arrears had accumulated. By deſcending a little cloſer to particulars we ſhall be able to form a better judgment of the condition of theſe people, and how far their poverty entitled them to the above mentioned indulgence.

The diſtrict of Graaf Reynet, as we have already obſerved, contains about 700 families. Among theſe are diſtributed, according to the *Opgaaff* (and they would not give in more than they had, being liable to an aſſeſſment according to the number) 118,306 head of cattle, and 780,274 ſheep, which, to each family, will be about 170 heads of cattle and 1115 ſheep.

Out of this ſtock each boor can yearly diſpoſe of from 15 to 20 head of cattle, and from 200 to 250 ſheep, and, at the ſame time, keep up an increaſing ſtock. The butcher purchaſes them on the ſpot at the rate of 10 to 20 rix dollars a head for the cattle, and from 2 to 2½ for the ſheep.

Suppoſe then each farmer to ſell annually,

15 Head of cattle *a* 12 Rd. -	R. D.	180
220 Sheep *a* 2 Rd. - -		440
A waggon load of butter and ſoap 1200 pounds *a* 1 *s.* - -		300
Amount of his income	R. D.	920 0

Outgoings.

2 Waggons 800 Rd. Intereſt -	R. D.	48
Clothing for 8 perſons *a* 15 Rd. -		120
Tea, ſugar, tobacco, brandy -		150
Powder and ſhot - -		20
Rent to Government and ſtamp -		25
Parochial aſſeſſments - -		8
Contingencies, cattle to Hottentots, &c.		80
Amount of Outgoings	R. D.	451 0
Yearly Savings	R. D.	469 0
	or £.	93 16 0

In what part of the world can even a reſpectable peaſant do this? much leſs the commoneſt of all mankind, for ſuch are the generality of the Cape boors. After quitting the ranks, or running

ning away from his ſhip, he gets into a boor's family and marries. He begins the world with nothing, the uſual practice being that of the wife's friends giving him a certain number of cattle and ſheep to manage, half the yearly produce of which he is to reſtore to the owner, as intereſt for the capital placed in his hands. He has moſt of the neceſſaries of life, except clothing, within himſelf; his work is done by Hottentots, which coſt him nothing but meat, tobacco, and ſkins for their clothing. His houſe and his furniture, ſuch as they are, he makes himſelf; and he has no occaſion for implements of huſbandry. The firſt luxury he purchaſes is a waggon, which, indeed, the wandering life he uſually leads at ſetting out in the world, makes as neceſſary as a hut; and frequently ſerves all the purpoſes of one. A muſquet and a ſmall quantity of powder and lead will procure him as much game as his whole family can conſume. The *ſpring boks* are ſo plentiful on the borders of the colony, and ſo eaſily got at, that a farmer ſends out his Hottentot to kill a couple of theſe deer with as much certainty as if he ſent him among his flock of ſheep. In a word, an African peaſant of the loweſt condition never knows want; and if he does not riſe into affluence, the fault muſt be entirely his own.

Revenues of Government.

From what has already been ſtated, in the laſt ſection, it will appear, that the public burthens are not of that nature as to furniſh any ſubject of complaint. In fact, the proportion of produce paid by the coloniſts for their protection is leſs than in moſt

moſt other countries. They pay no land-tax, no window-tax, no exciſe, no tax on any of the luxuries of life; no poor-rates, nor any aſſeſſment towards the maintenance of the clergy. Except the tenth on grain and wine, brought into Cape Town, and a ſmall Cuſtom-houſe duty on foreign articles imported, the duties to which they are liable are, in a great meaſure, optional, being levied on their extreme paſſion for buying, ſelling, and transferring property. The ſtamp duty, the public vendue duty, the transfer duty on ſale of immovable eſtates, and the duty ariſing from the ſales of buildings on loan-lands, are branches of the revenue moſtly of this deſcription.

The revenues of the colony are derived from the following ſources, comprized under 13 heads:

1. Land revenue, conſiſting in
   - Rents of Loan farms.
   - ——— Gratuity lands.
   - ——— Quit rents.
   - ——— Places taken by the month.
   - ——— Salt pans.
2. Duties on grain, wine, and ſpirits, levied at the barrier.
3. Transfer duty on ſale of immovable eſtates.
4. Duty ariſing from the ſale of buildings on loan farms.
5. Public vendue duty.
6. Fees received in the Secretary's office.
7. Cuſtoms.
8. Port fees.
9. Poſtage of letters.
10. Seizures, fines, and penalties.

11. Licences to retail wine, beer, and ſpirituous liquors.
12. Intereſt of the capital lent out through the loan bank.
13. Duty ariſing from ſtamped paper.

1. The revenue ariſing from the ſoil has been ſufficiently explained in deſcribing the tenures of land; but, in addition to the articles therein explained, may be mentioned the rents of ſome ſalt water lakes in the Cape diſtrict let out to the higheſt bidder for the purpoſe of collecting the ſalt formed in them during the ſummer ſeaſon; as alſo ſome trifling rents of places for grazing cattle at certain ſeaſons of the year, taken by the month.

2. The duties levied on grain, wine, and brandy at the barrier are as follows:

	Rd.	*ſk.*	*ſt.*		*s.*	*d.*
For 10 muids of wheat	2	6	4	or	11	4
— 10 muids of barley	1	2	4		5	4
— 10 muids of peas	4	0	0		16	0
— 10 muids of beans	5	0	0		20	0

On wine and brandy the duty is exactly the ſame, being 3 rix dollars for every legger, let the price or quality be what they may. This duty amounts to about 5 per cent. on common wine, and not to ½ per cent. on Conſtantia.

3. The transfer duty on the ſale of immovable eſtates is 4 per cent. on the purchaſe money, which muſt be paid to the receiver of the land revenues before a legal deed of conveyance can be paſſed,

paſſed, or, at leaſt, before a ſufficient title can be given to the eſtate.

4. The duty ariſing from the ſale of buildings, plantations, and other conveniences on loan-lands, is $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. on the purchaſe money, and muſt be paid in the ſame manner as the laſt, on the property being transferred from the ſeller to the purchaſer.

5. The duty on public vendues is 5 per cent. on moveable, and 2 per cent. on immoveable property; of the former, Government receives $3\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. and $1\frac{3}{4}$ per cent. of the latter. This is a very important branch of revenue.

6. Fees received in the Secretary's office are ſuch as are paid on regiſtering the transfer of property, and were formerly part of the emoluments of the colonial Secretary and aſſiſtants. They are very trifling.

7. The import and export duties at the Cape were formerly a perquiſite of the Fiſcal. At the ſurrender of the colony it was found expedient to make ſome new regulations with regard to this branch of revenue. All goods ſhipped in the Britiſh dominions, to the weſtward of the Cape, were allowed to be imported duty free; but others, not ſo ſhipped, were liable to a duty of 5 per cent. if brought in Britiſh bottoms, and 10 per cent. in foreign bottoms. And no goods nor merchandize of the growth, produce, or manufacture of countries to the eaſtward of the Cape were allowed to be imported into, or exported

ported from, the Cape of Good Hope, except as ſea-ſtores, but by the Eaſt India Company, or by their licence.

The export duties vary according to the nature of the articles, but, on a general average, they amount to about 5 per cent. on commodities, the growth and produce of the Cape.

8. The port fees, or wharfage and harbour money, were formerly levied at a fixed ſum on all ſhips dropping anchor at the Cape, whether they were large or ſmall, but were afterwards altered to ſixpence per ton upon their regiſtered tonnage.

9. The poſtage of letters was a ſmall charge made on the delivery of letters at the poſt office, more with a view to prevent improper correſpondence during the war, than to raiſe a revenue, which, indeed, amounted to a mere trifle.

10. Seizures, fines, and penalties. The law reſpecting ſmuggling is very rigid at the Cape of Good Hope. Not only the actual ſhipping or landing of contraband goods is puniſhable, but the *attempt* to do it, if proved, is equally liable; and the penalty is confiſcation of the goods, when found, together with a mulct amounting to three times their value; or, if not found, on ſufficient evidence being produced, the delinquent is liable to forfeit four times their value. The caſe I alluded to in the ſecond chapter, where the Court of Juſtice was ſeverely cenſured, was an *attempt* to ſmuggle money out of the colony; and the penalty was levied upon the ſum that it appeared, on evidence, the captain of the ſhip had, at one time, brought clan-

clandeſtinely on board for that purpoſe; as it was preſumed that the intention was to convey it out of, though he afterwards diſpoſed of it in, the colony. The ſentence of the court was reverſed in the Court of Appeals, and the money ordered to be reſtored; but the captain, not ſatisfied with the deciſion of the Court of Appeals, without recovering, at the ſame time, large damages, intends to bring his action before a Britiſh Court in England.

Of all ſeizures and confiſcations, and penalties for miſdemeanors, the Fiſcal receives one-third of the amount, the informer or proſecutor one-third, and the other third, which was formerly the ſhare of the Governor, was directed by Lord Macartney to be always paid into the Government Treaſury in aid of the revenue.

11. The licences granted for the retailing of wine, beer, and ſpirituous liquors, are farmed out in lots to the higheſt bidders; and they produce a very conſiderable ſum to Government, proportioned, however, to the ſtrength of the garriſon, the ſoldiers being their beſt cuſtomers. Sir James Craig, wiſhing to diſcourage, as much as poſſible, all monopolies, propoſed to divide the retailing of wine among 32 perſons, but fifteen only were found to take them out; and theſe the following year refuſing to renew, it became neceſſary to recur to the old method, to prevent the revenue from ſuffering, as well as the diſorders that might be ſuppoſed to ariſe from an unreſtrained liberty of ſale. It was, however, found difficult to get any one after this to undertake the farm on the moſt moderate terms. Such is often the

effect

effect of making ſudden and violent changes, even where abuſes are meant to be reformed, and a certain benefit procured for thoſe who have long been ſuffering under them. Gradual alterations are uſually the moſt acceptable, and, in the end, moſt effectual.

12. Intereſt of the capital lent out through the loan or Lombard bank ariſes from a ſum of paper money iſſued by the Dutch Government as a loan to individuals, on mortgage of their lands and houſes, with the additional ſecurity of two ſufficient bondſmen. The ſum thus lent out is about 660,000 rix dollars. The intereſt is 5 per cent., which is one per cent. leſs than the legal intereſt of the colony. Government receives a clear profit of 4 per cent., and the bank one per cent. for its trouble. The rule is never to lend a greater ſum than half the value upon eſtates in town, nor more than two-thirds on eſtates in the country. The term for which the loan was made was not to exceed two years, and it reſted with the directors to prolong the loan, or to call it in, at the expiration of that time.

The eſtabliſhment of this bank, by the Dutch Eaſt India Company, was one of the many ſymptoms, that of late years had appeared, of the declining condition of their commercial credit, and of their political influence in their Indian poſſeſſions. Driven to the neceſſity of raiſing revenues, by direct or indirect means, to defray the contingent expences of the year and to keep together their numerous eſtabliſhments, and of maintaining their exiſtence by temporary expedients, their finances were reduced at length to ſuch a ſtate, that their capital was employed to pay

the intereſt of their debt. In order, therefore, to reform ſome abuſes, and for the better regulation of their affairs in India, certain commiſſioners were appointed in 1792, under the name of Commiſſaries General, to proceed from Holland, without delay, upon this important office.

Finding, on their arrival at the Cape, that the reſources of Government were nearly exhauſted, the colony in moſt deplorable circumſtances, and a general complaint among the inhabitants of the want of a circulating medium, they conceived it too favourable an occaſion to let ſlip of converting the public diſtreſs into a temporary profit for the ſtate; increaſing, at the ſame time, the revenue of the latter, while they conferred a ſeeming favour on the former. They iſſued, through the Lombard bank, a loan of ſuch ſums of ſtamped paper money as might be required to ſatisfy the wants of thoſe who could give the neceſſary ſecurities; the whole amount being limited to the ſum of one million rix dollars.

Thus, by this tranſaction, Government created for itſelf a net revenue of about 25,000 rix dollars a year, free of all deductions, without riſk and without trouble, from a fictitious capital. It did more than this. Part of the original capital, which, at its higheſt point was about 680,000 rix dollars, was repaid by the inhabitants, and reſtored to Government; but, inſtead of cancelling ſuch ſums, as it ſhould ſeem in honour bound to do, it applied them towards the payment of the public expences, ſuffering the whole of the original capital to continue in circulation.

The operation of ſuch a loan, from the Government to the ſubject, ſo much the reverſe of what generally takes place in other ſtates, might be ſuppoſed to produce on the minds of the people a diſpoſition of ill-will towards the Government; which, indeed, was aſſigned as one of the motives to ſhake off their dependence, and thus free themſelves at once from a load of debt by the deſtruction of the creditor. Theſe ſhort-ſighted people did not reflect that the whole amount of paper money iſſued through the bank was not half the amount of paper currency in circulation; that a much greater ſum, of the ſame fabric, but made on a different occaſion, had been borrowed by Government from the inhabitants, for which the only ſecurity was its credit and ſtability. The conſequence of Suffrein's viſit to the Cape, and the expences of throwing up the lines, and putting the works in repair, obliged the Dutch to borrow plate and ſilver money from the inhabitants for the exigencies of Government, which was promiſed to be repaid on the arrival of the ſhips then expected from Holland; and, in the mean time, ſtamped paper, in pieces bearing different values, was given and thrown into circulation, none of which has ever been redeemed by ſpecie, nor, in all human probability, ever will. The balance of the paper lent by Government, and of the money borrowed from the people, is about 240,000 rix dollars in favour of the latter, ſo that they would gain little by deſtroying the credit of Government.

13. The duty ariſing from ſtamped paper was early introduced, but limited to ſuch public writings as were iſſued from the offices of the Secretary of Government and of the Court of Juſtice;

Juſtice; and for acts ſigned by public notaries, until the arrival of the Commiſſaries General, when it was conſiderably extended. At preſent all bills of ſale, receipts, petitions, and memorials, muſt be made out on ſtamped paper. The limits of the ſtamps are ſixpence the loweſt, and one hundred rix dollars or twenty pounds the higheſt.

The net proceeds of the colonial revenue for four ſucceſſive years will appear from the following table:

Branches of the Public Revenue.	Year 1798.			Year 1799.			Year 1800.			Year 1801.		
	Rd.	*ſk.*	*ſt.*	*Rd.*	*ſk.*	*ſt.*	*Rd.*	*ſk.*	*ſt.*	*Rd.*	*ſk.*	*ſt.*
1. Land Revenue	60,622	6	2	40,720	6	4	43,396	2	4	47,885	6	4
2. Duties on grain and wine levied at the barrier	36,867	6	0	35,164	2	4	31,930	1	3	37,759	3	0
3. Transfer duty on ſales of immovable eſtates	33,211	4	2	66,843	3	3	45,576	1	3	67,483	7	0
4. Duty ariſing from Sale of buildings on loan eſtates	5,441	5	4	5,677	1	3	5,939	1	3	5,247	5	1
5. Public vendue duty	48,182	3	3	59,916	1	2	61,166	3	0	85,960	2	4
6. Fees received in the Secretary's Office	1,654	0	0	1,365	6	0	1,193	3	0	1,312	7	0
7. Cuſtoms	43,331	4	0	42,828	5	0	38,582	4	0	47,833	1	0
8. Port fees	2,186	2	0	2,100	0	0	3,945	4	0	5,498	0	0
9. Poſtage of letters	641	5	0	950	0	0	1,111	7	0	1,396	6	0
10. Seizures, fines, and Penalties	10,182	0	1	7,585	0	3	26,572	0	0	5,533	3	0
11. Licences to retail wine, beer, and ſpirituous liquors	36,255	0	4	51,133	2	4	65,191	5	2	93,200	0	0
12. Intereſt of the capital lent out through the loan bank	25,532	6	1	25,678	4	1	26,240	2	3	25,957	0	1
13. Duty ariſing from ſtamped paper	18,403	4	0	20,348	6	0	18,751	0	0	25,645	1	0
Amount R. D.	322,512	7	5	360,312	0	0	369,596	4	0	450,713	2	4
or £.	64,502	11	11	72,062	8	0	73,919	6	0	90,142	13	4

Theſe ſums were applied to the payment of ſalaries on the civil eſtabliſhment, the expences of the ſeveral departments, the repairs of Government buildings, and the contingencies and extraordinaries of the colony, to all which, by a prudent economy, they were much more than adequate; for, on cloſing the public accounts the year after the departure of Lord Macartney from his government, there was a balance in the Treaſury, amounting to between two and three hundred thouſand rix dollars, after every expence of the year had been liquidated.

Jurisprudence.

The outline of the conſtitution and practice of the Court of Juſtice at the Cape I have already had occaſion to notice, and to obſerve that its members were choſen out of the burghers of the town, and were not profeſſional men brought up in the ſtudy of the law. The Fiſcal, who is the public accuſer in criminal matters, and the Secretary of the Court, are the only perſons poſſeſſed of legal knowledge. The juriſdiction of this Court extended to the trial of offences committed by the military; in all ſuch caſes, however, the Governor, as Commander in Chief, had the power of nominating two military officers, to ſit on the trial and give their votes, with the ordinary members, upon the caſe. The members of the Court may be conſidered as a kind of ſpecial jury, who, having heard the evidence adduced by the parties, decide upon the facts, and the Secretary points out the law. Their deciſion, however, is carried by a majority of voices.

Two

Two of the members in turns form a monthly commiſſion, before which written evidence is produced by the attornies of the parties, and every information collected againſt the full meeting of the Court, which is held once a fortnight. The doors are always ſhut; there is no oral pleading; and the parties are entirely excluded. Deciſion is pronounced upon the written and atteſted documents that appear before them, and which, indeed, have been read by each member in the interval between the days of ſeſſion. Were this not practiſed, ſo great is the litigious diſpoſition of the people, they would not be able to go through the ordinary buſineſs. Forty or fifty cauſes are ſometimes diſpatched in the Court in the courſe of one morning; and they hear none where the damages are not laid at a greater ſum than 200 rix dollars or 40*l.* All ſuits, under this amount, are decided in an inferior Court called the *Court of Commiſſaries for trying petty cauſes:* in the country diſtricts the Landroſt and Hemraaden are empowered to give judgment in all caſes where the damages to be recovered do not exceed 150 rix dollars or 30*l.*

This litigious ſpirit in the people, who are moſtly related one way or another, and who always addreſs each other by the name of *couſin*, is encouraged by the attornies, who, in the Cape, may truly be called a neſt of vermin fattening on the credulity of the people. To become a *procureur* it is by no means neceſſary to ſtudy the law. Hence any bankrupt ſhopkeeper, or reduced officer, or clerk in any of the departments, may ſet up for an attorney. The buſineſs conſiſts in taking down depoſitions in writing, and drawing up a ſtate of the caſe for the

nation of the monthly commiſſioners, and afterwards to be laid before the full Court. As their charges, in ſome degree, depend upon the quantity of paper written, ſuch papers are generally pretty voluminous. The expences of a ſingle ſuit will ſometimes amount to 400 *l.* or 500 *l.* ſterling, when, at the ſame time, the object of litigation was not worth 100 *l.*

The office of Fiſcal is one of the moſt important in the colony. As public accuſer it is his duty to proſecute, in the Court of Juſtice, all high crimes and miſdemeanors; and as Solicitor-General to the Crown he is to act in all caſes where the intereſt of Government is concerned. As Chief Magiſtrate of the police, both within and without the town, he is authorized to inflict corporal puniſhment on ſlaves, Hottentots, and others, not being burghers, for petty offences, riotous behaviour, or other acts that cannot be conſidered as directly criminal. The Fiſcal has alſo the power of impoſing fines, and of accepting pecuniary compoſition for miſdemeanors, inſults, breach of contract in caſes where the offender does not wiſh to riſk a public trial. The ſum, however, that in caſes of compromiſe can be demanded by the Fiſcal, was limited, under the Britiſh Government, to 200 rix dollars. For it appeared that, under former Fiſcals, many and enormous abuſes had been practiſed in the levying of fines, particularly in caſes where the nature of the offence was ſuch that the accuſed choſe rather to pay a large ſum of money than ſuffer his cauſe to be inveſtigated before a full court. The Fiſcal, being entitled to one-third of all ſuch penalties, took care to lay them as heavy as he thought the caſes would bear. What a temptation was here laid for frail mortal man,

man, in his fiſcal capacity, to be guilty of injuſtice and extortion, by leaving the power of fixing the penalty in the breaſt of the very man who was to reap the benefit of it! To the honour of the man be it ſpoken, who held this important but odious ſituation, during the government of Britain at the Cape, his moſt inveterate enemies, and he and every one who fills the office muſt daily make ſuch, never accuſed him either of making an undue uſe of his authority, or of ſtudying his own intereſt in this reſpect. The Engliſh found him and left him poor, but not without ſome, though not adequate, acknowledgment of his ſervices.

The office of Fiſcal conſiſted of the principal and a deputy, a clerk, two bailiffs, two jailors, eight conſtables, and nineteen blacks and Malays, uſually called Kaffers. The whole expence to Government was under 10,000 rix dollars; the Court of Juſtice and Secretary's Office to the Court was about the ſame ſum, ſo that the adminiſtration of juſtice coſt the Government about 4000 *l.* ſterling a year.

The Court of Commiſſaries for trying petty ſuits, and for matrimonial affairs, conſiſts of a Preſident, a Vice-preſident, and four members, whoſe ſituations are merely honorary, and are biennial. The duties of the Court, as the name implies, are divided into two diſtinct claſſes: firſt, to decide in ſuits where the ſum in litigation does not exceed 40 *l.*; and ſecondly, to grant licences of marriage where, on examination of the parties, there appears to be no legal impediment.

In

In its firſt capacity it may be conſidered as a ſort of Court of Conſcience. The proneneſs of the people to litigation made it neceſſary, notwithſtanding the ſcanty population, to eſtabliſh this as a relief to the Superior Court, by taking off its hands the deciſion of a multiplicity of trifling ſuits, as well as, by a ſummary mode of proceeding, to prevent heavy coſts. The proceſs for the recovery of a debt is very ſimple. A ſummons is ſent from the Secretary to the debtor, forty-eight hours before the meeting of the Court, which is every Saturday. The parties are heard, a deciſion taken, and ſentence pronounced. An appeal lies to the Superior Court.

In order to obtain a licence for marriage, it is neceſſary for both perſons to appear perſonally before the Court, to anſwer to ſuch queſtions as may be put to them concerning their age, the conſent of parents or guardians, their relationſhip, and ſuch like; after which a certificate is given, and the banns are publiſhed thrice in the church. The conſent of parents or guardians is neceſſary to be had by all who marry under the age of twenty-five years. If the conſent of parents or guardians be refuſed to a minor, the removal of the objections is left to the diſcretion of the Court. If either of the parties has been married before, and has children, a certificate muſt be produced from the Secretary of the Orphan Chamber, or from the notary appointed to adminiſter to the affairs of the children, that the laws of the colony relating to inheritance have been duly complied with.

The

The *Weeſkammer*, or chamber for managing the effects of minors and orphans, is one of the original inſtitutions of the colony, and is modelled on thoſe eſtabliſhments of a ſimilar kind that are found in every city and town of the Mother Country. The nature of their laws of inheritance pointed out the expediency of public guardians to protect and manage the property of thoſe who, during their minority, ſhould be left in an orphan ſtate. In this inſtance the Dutch have departed from the civil or Roman law on which their ſyſtem of juriſprudence is chiefly grounded. By their laws of property the eſtates and moveables of two perſons entering into wedlock become a joint ſtock, of which each party has an equal participation; and, on the death of either, the children are entitled to that half of the joint property which belonged to the deceaſed, unleſs it may have been otherwiſe diſpoſed of by will; and here the legiſlature has wiſely interfered to allow of ſuch diſpoſal only under certain reſtrictions and limitations. The Dutch laws, regarding property, are more inclinable to the intereſts of the children, than favourable to the extenſion of parental authority. To enable a man to diſinherit a child, he muſt bring proof of his having committed one, at leaſt, of the crimes of children againſt parents, which are enumerated in the Juſtinian code.

To guard againſt abuſes in the management of the proviſion which the law has made for minors and orphans, and to ſecure the property to which they are entitled, are the duties of the Orphan Chamber. Its authority extends alſo to the adminiſtration of the effects, either of natives or ſtrangers, who may die inteſtate. At the deceaſe of either parent, where there are

children, an account of the joint property is taken by the Chamber, and in the event of the ſurvivor intending to marry a ſecond time, ſuch ſurvivor muſt paſs a bond to ſecure the half ſhare of the deceaſed to the children by the former marriage.

This excellent inſtitution is managed by a preſident and four members, a ſecretary, and ſeveral clerks. Their emoluments ariſe from a per centage of $2\frac{1}{2}$ on the amount of all property that comes under their adminiſtration, and from ſums of money accruing from the intereſt of unclaimed property, and the compound intereſt ariſing from the unexpended incomes of orphans during their minority. The Secretary, in addition to a fixed ſalary, has an allowance of 4 per cent. on the ſale of orphan property, which almoſt always takes place in order to make a juſt diſtribution among the children. This is conſidered as an indemnification for his reſponſibility to the board for the payment of the property ſold. The clerks divide among them one per cent., ſo that all orphan property, paſſing through the Chamber, ſuffers a reduction of $7\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. upon the capital, which is $2\frac{1}{2}$ per cent. leſs than when left to the adminiſtration of private executors, who have 5 per cent. for their trouble, and muſt pay 5 per cent. on the public vendue, from which the Orphan Chamber is exempt.

Religion.

Calvaniſm, or the Reformed Church as it has uſually been called, is the eſtabliſhed religion of the colony. Other ſects were

were tolerated, but they were neither countenanced, nor paid, nor preferred by the Dutch. The Germans, who are equally numerous with the Dutch, and moſtly Lutherans, had great difficulty in obtaining permiſſion to build a church, in which, however, they at length ſucceeded; but they were neither ſuffered to erect a ſteeple nor to hang a bell. A Methodiſt chapel has alſo lately been built; and the Moravians have a church in the country; but the Malay Mahomedans, being refuſed a church, perform their public ſervice in the ſtone quarries at the head of the town. Other ſects have not yet found themſelves ſufficiently numerous or opulent to form a community.

The body of the clergy are in no part of the world more ſuitably provided for, or more generally reſpected, than in this country; a conſequence of their being ſupported entirely by Government, and not by any tax or tythe laid upon the public. Their ſituation, it is true, leads not to affluence, but it places them beyond the apprehenſion of want or pecuniary embarraſſments; and it ſecures to their widows a ſubſiſtence for life. The ſalaries and the emoluments, which all of them enjoy, both in the town and the country diſtricts, are nearly on an equality. By their rank, which is next to that of the Preſident of the Court of Juſtice in town, and of the Landroſt in the country, they are entitled to ſeek connections with the firſt and wealthieſt families in the colony. None would think of refuſing his daughter's hand to the ſolicitations of a clergyman; and the lady uſually conſidered the precedence at church as a full compenſation for the loſs of balls, cards, and other amuſements

which her new ſituation obliged her to relinquiſh. Some changes, however, of ſuch ſentiments were ſaid to have taken place, on the part of the ladies, with the change of their former Government, and that whatever might ſtill be the opinion of the parents, they began to doubt whether the eaſy and unreſtrained gaiety of a red coat might not be equally productive of happineſs with the gravity of a black one.

But the introduction of new manners and new ſentiments produced no direliction in the pious deportment of the clergy and their families; nor was there any change in the exterior marks of devotion among the laity. The former are ſcrupulouſly exact in the obſervance of the ſeveral duties of their office, and the latter equally ſo in their attendance of public worſhip. In the country the boors carry their devotion to an exceſs of inconvenience that looks very like hypocriſy. From ſome parts of the colony it requires a journey of a week or ten days to go to the neareſt church, yet the whole family ſeldom fails in their attendance twice or thrice in a year.

The duties of the clergy are not very laborious, though pretty much the ſame as in Europe. They attend church twice on Sundays, viſit the ſick when ſent for, and beſtow one morning in the week to examine young perſons in the confeſſion of faith. They muſt alſo compoſe their ſermon for Sunday, and learn it by heart. Their congregation would have little reſpect for their talents if it was read to them, though of their own compoſing. Nothing will do in a Dutch church but an extemporary

temporary rant; and they all go to church in expectation of ſome glance being made at the prevailing topic of the day, and return ſatisfied or diſpleaſed according as the preacher has coincided with or oppoſed their ſentiments on the ſubject of his diſcourſe.

The clergy have alſo the direction of the funds raiſed for the relief of the poor. Theſe funds are eſtabliſhed from weekly donations, made by all ſuch as attend divine ſervice, from legacies, and from the ſums demanded by the church on the emancipation of ſlaves. The intereſt is applied towards the ſuccour and ſupport of thoſe whom old age, infirmities, accident, or the common misfortunes of life, may have rendered incapable of aſſiſting themſelves. This claſs is not very numerous in the Cape, and is compoſed moſtly of ſuch as have been denied, in their early days, the means of making any proviſion againſt old age; chiefly emancipated ſlaves, whoſe beſt part of their life has been dedicated entirely to the ſervice of their owners.

An unſucceſsful attempt was made ſome years ago to eſtabliſh a public grammar-ſchool at the Cape, and the clergymen were nominated as *curators*. A fund for this purpoſe was intended to be raiſed by ſubſcription, and every one was ready to put down his name, but very few came forwards with the money. After the purchaſe of a ſuitable houſe, they found there was nothing left to afford even a moderate ſalary for a Latin maſter; and the clergy of the Cape, who are the only fit perſons to take upon them the important taſk of inſtructing youth, are already too

too well provided for by Government to engage in ſo laborious an employ.

The amount of the funds belonging to the Reformed Church in Cape Town, in the year 1798, was, Rd. 110,842 1 2 or 22,168 *l.* 8 *s.* 8 *d.*, and the ſubſiſtence granted to the poor was Rd. 5564 2 or 1112 *l.* 17 *s.* The funds of the Lutheran Church were Rd. 74,148 2 2 or 14,829 *l.* 13 *s.* 2 *d.*, and the relief granted to the poor Rd. 972 2 2 or 194 *l.* 9 *s.* 2 *d.*

Improvements suggested.

Before any conſiderable degree of improvement can be expected in thoſe parts of the country, not very diſtant from the Cape, it will be neceſſary, by ſome means or other, to increaſe the quantity and to reduce the preſent enormous price of labour. The moſt effectual way, perhaps, of doing this, would be the introduction of Chineſe. Were about ten thouſand of this induſtrious race of men diſtributed over the Cape diſtrict, and thoſe diviſions of Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein which lie on the Cape ſide of the mountains, the face of the country would exhibit a very different appearance in the courſe of a few years; the markets would be better and more reaſonably ſupplied, and an abundance of ſurplus produce acquired for exportation. It is not here meant that theſe Chineſe ſhould be placed under the farmers; a ſituation in which they might probably become, like the poor Hottentots, rather a load and an encumbrance on the

the colony, than a benefit to it. The pooreſt peaſant in China, if a free man, acquires notions of property. After paying a certain proportion of his produce to the State, which is limited and defined, the reſt is entirely his own; and though the Emperor is conſidered as the ſole proprietary of the ſoil, the land is never taken from him ſo long as he continues to pay his proportion of produce to Government.

I ſhould propoſe then, that all the pieces of ground intervening between the large farms and other waſte lands ſhould be granted to the Chineſe on payment of a moderate rent after the firſt ſeven years. The Britiſh Government would find no difficulty in prevailing upon that, or a greater, number of theſe people to leave China; nor is the Government of that country ſo very ſtrict or ſolicitous in preventing its ſubjects from leaving their native land as is uſually ſuppoſed. The maxims of the State forbad it at a time when it was more politic to prevent emigrations than now, when an abundant population, occaſionally above the level of the means of ſubſiſtence, ſubjects thouſands to periſh at home for want of the neceſſaries of life. Emigrations take place every year to Manilla, Batavia, Prince of Wales' Iſland, and to other parts of the eaſtern world.

In the diſtant parts of the colony, where there is waſte land in the greateſt abundance, it would be adviſeable to hold out the ſame encouragement to the Hottentots as they have met with from the Hernhüters at Bavian's Kloof, a meaſure that

would be equally beneficial to the boor and the Hottentot, and prevent the many horrid murders that disgrace humanity.

The next step to improvement would be to oblige all the Dutch landholders to enclose their estates, agreeably to the original plans which are deposited in the Secretary's Office. By planting hedge rows and trees, the grounds would not only be better sheltered, but the additional quantity of moisture that would be attracted from the air, would prevent the surface from being so much scorched in the summer months. The almond, as I have observed, grows rapidly in the driest and poorest soils, and so does the pomgranate, both of which would serve for hedges. The lemon-tree, planted thick, makes a profitable as well as an extremely beautiful and excellent hedge, but it requires to be planted on ground that is rather moist. The *keur-boom* or *sophora capensis* grows in hard dry soils, as will also two or three of the larger kind of proteas.

The vineyards, instead of being pruned down to the ground, so that the bunches of grapes frequently rest upon it, should be led up props or espaliers, or trailed, as in Madeira, along the surface of lattice work. The strong Spanish reed that grows abundantly in the colony is well suited for this purpose, which would not only free the grapes from the peculiar earthy taste that is always communicated to the wine, but would cause the same extent of vineyard to produce more than double the quantity of grapes. A family or two from the island of Madeira, to instruct them in the process of making wine, would be of essential use to the colony.

A better

A better ſyſtem of tillage of the corn lands could not fail to be productive of a conſiderable increaſe in the returns of grain. The breed of horſes has ſo much improved ſince the capture by the Engliſh, that theſe may ſoon be ſubſtituted for oxen in all the purpoſes of huſbandry, and ſmall Engliſh ploughs made to ſuperſede their preſent unwieldy machines.

With reſpect to the country boors, it will require a long time before any effectual ſteps can be adopted for the improvement of their condition. One of the moſt eligible plans, perhaps, would be the eſtabliſhment of fairs or markets at Algoa Bay, Plettenberg's Bay, Moſſel Bay, and Saldanha Bay; to which, at certain fixed periods, once a month or quarter for inſtance, they might drive down their cattle, and bring their other articles of produce for ſale.

This might immediately be effected by prohibiting the butchers from ſending round their ſervants to collect cattle at the boors' houſes; and by giving public notice of the times at which the markets would be held at the different places. At Algoa Bay a great variety of produce, beſides ſheep and horned cattle, might be exhibited together, not only from the boors, but alſo from the Kaffers and the Hottentots. Theſe people would, no doubt, be very glad to give their ivory and ſkins of leopards and antelopes in exchange for iron, beads, and tobacco, and perhaps coarſe cloths, provided they were allowed to take the advantage of a fair and open market. The honey that abounds in all the foreſts would be collected by the Hottentots and

brought to the market at Plettenberg's Bay, where the great plenty of timber might alſo lead to a very extenſive commerce and furniſh employment for numbers of this race of natives, who require only proper encouragement to become valuable members of ſociety. An eſtabliſhment of Moravian miſſionaries at this bay would prove of infinite benefit to the colony. It would be difficult to perſuade the boor of this, and nothing would convince him of the truth of it, but the circumſtance of his being able to procure as good a waggon for 150 or 200 rix dollars as he muſt now purchaſe at the rate of 400 dollars in Cape Town.

It would be no ſmall advantage to the boors, who dwell ſome hundred miles from the ſea-coaſt, to carry back in their waggons a quantity of ſalted fiſh, which might be prepared to any extent at all the bays; this article would not only furniſh them with an agreeable variety to their preſent unremitting conſumption of fleſh meat three times a day, but would ſerve alſo, according to their own ideas, as a corrective to the ſuperabundance of bile which the excluſive uſe of butchers' meat is ſuppoſed to engender. To cultivate the fiſheries on the coaſt of Africa would afford the means of employment and an ample ſource of proviſion for a great number of Hottentot families.

At Moſſel Bay, beſides the fiſheries, there are two articles, the natural produce of the country, in the collection and preparation of which the Hottentots might very advantageouſly be employed, both to themſelves and to the community. Theſe

are

are aloes and barilla, the plant that produces the firſt growing in every part of the diſtrict that ſurrounds the bay, and that from the aſhes of which the other is procured being equally abundant in the plain through which the Olifant River flows at no great diſtance from the bay. Here too the cultivation of grain and pulſe might be greatly extended.

If the introduction of Chineſe were effected, the markets of Cape Town and Saldanha Bay could not fail to be moſt abundantly ſupplied with wine, grain, pulſe, fruit, and vegetables; probably to ſuch a degree as not to be excelled in the world, either for price, quality, or quantity.

The conſequence of ſuch a ſyſtem of eſtabliſhing markets would be the immediate erection of villages at theſe places. To each village might be allowed a church, with a clergyyman, who might act at the ſame time as village ſchoolmaſter. The farmers' children put out to board would contribute to the ſpeedy enlargement of the villages. The farmers would thus be excited to a ſort of emulation, by ſeeing the produce of each other compared together, and prices offered for them proportionate to their quality, inſtead of their being delivered to the butcher, as they now are, good and bad together, at ſo much per head. The good effects produced by occaſionally meeting in ſociety would ſpeedily be felt. The languor, the liſtleſſneſs, and the heavy and vacant ſtare, that characterize the African peaſant, would gradually wear off. The meeting together of the young people would promote the dance, the ſong, and gambols on

the village green, now totally unknown; and cheerfulneſs and converſation would ſucceed to the preſent ſtupid lounging about the houſe, ſullen ſilence, and torpid apathy. The acquaintance with new objects would beget new ideas, rouſing the dormant powers of the mind to energy, and of the body to action. By degrees, as he became more civilized by ſocial intercourſe, humanity as well as his intereſt would teach him to give encouragement to the Hottentots in his employ to engage in uſeful labour, and to feel, like himſelf, the benefits ariſing from honeſt induſtry.

The eſtabliſhment of villages in an extenſive country thinly peopled may be conſidered as the firſt ſtep to a higher ſtate of civilization. A town or a village, like the heart in the animal frame, collects, receives, and diſperſes the moſt valuable products of the country of which it is the centre, giving life and energy and activity by the conſtant circulation which it promotes. Whereas while men continue to be thinly ſcattered over a country, although they may have within their reach all the neceſſaries of life in a ſuperfluity, they will have very few of its comforts or even of its moſt ordinary conveniences. Without a mutual intercourſe and aſſiſtance among men, life would be a conſtant ſucceſſion of make-ſhifts and ſubſtitutions.

The good effects reſulting from ſuch meaſures are not to be expected as the work of a day, but they are ſuch as might, in time, be brought about. It would not, however, be attended with much difficulty to bring the people cloſer together, and to

furniſh them with the means of ſuitable education for their children. To open them new markets for their produce, and, by frequent intercourſe with one another, to make them feel the comforts and the conveniences of ſocial life. Whether the Dutch will be able to ſucceed in doing this, or whether they will give themſelves the trouble of making the experiment, is doubtful, but ſhould it once again become a Britiſh ſettlement, theſe or ſimilar regulations would be well deſerving the attention of Government.

But, above all, the eſtabliſhment of a proper public ſchool in the capital, with maſters from Europe qualified to undertake the different departments of literature, demands the firſt attention of the Government, whether it be Dutch or Engliſh. For as long as the fountain-head is ſuffered to remain troubled and muddy, the attempt would be vain to purify the ſtreams that iſſue from it. It is painful to ſee ſo great a number of promiſing young men as are to be found in Cape Town, entirely ruined for want of a ſuitable education. The mind of a boy of fourteen cannot be ſuppoſed to remain in a ſtate of inactivity, and if not employed in laying up a ſtock of uſeful knowledge, the chances are it will imbibe a taſte for all the vices with which it is ſurrounded, and of which the catalogue in this colony is by no means deficient.

Conclusion.

Having now taken a view of the importance and value of Cape of Good Hope, as a military and naval ſtation, as a ſeat of commerce, as a central depôt for the Southern Whale Fiſhery, and as a territorial poſſeſſion, I ſhall only add, by way of concluſion, that under the preſent implacable diſpoſition of France towards this country, and the inſatiable ambition of its Government, Great Britain never can relinquiſh the poſſeſſion of this colony, for any length of time, without ſeriouſly endangering the ſafety of her Indian trade and the exiſtence of her empire in the Eaſt; both of which were effectually ſecured, at leaſt from external attack, by the occupation of this important outwork.

The facility it affords, at all times, of throwing into India a ſpeedy reinforcement of well ſeaſoned troops, which never can be ſupplied effectually from England how much ſo ever they may be required, muſt always ſtamp an indelible value on the Cape. How deſireable would it be, at the preſent momentous criſis, to have the uſual garriſon there of 5000 effective men, to reinforce our ſmall but active army in India, inſtead of ſending troops from England, of whom, judging from paſt experience, two-thirds of thoſe who may ſurvive the voyage, will be totally unfit, on their arrival there, for any kind of ſervice. It is to be hoped then, that the Directors of the Eaſt India Company are at length become ſenſible of their error with regard to this important co-

lony

lony and, having ſeen it, that ſuch meaſures have been ſuggeſted and ſolicited by them as may again put us in poſſeſſion of that advance poſt, by which *their political and commercial intereſts in the Eaſt Indies will be ſecured and promoted*, and without which thoſe intereſts will conſtantly be expoſed to dangers that may not only threaten but finally terminate in a total ſubverſion:—*Et vitam impendere vero.*

INDEX.

INDEX.

A

PAGE

Abstract account of imports and exports - - - 309
Accounts of the Cape contradictory - 26
Advantages poſſeſſed by the Cape as a depôt of troops - - 161
Africa, probably a prior creation - 67
coaſts of favourable for fiſhing - 320
Algoa Bay, notices and chart of - 86
conſequences of its becoming a military ſtation - - - 87
danger of an enemy landing at - 213
ſalt proviſions might be prepared at 237
importance of to the Eaſt India Company - - 238
Aloes, an article of export - - 303
extended uſe of this drug - - 304
Americans, trade of at the Cape - 181
intereſted in the Cape not belonging to France - - - 183
carrying-trade of - - - 240
American war, difference between that and the preſent - - 249
Amſterdam battery - - - 208
Ammunition delivered to the Dutch at the Cape - - - 219
Amuſements of the inhabitants - 393
Anchor found on Table Mountain - 81
Anchors loſt in Table Bay - - 255

PAGE

Anquetil Duperron's opinion of the Malabar coaſt - - - 187
Antelopes at Sweet Milk's Valley - 47
Arborizations in the ſtones of Table Mountain - - - 82
Army, what conſtitutes one - - 158
Articles of inſtructions, curious ones propoſed by a Dutch Landroſt 135
of export furniſhed by the Cape - 282
Aſſeſſments of the inhabitants - - 388
Attack of the Cape, various modes of 214
Attornies, bad character of - - 421
Authors who have written on the Cape 15
Aya, what - - - 105

B

Baird, Major-General, carries a reinforcement of troops from the Cape to India - - 166
Baltic, retreat of the ſea in the - 67
Bank of L'Aguillas - - 65
of government loans - - 416
Baroloos, a tribe of Kaffers - - 119
Batteries and block-houſes erected by Sir J. Craig - - 207
thoſe of the Cape peninſula - 208

PAGE
Batavia, indolence of the Dutch in - 29
Bay, Moſſel, notices and chart of - 69
Plettenberg, notices and chart of 75
Chapman and Hout - - 211
thoſe of the Cape peninſula, no protection to ſhipping - - 253
Saldanha, advantages of - - 260
St. Helena - - - 263
Beduins, Kaffers probably deſcended from - - - 117
Bills on his Majeſty's paymaſters, premiums on - - - 170
Bonaparte, little regard for his ſoldiers 195
probable obſtacles to his march to India - - - 196
apparent object in acquiring Egypt 199
views againſt our commerce - 252
Books ſeldom ſeen in the Cape - 393
Boors, conduct of, with a dragoon - 34
ſurrender themſelves to Gen. Vandeleur - - - 37
drunken party of - - 45
horrid murder committed by - 56
propenſity of for rambling - 74
idleneſs of - - - 78
trial for ſedition - - 89
plundered by the Hottentots - 94
culpable and impolitic conduct of 96
inſtances of their inhuman cruelties *ib.*
a heavy and large race of men - 113
plunder Mr. Callendar's houſe - 131
wives and children of, fall into the hands of Kaffers - - 132
condition of - - - 409
Boſchuanas, a tribe of Kaffers - 114
Bott River - - - - 42
Bounties on fiſhing to be extended to the Cape - - - 320
Brandy of the Cape - - - 291
Brandy— PAGE
how made - - - 71
Britiſh fleet, appearance of at the Cape 146
iſlands, reflexions on - - 222
Brazil trade to and from the Cape - 278
Burgher, obſervations of, on a whale 102
cavalry, conduct of - - 146
not likely to be called out - - 217
Senate, functions of - - 290
Burnet, a thriving plant at the Cape 346
Butter ſalted, an article of export - 300

C

Callendar, Mr., remarks of on the Knyſna - - - 76
houſe of, plundered by the boors - 131
Calviniſm, the eſtabliſhed religion of the Cape - - - 425
Camp's Bay batteries - - 208
Camtoos River, appearance of the country near - - - 85
Capitulation for the ſurrender of the colony - - - 146
Cape diſtrict - - - 339
produce of - - - 345
Cape of Good Hope, imperfect accounts of 14
authors on the ſubject of - - 15
contradictory accounts of - - 26
how far valuable to England - 30
peninſula of, conſiderations on - 63
peaſantry of the ſettlement of - 78
inhabitants of the town of - 102
their mode of life - - 104
peopled chiefly by ſoldiers from German regiments - - 138
French influence at - - 140
importance of as a military ſtation 144
plans for the government of - 148

Cape of Good Hope— PAGE
physical guarantee of British India 150
proposals respecting - - 153
strange conduct of the East India Company - - - 155
advantages of its local position - 162
as a depôt of troops - 163
healthiness of the climate of - 164
cheapness of subsistence - - 169
total expence of maintaining the garrison of - - - 174
probable expence of in time of peace 177
public revenue of - - 178
number of shipping cleared out in four years - - - 181
importance of, to different nations 182
valuable to England as a point of security - - - 183
danger of leaving it in the hands of France - - - 186
opinion of M. de la Croix respecting it - - - 199
defences of stated - - 204
modes of attack - - 214
Dutch garrison at - - 216
deplorable condition of the inhabitants of - - - 219
importance of, as a naval station 221
necessary to the Dutch navigation to India - - - 226
preferable to Rio de Janeiro or St. Helena - - - 229
overtures for the purchase of - 233
importance of its geographical position - - - 242
preferable to Ceylon in the eyes of France - - - 250
intention of the United Provinces respecting - - - 266
and Ceylon compared - - 250

Cape of Good Hope— PAGE
recovery of indispensably necessary 253
disadvantages of as a naval station 254
danger of becoming a free port - 269
considered as an emporium of Eastern produce - - 274
consumption of grain in - - 287
in wine and brandy - 288
value of the exports from - - 307
—— of imports from Britain and her colonies - - 308
state of since the surrender - 311
unimportance of in a commercial point of view - - 312
as a station for the Southern Whale Fishery - - - 319
general description of - - 325
population, stock, and produce of - 378
Cape Town, what determined the site of 205
condition of the inhabitants of - 386
consumption of - - 343
christenings, marriages, burials, &c. in - - - 344
police of - - - 390
Capital lent out by the Lombard bank 417
Carrying-trade precarious - - 224
Cattle, mode of killing in the Cape - 42
Cession of the Cape, proposals for - 153
Ceylon compared with the Cape - 250
Chavonne battery - - 208
Chapman's Bay - - 211
Chart of Table Bay - - 255
of False Bay - - 258
of Mossel Bay - - 69
of Plettenberg's Bay - - 75
of the Knysna - - 76
of Algoa Bay - - 86
of the coast from Table to Saldanha Bay - - - 261
of the present work, how constructed 23

Chart— PAGE
those of the Dutch incorrect - 69
Character, sanguinary, of the boors accounted for - - 101
of the inhabitants of the town - 103
China, advantage of the French in - 13
Chinese, usefulness and activity of in Batavia - - 29
introduction of into the Cape - 430
Christian, Sir Hugh, mistake of - 62
Chumney, Lieut., unfortunate fate of 130
Citadel of the Cape - - 206
Climate, healthiness of that of the Cape 164
some account of - - 330
Clergy of the Cape, provision for - 427
Coast of South Africa, errors in the charts of - - - 18
Cochin-China, remarkable attention of the king to a French missionary 11
Cold temperature explained - - 331
Colonies of Dutch, why taken by England - - - 144
Commerce and colonies favourable to navigation - - 223
of America to India and China - 270
Comparison of French, Dutch, and English seamen - - 224
Confession extorted by torture - 92
Conclusion - - - 438
Congo, a Kaffer chief, interview with 111
Condition of the inhabitants of Cape Town - - - 385
Consular government, object of - 201
Consumption of the Cape in grain - 287
Constantia wine - - 289
Convoy, convenience of assembling at the Cape - - 236
Corn boors - - - 398
Countess of Sutherland Indiaman, distress of - - - 235
PAGE
Court of Justice, constitution and practice of - - - 89
character of - - - 91
further account of - - 420
of Commissaries for trying petty suits - - - 423
Craig, Sir James, his account of the Hottentots - - 49
opinion of the defence of the Cape 209
Criminals hung in chains - - 41
Croix, de la, opinion of respecting the Cape - - - 199
Current on L'Aguillas Bank - 66
Cyanella, a curious plant - - 95

D

Damberger, the imposition of - 22
Danes, during the Northern confederacy called at the Cape - 239
Danger of the Cape being held by an enemy - - - 191
Daniell, Mr. S., intended publication of 117
Defence of the Cape peninsula - 204
of the whole colony impracticable 213
Description, topographical and statistical - - - 324
Deserters shot by Van Roy - - 99
De la Croix, observation of to Lord Malmsbury - - 249
Dimensions of the Cape colony - 325
Directors of the East India Company, conduct of - - 150
inconsistency of - - 151
mistaken with regard to the Cape 234
affected indifference of - - 272
Disadvantages of ceding the Cape - 245

PAGE
Diſtance from a market, inconveniences of - - - 302
Diſtrict of the Cape - - 339
of Stellenboſch and Drakenſtein - 347
of Zwellendam - - 362
of Graaf Reynet - - 370
Diviſions of the diſtricts - - 337
Dominion, arbitrary and univerſal, the object of the Conſular Government - - - 201
Dragoon, Britiſh, ſpirited conduct of 34
two drowned - - 59
Dryden's tranſlation of a paſſage in Ovid - - - 81
Dutch, character of in their colonies 29
accuſtomed to ſcenes of cruelty - 41
imprudent conduct of towards their ſlaves - - - 109
indifference of with regard to the Cape - - - 155
garriſon at the Cape - - 216
ſhips of war at the Cape - - 218
converted into coffee ſhips - 219
ſeamen, character of - - 225
views of at the Cape - - 231
practice of running ſhips on ſhore in Table Bay - - 258
jealous of the proſperity of the Cape 268
intention of with reſpect to the Cape 272
their regulations at the Cape calculated to encourage ſmuggling 273
Duties levied at the Cape - - 412

E

Earth, changes on the ſurface of - 68
Eaſt India Company, intereſts of ſecured 140. 274
Eaſt India Company— PAGE
directors of diſparage the Cape - 150
indifference of with regard to the Cape - - - 155
advantage of at the Cape - 234
Eckbergia, name of a tree - - 82
Edwards, Captain, and ſon, melancholy fate of - - - 257
Egypt, reflections on the French expedition againſt - - 197
marked as the ſpoil of the French 202
Emigrants, French, conduct of - 7
Emporium of eaſtern produce at the Cape - - - 274
Endleſs River - - - 58
Errors in the charts of the coaſt of Africa - - - 19
Eſtates often change hands - 383
Evidence, how taken in the Court of Juſtice - - - 91
Euthanaſia of their High Mightineſſes the United Provinces - 141
Expence of the Cape moderate in peace 177
as a naval ſtation trifling - 241
Expenditure in the military department 172
Expedition by ſea or land to India conſidered - - - 194
Exports furniſhed by the Cape - 282
total value of in four years - 307

F

Falſe Bay, rock diſcovered in - 253
chart of - - - 258
Feltſpar, remarkable decompoſition of 67
Fiſcal, office of - - - 422
Fiſhing company, experiment of - 296
Fiſhermen the beſt ſeamen - - 313

PAGE

Fiſhery at the Cape granted to a company at Amſterdam - 297
general advantages reſulting from 314
Food, animal, reflexions on - 113
Foreigners not diſpleaſed to ſee the Cape an Engliſh ſettlement - 233
Foreſts near the Knyſna - - 76
Free port, deſire of the Dutch to make the Cape one - - - 155
danger of ſuch a meaſure - 269
French, aſſiduity of in foreign countries 5
progreſs of in Cochin-China - 11
advantages of over the Engliſh in China - - - - 13
influence of at the Cape - 140
avoid any diſcuſſion about the Cape 185
motives for overturning our Indian empire - - - 200
reſult of their aggrandizement - 201
averſe to long voyages - - 225
conſider the Cape as preferable to Ceylon - - - 251
policy of keeping them out of India 253
Fruits dried for exportation - 297
Fuel for working iron ores at Plettenberg's Bay - - 79

G

Gaika, quarrel between and Congo 112
Gardenia Thunbergia - - 82
Garriſon of the Cape, how embarraſſed 39
ſtrength of the Dutch at the ſurrender - - - 216
Geographical poſition of the Cape - 242
German ſoldiers - - 101
Gordon's Bay, importance of - 39

PAGE

Gordon, Colonel, his opinion of the extent of Kaffer-land - - 119
Government ſaves by the rations at the Cape - - - 169
and by other circumſtances - 172
revenues of - - - - 411
Graaf Reynet, money circulated in by the troops - - 88
the diſtrict and diviſions of - 370
population and produce of - 377
Grain, produce of at the Cape - 283
Gratuity lands - - 381
Graziers, condition of - - 401
ſingular inſtance of the inhumanity of - - - 404
Greeks, danger of giving liberty to at once - - - 202
Greenland fiſhery, how carried on - 315
Green Point, obſervations on - 65
Greville, Right Hon. Charles, encourages the South Sea Fiſhery - 316
Groſvenor Indiaman, probable cauſe of the loſs of - - 17

H

Harbour, no good one at the Cape - 254
Healthineſs of the Cape exemplified - 164
with regard to ſeamen - - 240
Health, appearance of at the Cape - 27
Hermann, the Ruſſian column of cut to pieces - - - 160
Hernhuters, eſtabliſhment of - 47
Hides and ſkins, articles of export - 294
Hippopotamus, a name ill applied to the animal - - - 125
Hotham, Captain, ſaves the Counteſs of Sutherland Indiaman - 236

PAGE

Hoetjes Bay, advantages of - - 259
Hogs ſcarcely known as food in the Cape - - - 300
Horſes, ſhod by a deaf and dumb perſon 84
Hot ſpring of the Cardouw - - 356
of Brandt Valley - - 360
in Zwellendam - - 364
of hepatized water in the Snowy Mountains - - 373
Hottentots Holland's Kloof - - 39
of the Moravian eſtabliſhment - 47
ſlaves preferred to by the coloniſts 49
corps of, their character - 50
ſteady conduct of - - 107
retaliate on the boors - - 95
cruelties of the boors againſt - 96
gratitude of - - 108
murder of by a boor - - 132
corps of refuſe to take ſervice with the Dutch - - 218
one of theſe people forced by the boors to eat a piece of raw fleſh cut out of his thigh - - 406
Hout Bay - - - 211

I

Jacobiniſm, principles of, embraced at the Cape - - - 145
Impediments thrown in the way of the Cape - - - 267
Importance firſt attached to the Cape 148
as a military ſtation - - 164
as a naval ſtation - - 221
as a ſeat of commerce, &c. - 265
Imports to the Cape - - 308
Improvements ſuggeſted - - 430

PAGE

India not favourable for training recruits - - - 161
opinion reſpecting our empire in - 189
as eaſily reached by Bonaparte as Alexander - - 196
Indian ſeas commanded by the Cape 238
Ingenuity, inſtance of in a deaf and dumb perſon - - 84
Inhabitants of Cape Town - - 102
condition of - - - 385
Johnſton, Commodore, object of his expedition - - 150
Iriſh, a tall brawney people - 113
Iron ores near Plettenberg's Bay - 79
native, iron maſſes of - - 80
Iſthmus of the Cape, component parts of - - - 64
ſhells found on - - 66
of Suez, remark on - - 68
Judicature, Court of - - 90
Juriſprudence, ſyſtem of - - 420
Juſtice, retributive, ſtriking inſtance of 100
how adminiſtered between a white and a black - - 110
Ivory, an article of exportation - 305

K

Kaffer chiefs, character of - - 112
ſtature of - - - 113
probably of Arabic origin - 116
extent of country occupied by - 118
Baroloos, a tribe of - - 119
children and dogs of - - 120
marked with the ſmall pox - 121
attack the Britiſh troops - 126
conduct of one ſhot through the body 128

	PAGE
Kaffer—	
attack the Engliſh camp - -	129
one broiled alive by the boors -	406
Karroo plains, what - -	28
productive quality of when watered	*ib.*
further notices of - -	328
Kicherer, miſſionary, remarkable zeal of	52
Knyſna, plan and remarks of -	76
a favourable ſtation for the Southern Whale Fiſhery - -	321

L

L'Aguillas Bank, once part of the continent - - -	65
tremendous ſtorms on - -	235
a dangerous point for the India ſhips - - -	247
Land, different tenures of - -	378
Landroſt of Graaf Reynet threatened by the boors - -	35
Lange Kloof - - -	71
Laſcars unfit for long voyages -	156
ſickneſs in ſhips navigated by -	157
Laying of cattle, a Hottentot cuſtom	42
Leetakoo, a city of northern Kaffers -	114
Leucophæa, a ſpecies of antelope -	47
Lucern thrives well at the Cape -	346
Liancourt, ſentiments of - -	7
Lines thrown up by the French -	206
Lion's Rump, importance of -	209
plan of Sir J. Craig reſpecting -	*ib.*
objection ſtarted againſt it -	210
Loan-lands - - -	379
from Government to the ſubject -	418
Local information, advantages of -	5
Lombard bank, nature of - -	416
London market injured by making the Cape an emporium - -	276

M

	PAGE
Macao, conſiderations on - -	12
Macartney, Earl of, departure from the Cape - - -	33
appointment of as Governor -	149
letter of to Mr. Dundas -	154
obſervations of reſpecting the Cape	251
Madeira wine ſupplied from the Cape to the Weſt India iſlands -	289
Madneſs, canine, unknown in South Africa - - -	120
Madras, beſt water near the beach of	63
Malabar coaſt, obſervations on -	188
Malay ſlaves preferred to Hottentots	48
Malta, in the hands of France -	191
Manilla, a dangerous point to the China trade - -	246
Markets, eſtabliſhment of at the Cape	433
Matrimonial affairs, court of -	423
Mead, Doctor, his opinion of the ſmall pox - - -	122
Melville, Lord, plans of for governing the Cape - - -	148
Mediterranean trade not equal to that of the Eaſt - -	192
Milford harbour, flouriſhing ſtate of	316
Military ſtation, importance of the Cape as - - -	144
extent of the term - -	158
department, expence of at the Cape	173
Milk, the food of the Kaffers -	114
Miſſionaries, different kinds of -	51
Mode of life in Cape Town -	104
Moravian miſſionaries, plan of -	47
Mortality among ſeamen at the Cape trifling - - -	240
Mooring-chains in Table Bay -	255

PAGE

Moſſel Bay, notices and chart of - 69
Motives for the preſent work - 3
Mouillié battery - - 208
Mountains in South Africa, nature of 61
further notices of - - 336
Muſcles in Moſſel Bay - - 70
Myſore, effects of the conqueſt of - 190

N

Nations commercial, advantage to by the Cape being Engliſh - 182
Navy of Britain, importance of - 202
Naval ſtation, the Cape conſidered as 221
Navigation, encouraged by colonies - 223
ſtrength of the Britiſh empire - 313
Negro, difference between him and a white - - - 110
New South Wales, trade between and the Cape - - - 280
Nitre, native in the Snowy Mountains 373
Notions, the name of an American cargo - - - 181
Nymphæa, two ſpecies of - - 82

O

Obſervation of a Cape burgher on a whale - - - 102
Objections againſt the Cape as an emporium - - - 275
Oil and bone, articles of export - 295
an indiſpenſable article - - 314
Oldenburg, Daniſh ſhip of war, loſt - 257
Opgaaff liſt for the Cape diſtrict - 342
for Stellenboſch - - 361
Opgaaff liſt— PAGE
for Zwellendam - - 369
for Graaf Reynet - - 377
Opinions with regard to India - 188
with regard to the Cape various 3
Ores of iron at Plettenberg's Bay - 79
Orphan Chamber - - 425
Oſtade, a ſubject for the pencil of - 46
Oſtrich feathers, an article of export 295
Ottoman empire, deſtruction of aimed at by the French - - 202
Overtures for purchaſing the Cape - 233
Oxen, cruelties committed on - 41
Oyſters, found at Moſſel Bay - 70

P

Palmiet River - - - 42
Patrick, Mr., unfortunate fate of - *ib.*
Paper money, profit on to Government 173
Paul, Emperor, wild ſcheme of - 194
Peaſantry of the Cape, condition of - 78
of what people compoſed - 101
Peninſula of the Cape, obſervations on 63
Perim, iſland of - - 193
Plan, military, of the Cape peninſula 204
Plans for the government of the Cape 148
Plettenberg's Bay, croſs the mountains to - - - 73
foreſts in the neighbourhood of - 74
products of the country near - 82
chart of - - - 76
Population of the Cape diſtrict - 337
of Stellenboſch - - 361
of Zwellendam - - 369
of Graaf Reynet - - 377
Ports, intermediate, neceſſary to moſt nations - - - 225
leaſt ſo to Engliſh ſeamen - 227

PAGE

Position, geographical, of the Cape - 179
with reſpect to other countries - 243
favourable to commerce with the Eaſt - - - 244
Powers of Europe, danger that threatens them - - - 201
Precedency, ſtruggle for between two ladies - - - 106
Preneuſe, French frigate - - 86
Prieſts, emigrant, infamous conduct of 11
Pringle, Mr., his experiment in making wine - - - 72
Admiral, opinion of reſpecting mooring-chains - - 255
Privileges granted to the Eaſt India Company - - - 149
Produce of the Cape for exportation - 283
Property frequently changes hands - 384
Proviſions, moderate prices of - 169
ſalt - - - 237
Puniſhment inflicted on the boors - 96

Q

Quit-rents, what - - 382

R

Rank, inhabitants of the Cape tenacious of - - - 105
Raiſins, more tranſportable than wine 71
Ration, expence of at the Cape - 169
Rattleſnake engages the Preneuſe - 86
Red Sea, dangerous navigation of - 193
Recruits, fate of when ſent to India direct - - - 161

PAGE

Reflections on miſſionaries of the goſpel 53
Rejoicings at the Cape, on the ſurrender, not violent - - 139
Religion of the Cape - - 426
Retreat of the ſea partial - - 67
Revenue, public, heads and amount of - - 411. 419
Rhinoſceros, African - - 125
Rice, Lieutenant, ſurveys of - 24
Rieut, Captain, map of - - 17
River, *Endleſs* - - - 58
beds of ſunk deep - - 60
Camtoos appearance of the country near - - - 85
thoſe of the Cape enumerated - 333
Robben Iſland - - - 256
Rochet e, de la, map of - - 17
Rock in Falſe Bay diſcovered - 258
Rogge Bay battery - - 208
the beſt landing place - - 254

S

Saint Helena, a dangerous point to our Indian trade - - 248
inadequate to the ſupply of convoys *ib.*
Saint Helena Bay - - - 263
Salt, an inexhauſtible fund of near Algoa Bay - - - 237
proviſions, cured at the Cape - 299
Savages, not always averſe to labour 48
Sceptre man of war, loſs of - 257
Sea gaining on the land in South Africa - - - 64
voyages unfavourable to prompt action - - - 160
Seamen of France, Holland, and England - - - 224

Seamen

	PAGE
Seamen—	
promotion of by fiſheries -	313
Secretary of governor Janſen's account of the boors - -	404
Settlement of the Cape not expenſive	176
Sheep, broad tailed - -	237
Shells, no proof of the preſence of the ſea - - -	66
Shell-fiſh, carried inland by birds -	67
Ships cleared out at the Cape in four years - - -	181
of war belonging to the Dutch -	218
mortality of in thoſe of the Dutch	226
eaſily deſtroyed in the bays of the Cape - - -	253
Shoemaker's Hovel, deſcription of -	44
Simon's Bay - - -	258
Skins an article of export -	294
Slaves, puniſhment of for murder -	42
preferred to Hottentots -	49
vices inſeparable from the condition of - - -	108
proportion of to whites - -	145
Small-pox, whence derived - -	122
Soap, from train-oil - -	296
and candles made at the Cape -	301
Soils, nature of - - -	327
Somerville and *Trütir*, expedition of to the Booſhuanas - -	55
South America, trade to from the Cape	278
condition of the inhabitants of -	279
South Sea Fiſhery - -	37
at the Cape - -	319
Sparmannia, near Plettenberg's Bay	82
Springs, ſcarcity of explained -	60
Squadron, expenditure of at the Cape	241
State of the Cape ſince the ſurrender	311
Statiſtical ſketch of the Cape colony	324
Stellenboſch and *Drakenſtein*, diſtrict of	347
droſdy and diviſions of - -	348
Stellenboſch—	
population and produce of -	361
Storms on L'Agùillas Bank -	235
Strelitzia - - -	82
Stuurman Klas, a Hottentot chief -	94
reaſoning of on their preſent condition - - -	110
Suez, remark concerning the iſthmus of	68
difficulties of ſending an expedition from - - -	193
Suffrein, advantages derived by at the Cape - - -	152
maintained his ground in India by them - - -	238
Sunda, Straits of, dangerous to our trade - - -	246
Sweet Milk's Valley - -	46

T

Table Mountain, ſhells found on -	67
once ſkirted with trees -	74
anchor found on - -	80
mineral productions on the ſide of	82
Table Bay, inconveniences of -	25
Talleyrand and his miſtreſs - -	240
Tamus Elephantipes - -	83
Taxes of the inhabitants - -	388
Tenures of land - - -	379
Theory of ſprings in South Africa -	61
Tobacco produced in the Cape -	306
Topographical deſcription of the Cape	324
Torture uſed by the Dutch - -	92
Trade of the Mediterranean -	192
to India and China - -	239
of the Eaſt India Company -	276
Traders under Britiſh capitals -	279
Trees, ſcarce in the Cape - -	43

PAGE

Trial of seditious boors - - 93
Troops, necessity of training before embarkation - - - 159
sent from the Cape to Madras - 166
sent from the Cape to the Red Sea 167
Trüter, Mr., character of - - 56

U

United Provinces, views of in forming a settlement at the Cape - 266

V

Vaillant, observations on the work of 20
Vandeleur, Brigadier-General, expedition of - - - 37
Van Reenen, journal of - - 17
Van Roy, shoots three deserters - 99
murders several Hottentots - 134
Van Vooren, a woman of extraordinary bulk - - - 124
Vander Kemp's account of a horrid murder - - - 133
Vegetation, rapidity of after rain - 46
Vice-Admiralty Court, imposition on - 92
Villages wanted at the Cape - 435
Vines, easy culture of at the Cape - 72
Volcanic products, no traces of at the Cape - - - 329

W

PAGE

Water, scarcity of accounted for - 61
subterraneous stream of - - 62
remedy suggested for the want of at Saldanha Bay - - 261
Wax, vegetable - - 303
Wees-kammer or *Orphan Chamber*, forgery on - - - 34
further notices on - - 425
Whale, observations of a burgher on 102
Whalers, practices of - - 279
Whale oil and bone - - 295
Wine, bad management in making of 71
experiment of Mr. Pringle - 72
licence for selling farmed out - 170
and brandy consumed and exported 288
quality and price of - - 292
growers - - - 394
Winds at the Cape - - 156
Women of the Cape, manners of - 105
occupation of among the Kaffers 116
Woods of the Cape unknown to the inhabitants - - 263
Wool, an article of export - - 293

Z

Zwellendam, inhabitants of - 137
district and divisions of - - 362
population and produce of - 369

THE END.

Printed by A. Strahan,
Printers-Street.